

~~DRUG CONJUGATES AND THEIR USE FOR TREATING CANCER,
AN AUTOIMMUNE DISEASE OR AN INFECTIOUS DISEASE~~

1. FIELD OF THE INVENTION

The present invention is directed to Drug-Linker-Ligand Conjugates and to Drug-Linker Compounds, to compositions comprising a Drug-Linker-Ligand Conjugate or a Drug-Linker Compound, and to methods for using the same to treat cancer, an
5 autoimmune disease or an infectious disease.

2. BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

Several short peptidic compounds have been isolated from natural sources and found to have biological activity. Analogs of these compounds have also been prepared, and some were found to have biological activity. For example, Auristatin E (U.S. patent
10 5,635,483 to Pettit et al.) is a synthetic analogue of the marine natural product Dolastatin 10, an agent that inhibits tubulin polymerization by binding to the same site on tubulin as the anticancer drug vincristine (G. R. Pettit, *Prog. Chem. Org. Nat. Prod.*, 70: 1-79 (1997)). Dolastatin 10, auristatin PE, and auristatin E are linear peptides having four amino
15 acids, three of which are unique to the dolastatin class of compounds. Both dolastatin 10 and auristatin PE are presently being used in human clinical trials to treat cancer. The structural differences between dolastatin 10 and auristatin E reside in the C-terminal residue, in which the thiazolephenethyl amine group of dolastatin 10 is replaced by a norephedrine unit in auristatin E.

The following references disclose dolastatin and auristatin compounds and
20 analogs thereof, and their use for treating cancer:

International Publication No. WO 96/33212 A1 to Teikoku Hormone Mfg.
Co., Ltd.;

International Publication No. WO 96/14856 A1 to Arizona Board of
Regents;

25 European Patent Publication No. EP 695757 A2 to Arizona Board of
Regents;

European Patent Publication No. EP 695758 A2 to Arizona Board of
Regents;

30 European Patent Publication No. EP 695759 A2 to Arizona Board of
Regents;

International Publication No. WO 95/09864 A1 to Teikoku Hormone Mfg.
Co., Ltd.;

International Publication No. WO 93/03054 A1 to Teikoku Hormone Mfg.
Co., Ltd.;

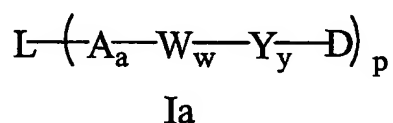
5 U.S. Patent No. 6,323,315 B1 to Pettit et al.;
G.R. Pettit et al., *Anti-Cancer Drug Des.* 13(4): 243-277 (1998);
G.R. Pettit et al., *Anti-Cancer Drug Des.* 10(7): 529-544 (1995); and
K. Miyazaki et al., *Chem. Pharm. Bull.* 43(10), 1706-18 (1995).

10 Despite in vitro data for compounds of the dolastatin class and its analogs,
significant general toxicities at doses required for achieving a therapeutic effect
compromise their efficacy in clinical studies. Accordingly, there is a clear need in the art for
dolastatin derivatives having significantly lower toxicity, yet useful therapeutic efficiency,
compared to current dolastatin drug therapies.

15 The recitation of any reference in Section 2 of this application is not an
admission that the reference is prior art to this application.

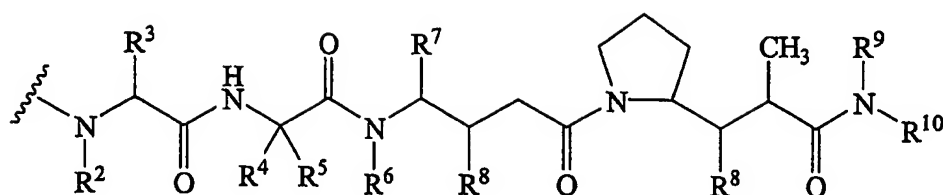
3. SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

In one aspect, the present invention provides compounds of general Formula
Ia:



20 and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and solvates thereof
wherein,

L- is a Ligand unit;
-A- is a Stretcher unit;
a is 0 or 1;
25 each -W- is independently an Amino Acid unit;
-Y- is a Spacer unit;
w is an integer ranging from 0 to 12;
y is 0, 1 or 2;
p ranges from 1 to about 20; and
30 -D is a Drug unit of the formula



wherein, independently at each location:

R² is selected from -hydrogen and -C₁-C₈ alkyl;

R³ is selected from -hydrogen, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle);

R⁴ is selected from -hydrogen, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle) wherein R⁵ is selected from -H and -methyl; or R⁴ and R⁵ join, have the formula -(CR^aR^b)_n- wherein R^a and R^b are independently selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl and -C₃-C₈ carbocycle and n is selected from 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6, and form a ring with the carbon atom to which they are attached;

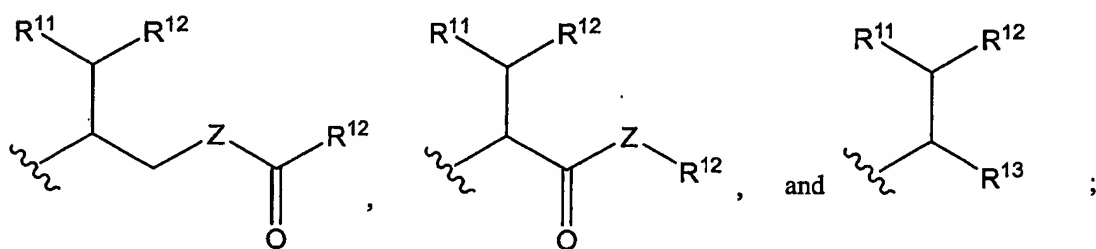
R⁶ is selected from -H and -C₁-C₈ alkyl;

R⁷ is selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle);

each R⁸ is independently selected from -H, -OH, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle and -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl);

R⁹ is selected from -H and -C₁-C₈ alkyl;

R¹⁰ is selected from



Z is -O-, -S-, -NH- or -N(R¹⁴)-;

R¹¹ is selected from -H, -OH, -NH₂, -NHR¹⁴, -N(R¹⁴)₂, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle); or R¹¹ is an oxygen atom which forms

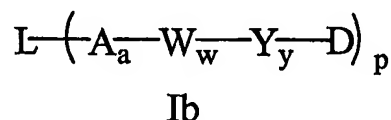
a carbonyl unit (C=O) with the carbon atom to which it is attached and a hydrogen atom on this carbon atom is replaced by one of the bonds in the (C=O) double bond;

each R^{12} is independently selected from -aryl and -C₃-C₈ heterocycle;

R^{13} is selected from -H, -OH, -NH₂, -NHR¹⁴, -N(R¹⁴)₂, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle); and

each R^{14} is independently -H or -C₁-C₈ alkyl.

In another aspect, the present invention provides compounds of general formula Ib:



and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and solvates thereof

wherein,

L- is a Ligand unit;

-A- is a Stretcher unit;

a is 0 or 1;

each -W- is independently an Amino Acid unit;

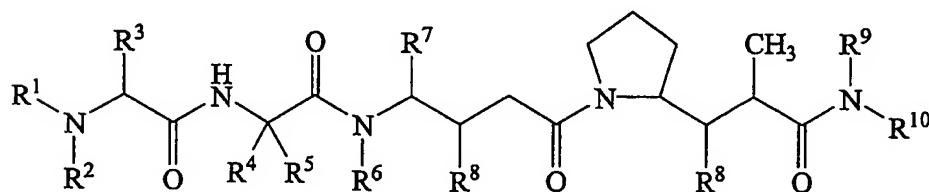
-Y- is a Spacer unit;

w is an integer ranging from 0 to 12;

y is 0, 1 or 2;

p ranges from 1 to about 20; and

-D is a Drug unit of the formula



wherein, independently at each location:

R^1 is selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl and -C₃-C₈ carbocycle; and R^2 is selected from -H and -C₁-C₈ alkyl; or R^1 and R^2 join, have the formula -(CR^aR^b)_n- wherein R^a and R^b are independently selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl and -C₃-C₈ carbocycle and n is

selected from 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6, and form a ring with the nitrogen atom to which they are attached;

R^3 is selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle);

R^4 is selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle) wherein R^5 is selected from -H and -methyl; or R^4 and R^5 join, have the formula $-(CR^aR^b)_n$ wherein R^a and R^b are independently selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl and -C₃-C₈ carbocycle and n is selected from 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6, and form a ring with the carbon atom to which they are attached;

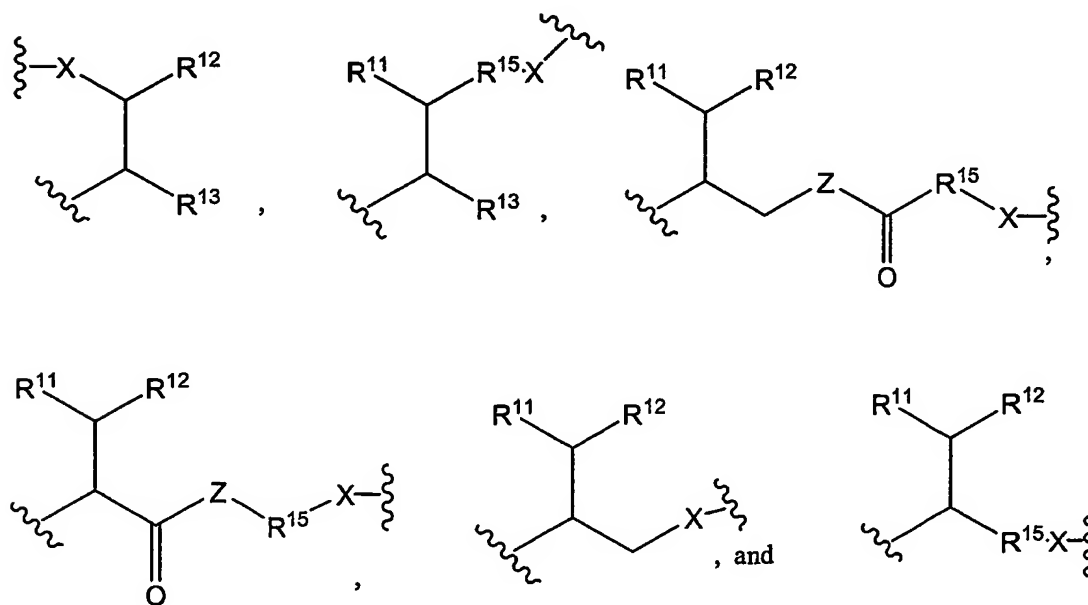
R^6 is selected from -H and -C₁-C₈ alkyl;

R^7 is selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle);

each R^8 is independently selected from -H, -OH, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle and -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl);

R^9 is selected from -H and -C₁-C₈ alkyl;

R^{10} is selected from



20

X is -O-, -S-, -NH- or -N(R^{14})-, where X is bonded to Y when y is 1 or 2, or X is bonded to W when y is 0;

Z is -O-, -S-, -NH- or -N(R¹⁴)-;

R¹¹ is selected from -H, -OH, -NH₂, -NHR¹⁴, -N(R¹⁴)₂, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle); or R¹¹ is an oxygen atom which forms a carbonyl unit (C=O) with the carbon atom to which it is attached and a hydrogen atom on this carbon atom is replaced by one of the bonds in the (C=O) double bond;

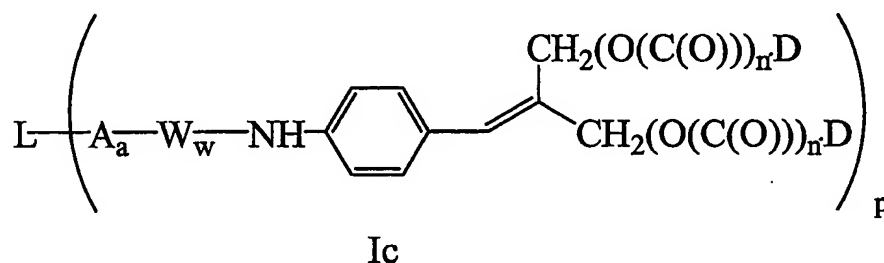
each R¹² is independently selected from -aryl and -C₃-C₈ heterocycle;

R¹³ is selected from -H, -OH, -NH₂, -NHR¹⁴, -N(R¹⁴)₂, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle);

each R¹⁴ is independently -H or -C₁-C₈ alkyl; and

R¹⁵ is -arylene-, -C₃-C₈ carbocyclo- or -C₃-C₈ heterocyclo-.

In another aspect, the present invention provides compounds of general formula Ic:



and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and solvates thereof

wherein,

L- is a Ligand unit;

-A- is a Stretcher unit;

a is 0 or 1;

each -W- is independently an Amino Acid unit;

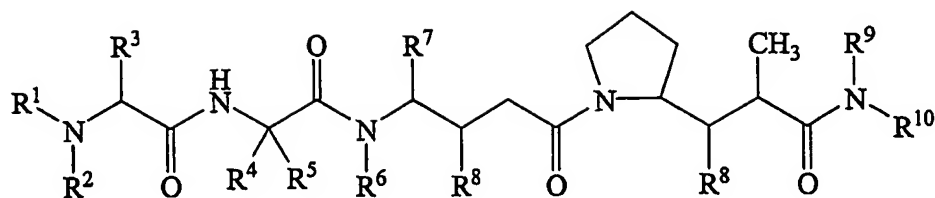
w is an integer ranging from 0 to 12;

each n is independently 0 or 1;

p ranges from 1 to about 20; and

each -D is independently:

(a) a Drug unit of the formula:



wherein, independently at each location:

R¹ is selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl and -C₃-C₈ carbocycle; and R² is selected from -H and -C₁-C₈ alkyl; or R¹ and R² join, have the formula -(CR^aR^b)_n- wherein
 5 R^a and R^b are independently selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl and -C₃-C₈ carbocycle and n is selected from 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6, and form a ring with the nitrogen atom to which they are attached;

R³ is selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈
 10 alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle);

R⁴ is selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle) wherein R⁵ is selected from -H and -methyl; or R⁴ and R⁵ join, have the formula -(CR^aR^b)_n- wherein R^a and R^b are independently selected from -H, -C₁-C₈
 15 alkyl and -C₃-C₈ carbocycle and n is selected from 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6, and form a ring with the carbon atom to which they are attached;

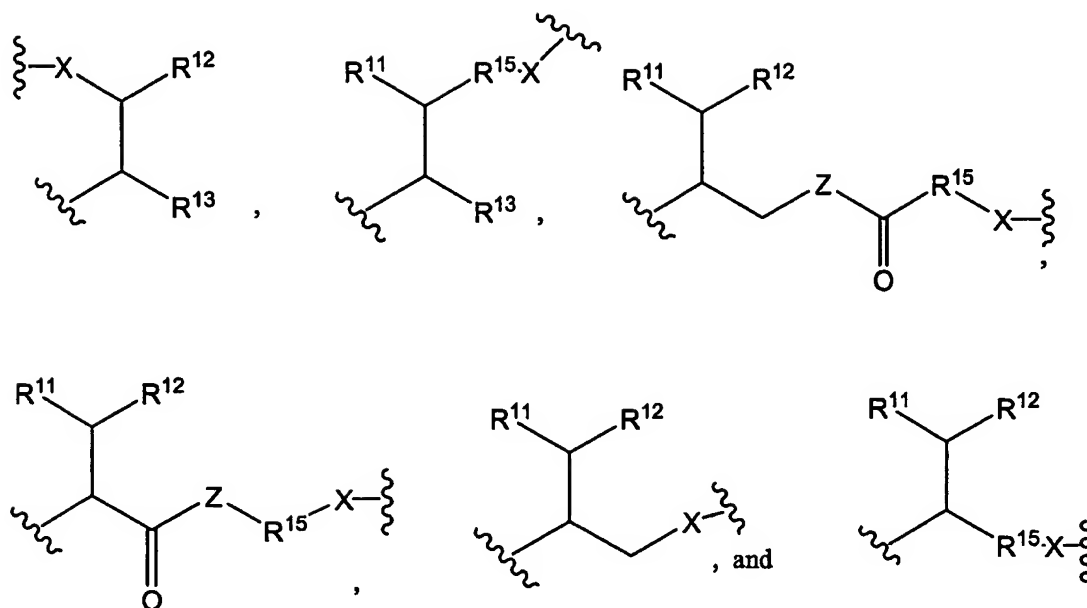
R⁶ is selected from -H and -C₁-C₈ alkyl;

R⁷ is selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈
 20 alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle);

each R⁸ is independently selected from -H, -OH, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle and -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl);

R⁹ is selected from -H and -C₁-C₈ alkyl;

R¹⁰ is selected from



X is -O-, -S-, -NH- or -N(R¹⁴)-, where X is bonded to -C(O)- when y is 1 or 2, or X is bonded to -CH₂- when n is 0;

Z is -O-, -S-, -NH- or -N(R¹⁴)-;

- 5 R¹¹ is selected from -H, -OH, -NH₂, -NHR¹⁴, -N(R¹⁴)₂, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle); or R¹¹ is an oxygen atom which forms a carbonyl unit (C=O) with the carbon atom to which it is attached and a hydrogen atom on this carbon atom is replaced by one of the bonds in the (C=O) double bond;

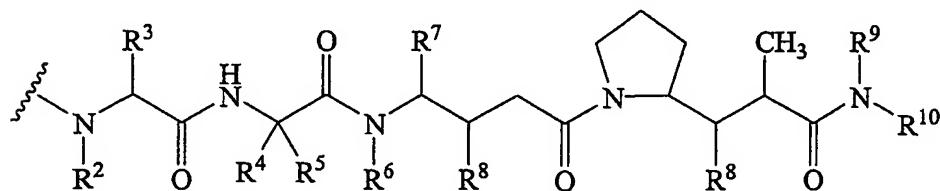
- 10 each R¹² is independently selected from -aryl and -C₃-C₈ heterocycle;

R¹³ is selected from -H, -OH, -NH₂, -NHR¹⁴, -N(R¹⁴)₂, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle);

each R¹⁴ is independently -H or -C₁-C₈ alkyl; and

- 15 R¹⁵ is -arylene-, -C₃-C₈ carbocyclo- or -C₃-C₈ heterocyclo-; or

(b) a Drug unit of the formula:



wherein, independently at each location:

R^2 is selected from -H and -C₁-C₈ alkyl;

R^3 is selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle);

5 R^4 is selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle) wherein R^5 is selected from -H and -methyl; or R^4 and R^5 join, have the formula $-(CR^aR^b)_n-$ wherein R^a and R^b are independently selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl and -C₃-C₈ carbocycle and n is selected from 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6, and form a ring with the
10 carbon atom to which they are attached;

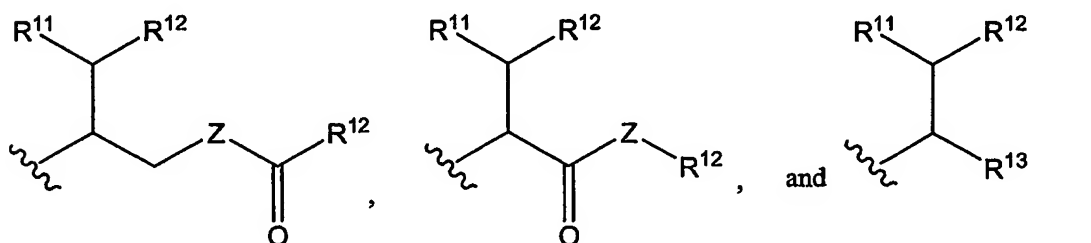
R^6 is selected from -H and -C₁-C₈ alkyl;

R^7 is selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle);

15 each R^8 is independently selected from -H, -OH, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle and -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl);

R^9 is selected from -H and -C₁-C₈ alkyl;

R^{10} is selected from



Z is -O-, -S-, -NH- or -N(R¹⁴)-;

R^{11} is selected from -H, -OH, -NH₂, -NHR¹⁴, -N(R¹⁴)₂, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle); or R^{11} is an oxygen atom which forms
25 a carbonyl unit (C=O) with the carbon atom to which it is attached and a hydrogen atom on this carbon atom is replaced by one of the bonds in the (C=O) double bond;

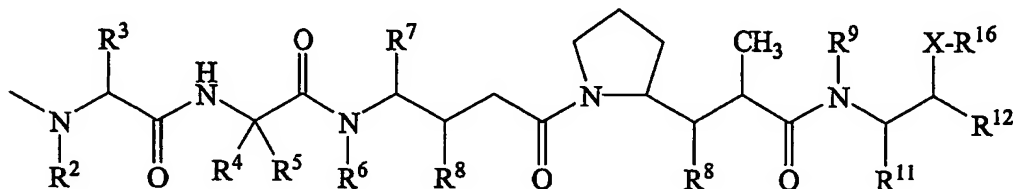
each R^{12} is independently selected from -aryl and -C₃-C₈ heterocycle;

R^{13} is selected from -H, -OH, -NH₂, -NHR¹⁴, -N(R¹⁴)₂, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle); and
30

each R^{14} is independently -H or -C₁-C₈ alkyl.

A compound of formula Ia, formula Ib, formula Ic or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or solvate thereof (a "Drug-Linker-Ligand Conjugate") is useful for treating or preventing cancer, an autoimmune disease or an infectious disease in an animal.

5 In another aspect, the present invention provides compounds of the formula IIa:



and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and solvates thereof

wherein, independently at each location:

10 R^1 is selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl and -C₃-C₈ carbocycle; and R^2 is selected from -H and -C₁-C₈ alkyl; or R^1 and R^2 join, have the formula $-(CR^aR^b)_n$ - wherein R^a and R^b are independently selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl and -C₃-C₈ carbocycle and n is selected from 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6, and form a ring with the nitrogen atom to which they are attached;

15 R^3 is selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle);

R^4 is selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle) wherein R^5 is selected from -H and -methyl; or R^4 and R^5 join, have the formula $-(CR^aR^b)_n$ - wherein R^a and R^b are independently selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl and -C₃-C₈ carbocycle and n is selected from 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6, and form a ring with the carbon atom to which they are attached;

R^6 is selected from -H and -C₁-C₈ alkyl;

25 R^7 is selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle);

each R^8 is independently selected from -H, -OH, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle and -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl);

R^9 is selected from -H and -C₁-C₈ alkyl;

X is -O-, -S-, -NH- or -N(R¹⁴)₂;

R^{11} is selected from -H, -OH, -NH₂, -NHR¹⁴, -N(R¹⁴)₂, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle); or R^{11} is an oxygen atom which forms a carbonyl unit (C=O) with the carbon atom to which it is attached and a hydrogen atom on this carbon atom is replaced by one of the bonds in the (C=O) double bond;

each R^{12} is independently selected from -aryl and -C₃-C₈ heterocycle;

each R^{14} is independently -H or -C₁-C₈ alkyl; and

10 R^{16} is -Yy-Ww-A'

wherein

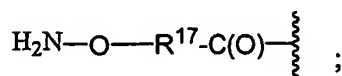
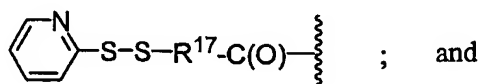
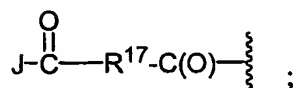
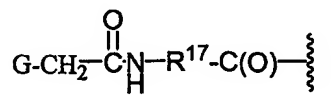
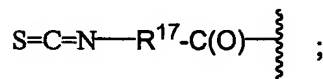
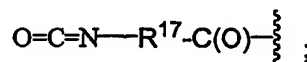
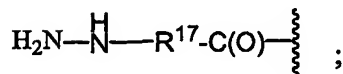
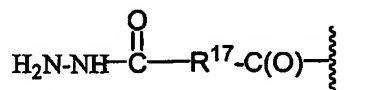
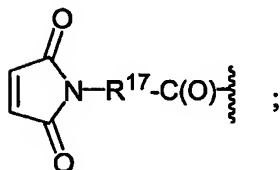
each -W- is independently an Amino Acid unit;

-Y- is a Spacer unit;

w is an integer ranging from 0 to 12;

15 y is 0, 1 or 2; and

-A' is selected from

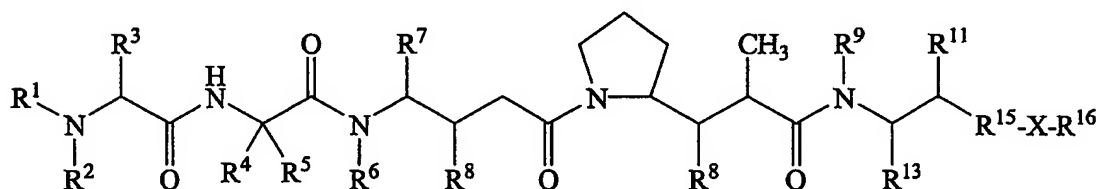


wherein

J is selected from -Cl, -Br, -I, -F, -OH, -O-N-succinimide, -O-(4-nitrophenyl), -O-pentafluorophenyl, -O-tetrafluorophenyl and -O-C(O)-OR¹⁸;

R^{18} is $-C_1-C_8$ alkyl or -aryl.

Иб:



IIb

wherein, independently at each location:

15

20

25

R^6 is selected from -H and -C₁-C₈ alkyl;

R^7 is selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle);

5 each R^8 is independently selected from -H, -OH, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle and -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl);

R^9 is selected from -H and -C₁-C₈ alkyl;

X is -O-, -S-, -NH- or -N(R^{14})-;

10 R^{11} is selected from -H, -OH, -NH₂, -NHR¹⁴, -N(R^{14})₂, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle); or R^{11} is an oxygen atom which forms a carbonyl unit (C=O) with the carbon atom to which it is attached and a hydrogen atom on this carbon atom is replaced by one of the bonds in the (C=O) double bond;

15 R^{13} is selected from hydrogen, -OH, -NH₂, -NHR¹⁴, -N(R^{14})₂, C₁-C₈ alkyl, C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, alkyl-aryl, alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), C₃-C₈ heterocycle and alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle);

each R^{14} is independently -H or -C₁-C₈ alkyl;

R^{15} is -arylene-, -C₃-C₈ carbocyclo- or -C₃-C₈ heterocyclo-; and

R^{16} is -Yy-Ww-A'

20 wherein

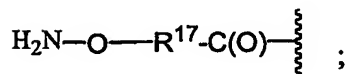
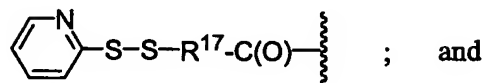
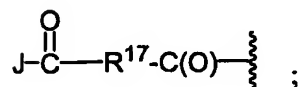
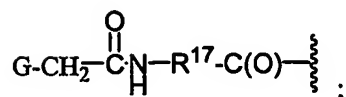
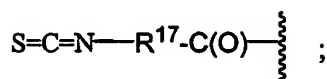
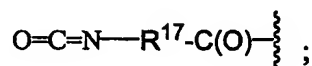
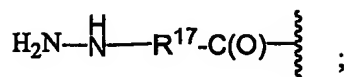
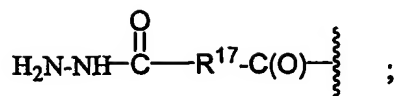
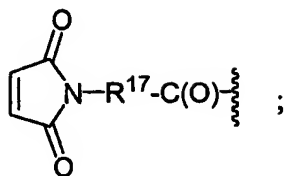
each -W- is independently an Amino Acid unit;

-Y- is a Spacer unit;

w is an integer ranging from 0 to 12;

y is 0, 1 or 2; and

25 -A' is selected from



wherein

G is selected from -Cl, -Br, -I, -O-mesyl and -O-tosyl;

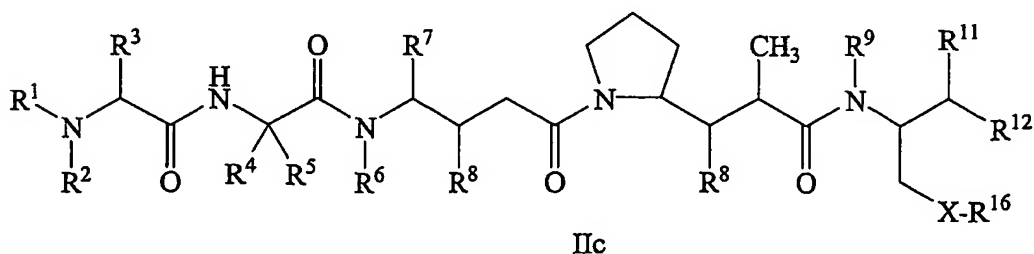
J is selected from -Cl, -Br, -I, -F, -OH, -O-N-succinimide, -O-(4-nitrophenyl), -O-pentafluorophenyl, -O-tetrafluorophenyl and -O-C(O)-OR¹⁸;

R¹⁷ is selected from -C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-, -C₃-C₈ carbocyclo-, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl)-, -arylene-, -C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-arylene-, -arylene-C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-, -C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-(C₃-C₈ carbocyclo)-, -(C₃-C₈ carbocyclo)-C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-, -C₃-C₈ heterocyclo-, -C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-(C₃-C₈ heterocyclo)-, -(C₃-C₈ heterocyclo)-C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-, -(CH₂CH₂O)_r-, and
 10 -(CH₂CH₂O)_r-CH₂-; r is an integer ranging from 1-10; and

R¹⁸ is -C₁-C₈ alkyl or -aryl.

In another aspect, the present invention provides compounds of the formula

IIc:



and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and solvates thereof

wherein, independently at each location:

R^1 is selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl and -C₃-C₈ carbocycle; and R^2 is selected from -H and -C₁-C₈ alkyl; or R^1 and R^2 join, have the formula $-(CR^aR^b)_n$ - wherein
 5 R^a and R^b are independently selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl and -C₃-C₈ carbocycle and n is selected from 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6, and form a ring with the nitrogen atom to which they are attached;

R^3 is selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈
 10 alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle);

R^4 is selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle) wherein R^5 is selected from -H and -methyl; or R^4 and R^5 join, have the formula $-(CR^aR^b)_n$ - wherein R^a and R^b are independently selected from -H, -C₁-C₈
 15 alkyl and -C₃-C₈ carbocycle and n is selected from 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6, and form a ring with the carbon atom to which they are attached;

R^6 is selected from -H and -C₁-C₈ alkyl;

R^7 is selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈
 20 alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle);

each R^8 is independently selected from -H, -OH, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle and -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl);

R^9 is selected from -H and -C₁-C₈ alkyl;

X is -O-, -S-, -NH- or -N(R^{14})-;

R^{11} is selected from -H, -OH, -NH₂, -NHR¹⁴, -N(R^{14})₂, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle); or R^{11} is an oxygen atom which forms a carbonyl unit (C=O) with the carbon atom to which it is attached and a hydrogen atom on this carbon atom is replaced by one of the bonds in the (C=O) double bond;

30 each R^{12} is independently selected from -aryl and -C₃-C₈ heterocycle;

each R^{14} is independently -H or -C₁-C₈ alkyl;

R^{16} is -Yy-Ww-A'

wherein

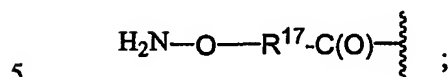
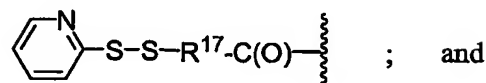
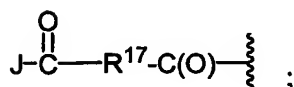
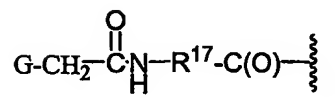
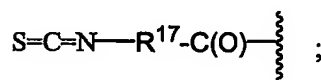
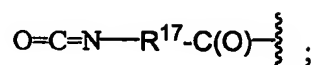
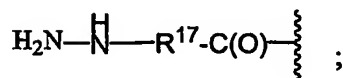
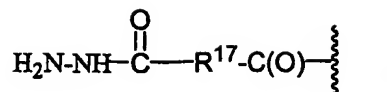
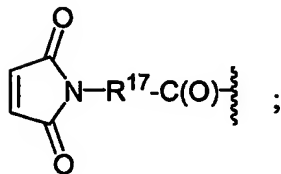
each -W- is independently an Amino Acid unit;

-Y- is a Spacer unit;

w is an integer ranging from 0 to 12;

y is 0, 1 or 2; and

-A' is selected from



wherein

G is selected from -Cl, -Br, -I, -O-mesyl and -O-tosyl;

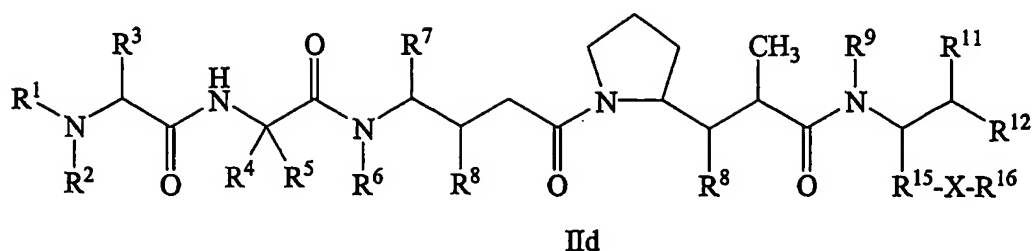
J is selected from -Cl, -Br, -I, -F, -OH, -O-N-succinimide, -O-(4-nitrophenyl), -O-pentafluorophenyl, -O-tetrafluorophenyl and -O-C(O)-OR¹⁸;

10 R^{17} is selected from -C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-, -C₃-C₈ carbocyclo-, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl)-, -arylene-, -C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-arylene-, -arylene-C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-, -C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-(C₃-C₈ carbocyclo)-, -(C₃-C₈ carbocyclo)-C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-, -C₃-C₈ heterocyclo-, -C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-(C₃-C₈ heterocyclo)-, -(C₃-C₈ heterocyclo)-C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-, -(CH₂CH₂O)_r-, and -(CH₂CH₂O)_r-CH₂-; r is an integer ranging from 1-10; and

15 R^{18} is -C₁-C₈ alkyl or -aryl.

In another aspect, the present invention provides compounds of the formula

IId:



and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and solvates thereof

wherein, independently at each location:

R^1 is selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl and -C₃-C₈ carbocycle; and R^2 is
 5 selected from -H and -C₁-C₈ alkyl; or R^1 and R^2 join, have the formula $-(CR^aR^b)_n$ - wherein R^a and R^b are independently selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl and -C₃-C₈ carbocycle and n is selected from 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6, and form a ring with the nitrogen atom to which they are attached;

R^3 is selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -
 10 aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle);

R^4 is selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -
 aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈
 alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle) wherein R^5 is selected from -H and -methyl; or R^4 and R^5 join,
 15 have the formula $-(CR^aR^b)_n$ - wherein R^a and R^b are independently selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl and -C₃-C₈ carbocycle and n is selected from 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6, and form a ring with the carbon atom to which they are attached;

R^6 is selected from -H and -C₁-C₈ alkyl;

R^7 is selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -
 20 aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle);

each R^8 is independently selected from -H, -OH, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle and -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl);

R^9 is selected from -H and -C₁-C₈ alkyl;

25 X is -O-, -S-, -NH- or -N(R^{14})-;

R^{11} is selected from -H, -OH, -NH₂, -NHR¹⁴, -N(R^{14})₂, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle); or R^{11} is an oxygen atom which forms a carbonyl unit (C=O) with the carbon atom to which it is attached and a hydrogen atom on
 30 this carbon atom is replaced by one of the bonds in the (C=O) double bond;

each R^{12} is independently selected from -aryl and -C₃-C₈ heterocycle;

each R^{14} is independently -H or -C₁-C₈ alkyl;

R^{15} is -arylene-, -C₃-C₈ carbocyclo- or -C₃-C₈ heterocyclo-;

R^{16} is -Yy-Ww-A'

5 wherein

each -W- is independently an Amino Acid unit;

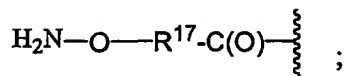
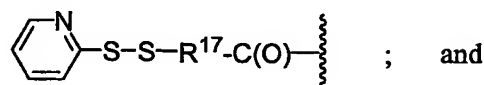
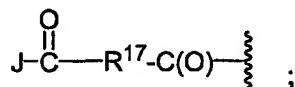
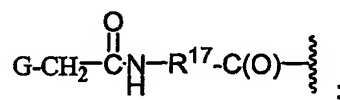
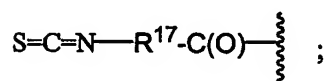
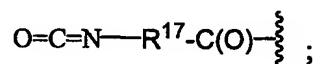
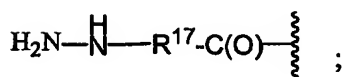
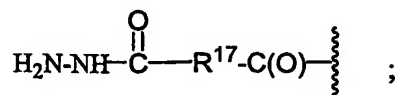
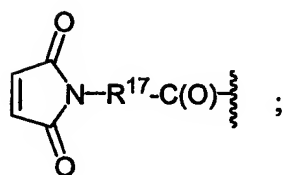
-Y- is a Spacer unit;

w is an integer ranging from 0 to 12;

y is 0, 1 or 2; and

10

-A' is selected from



wherein

G is selected from -Cl, -Br, -I, -O-mesyl and -O-tosyl;

15 J is selected from -Cl, -Br, -I, -F, -OH, -O-N-succinimide, -O-(4-nitrophenyl), -O-pentafluorophenyl, -O-tetrafluorophenyl and -O-C(O)-OR¹⁸;

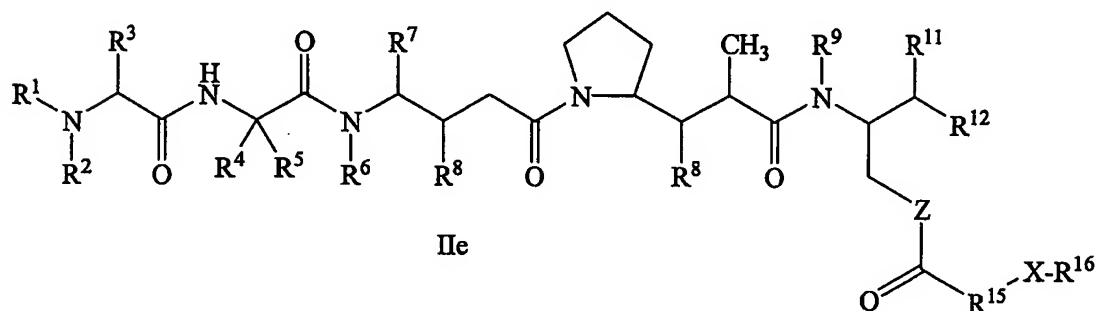
R^{17} is selected from -C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-, -C₃-C₈ carbocyclo-, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl)-, -arylene-, -C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-arylene-, -arylene-C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-, -C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-(C₃-C₈ carbocyclo)-, -(C₃-C₈ carbocyclo)-C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-, -C₃-C₈ heterocyclo-, -C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-

(C₃-C₈ heterocyclo)-, -(C₃-C₈ heterocyclo)-C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-, -(CH₂CH₂O)_r-, and -(CH₂CH₂O)_r-CH₂-; r is an integer ranging from 1-10; and

R¹⁸ is -C₁-C₈ alkyl or -aryl

In another aspect, the present invention provides compounds of the formula

5 IIe:



and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and solvates thereof

wherein, independently at each location:

R¹ is selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl and -C₃-C₈ carbocycle; and R² is
 10 selected from -H and -C₁-C₈ alkyl; or R¹ and R² join, have the formula -(CR^aR^b)_n- wherein R^a and R^b are independently selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl and -C₃-C₈ carbocycle and n is selected from 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6, and form a ring with the nitrogen atom to which they are attached;

R³ is selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -
 15 aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle);

R⁴ is selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -
 aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle) wherein R⁵ is selected from -H and -methyl; or R⁴ and R⁵ join,
 20 have the formula -(CR^aR^b)_n- wherein R^a and R^b are independently selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl and -C₃-C₈ carbocycle and n is selected from 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6, and form a ring with the carbon atom to which they are attached;

R⁶ is selected from -H and -C₁-C₈ alkyl;

R⁷ is selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -
 25 aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle);

each R^8 is independently selected from -H, -OH, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle and -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl);

R^9 is selected from -H and -C₁-C₈ alkyl;

X is -O-, -S-, -NH- or -N(R^{14})-;

5 Z is -O-, -S-, -NH- or -N(R^{14})-;

R^{11} is selected from -H, -OH, -NH₂, -NHR¹⁴, -N(R^{14})₂, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle); or R^{11} is an oxygen atom which forms a carbonyl unit (C=O) with the carbon atom to which it is attached and a hydrogen atom on

10 this carbon atom is replaced by one of the bonds in the (C=O) double bond;

each R^{12} is independently selected from -aryl and -C₃-C₈ heterocycle;

each R^{14} is independently -H or -C₁-C₈ alkyl;

R^{15} is -arylene-, -C₃-C₈ carbocyclo- or -C₃-C₈ heterocyclo-;

R^{16} is -Yy-Ww-A'

15 wherein

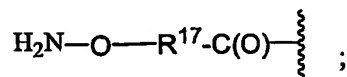
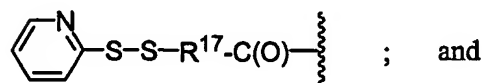
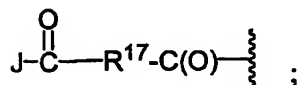
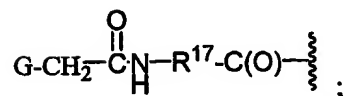
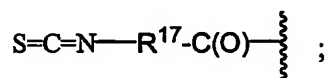
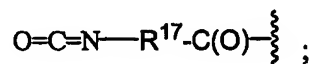
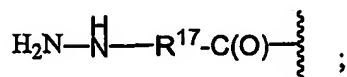
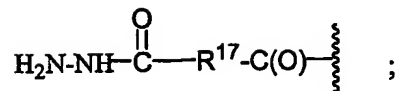
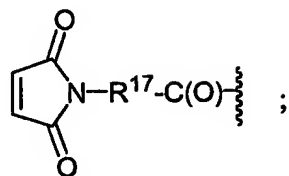
each -W- is independently an Amino Acid unit;

-Y- is a Spacer unit;

w is an integer ranging from 0 to 12;

y is 0, 1 or 2; and

20 -A' is selected from



wherein

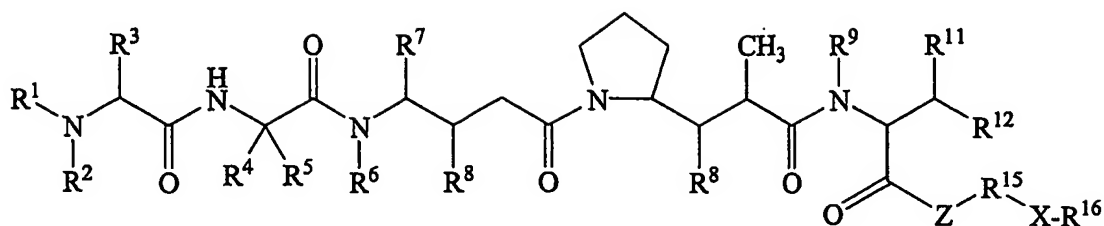
G is selected from -Cl, -Br, -I, -O-mesyl and -O-tosyl;

J is selected from -Cl, -Br, -I, -F, -OH, -O-N-succinimide, -O-(4-nitrophenyl), -O-pentafluorophenyl, -O-tetrafluorophenyl and -O-C(O)-OR¹⁸;

R¹⁷ is selected from -C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-, -C₃-C₈ carbocyclo-, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl)-, -arylene-, -C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-arylene-, -arylene-C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-, -C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-(C₃-C₈ carbocyclo)-, -(C₃-C₈ carbocyclo)-C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-, -C₃-C₈ heterocyclo-, -C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-(C₃-C₈ heterocyclo)-, -(C₃-C₈ heterocyclo)-C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-, -(CH₂CH₂O)_r-, and -(CH₂CH₂O)_r-CH₂-; r is an integer ranging from 1-10; and

R¹⁸ is -C₁-C₈ alkyl or -aryl.

In another aspect, the present invention provides compounds of the formula III:



IIf

and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and solvates thereof

wherein, independently at each location:

5 R^1 is selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl and -C₃-C₈ carbocycle; and R^2 is selected from -H and -C₁-C₈ alkyl; or R^1 and R^2 join, have the formula $-(CR^aR^b)_n-$ wherein R^a and R^b are independently selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl and -C₃-C₈ carbocycle and n is selected from 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6, and form a ring with the nitrogen atom to which they are attached;

10 R^3 is selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle);

R^4 is selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle) wherein R^5 is selected from -H and -methyl; or R^4 and R^5 join, have the formula $-(CR^aR^b)_n-$ wherein R^a and R^b are independently selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl and -C₃-C₈ carbocycle and n is selected from 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6, and form a ring with the carbon atom to which they are attached;

R^6 is selected from -H and -C₁-C₈ alkyl;

20 R^7 is selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle);

each R^8 is independently selected from -H, -OH, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle and -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl);

25 R^9 is selected from -H and -C₁-C₈ alkyl;

X is -O-, -S-, -NH- or -N(R¹⁴)-;

Z is -O-, -S-, -NH- or -N(R¹⁴)-;

R^{11} is selected from -H, -OH, -NH₂, -NHR¹⁴, -N(R¹⁴)₂, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle); or R^{11} is an oxygen atom which forms

a carbonyl unit (C=O) with the carbon atom to which it is attached and a hydrogen atom on this carbon atom is replaced by one of the bonds in the (C=O) double bond;

each R^{12} is independently selected from -aryl and -C₃-C₈ heterocycle;

each R^{14} is independently -H or -C₁-C₈ alkyl;

5 R^{15} is -arylene-, -C₃-C₈ carbocyclo- or -C₃-C₈ heterocyclo-;

R^{16} is -Yy-Ww-A'

wherein

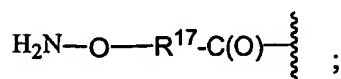
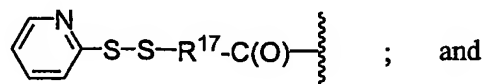
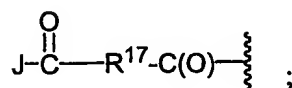
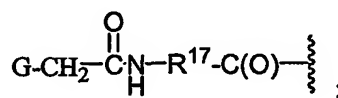
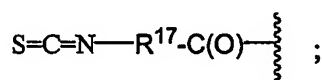
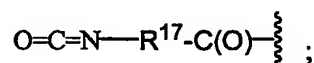
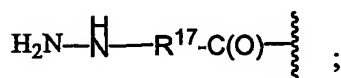
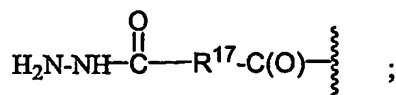
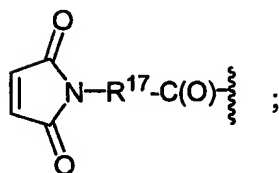
each -W- is independently an Amino Acid unit;

-Y- is a Spacer unit;

10 w is an integer ranging from 0 to 12;

y is 0, 1 or 2; and

-A' is selected from



wherein

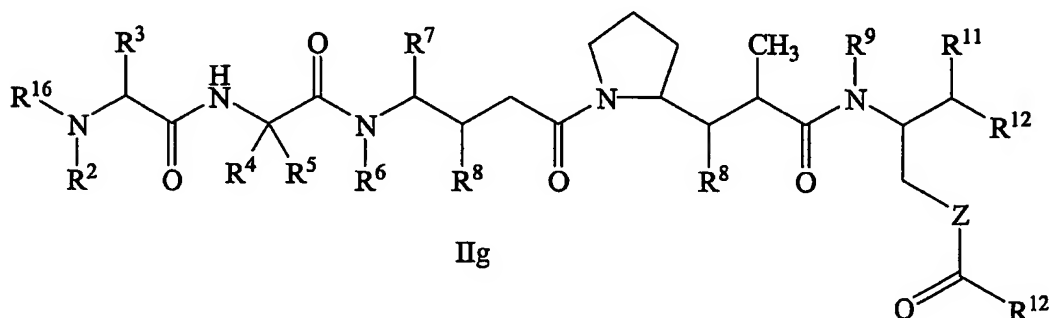
15 G is selected from -Cl, -Br, -I, -O-mesyl and -O-tosyl;

J is selected from -Cl, -Br, -I, -F, -OH, -O-N-succinimide, -O-(4-nitrophenyl), -O-pentafluorophenyl, -O-tetrafluorophenyl and -O-C(O)-OR¹⁸;

- R^{17} is selected from $-C_1-C_{10}$ alkylene-, $-C_3-C_8$ carbocyclo-, $-O-(C_1-C_8 \text{ alkyl})-$, $-$ arylene-, $-C_1-C_{10}$ alkylene-arylene-, $-$ arylene- $-C_1-C_{10}$ alkylene-, $-C_1-C_{10}$ alkylene- $(C_3-C_8 \text{ carbocyclo})-$, $-(C_3-C_8 \text{ carbocyclo})-C_1-C_{10}$ alkylene-, $-C_3-C_8$ heterocyclo-, $-C_1-C_{10}$ alkylene- $(C_3-C_8 \text{ heterocyclo})-$, $-(C_3-C_8 \text{ heterocyclo})-C_1-C_{10}$ alkylene-, $-(CH_2CH_2O)_r-$, and
- 5 $-(CH_2CH_2O)_r-CH_2-$; r is an integer ranging from 1-10; and
- R^{18} is $-C_1-C_8$ alkyl or $-$ aryl.

In another aspect, the present invention provides compounds of the formula

IIg:



- 10 and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and solvates thereof
- wherein, independently at each location:
- R^2 is selected from $-H$ and $-C_1-C_8$ alkyl;
- R^3 is selected from $-H$, $-C_1-C_8$ alkyl, $-C_3-C_8$ carbocycle, $-O-(C_1-C_8 \text{ alkyl})$, $-$ aryl, $-C_1-C_8$ alkyl-aryl, $-C_1-C_8$ alkyl- $(C_3-C_8 \text{ carbocycle})$, $-C_3-C_8$ heterocycle and $-C_1-C_8$
- 15 alkyl- $(C_3-C_8 \text{ heterocycle})$;
- R^4 is selected from $-H$, $-C_1-C_8$ alkyl, $-C_3-C_8$ carbocycle, $-O-(C_1-C_8 \text{ alkyl})$, $-$ aryl, $-C_1-C_8$ alkyl-aryl, $-C_1-C_8$ alkyl- $(C_3-C_8 \text{ carbocycle})$, $-C_3-C_8$ heterocycle and $-C_1-C_8$ alkyl- $(C_3-C_8 \text{ heterocycle})$ wherein R^5 is selected from $-H$ and $-$ methyl; or R^4 and R^5 join, have the formula $-(CR^aR^b)_n-$ wherein R^a and R^b are independently selected from $-H$, $-C_1-C_8$
- 20 alkyl and $-C_3-C_8$ carbocycle and n is selected from 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6, and form a ring with the carbon atom to which they are attached;
- R^6 is selected from $-H$ and $-C_1-C_8$ alkyl;
- R^7 is selected from $-H$, $-C_1-C_8$ alkyl, $-C_3-C_8$ carbocycle, $-O-(C_1-C_8 \text{ alkyl})$, $-$ aryl, $-C_1-C_8$ alkyl-aryl, $-C_1-C_8$ alkyl- $(C_3-C_8 \text{ carbocycle})$, $-C_3-C_8$ heterocycle and $-C_1-C_8$
- 25 alkyl- $(C_3-C_8 \text{ heterocycle})$;
- each R^8 is independently selected from $-H$, $-OH$, $-C_1-C_8$ alkyl, $-C_3-C_8$ carbocycle and $-O-(C_1-C_8 \text{ alkyl})$;

R^9 is selected from -H and -C₁-C₈ alkyl;

Z is -O-, -S-, -NH- or -N(R¹⁴)-;

R^{11} is selected from -H, -OH, -NH₂, -NHR¹⁴, -N(R¹⁴)₂, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle); or R^{11} is an oxygen atom which forms a carbonyl unit (C=O) with the carbon atom to which it is attached and a hydrogen atom on this carbon atom is replaced by one of the bonds in the (C=O) double bond;

each R^{12} is independently selected from -aryl and -C₃-C₈ heterocycle;

each R^{14} is independently -H or -C₁-C₈ alkyl;

10 R^{16} is -Yy-Ww-A'

wherein

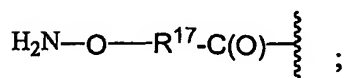
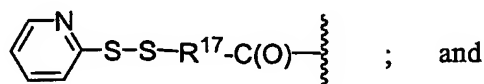
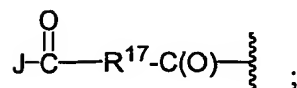
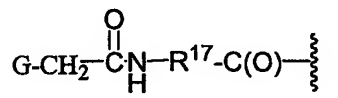
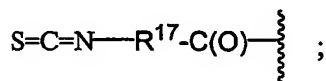
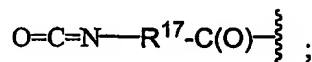
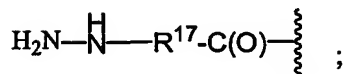
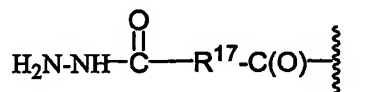
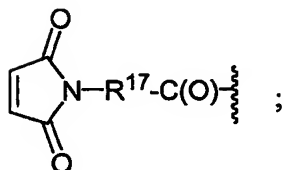
each -W- is independently an Amino Acid unit;

-Y- is a Spacer unit;

w is an integer ranging from 0 to 12;

15 y is 0, 1 or 2; and

-A' is selected from



wherein

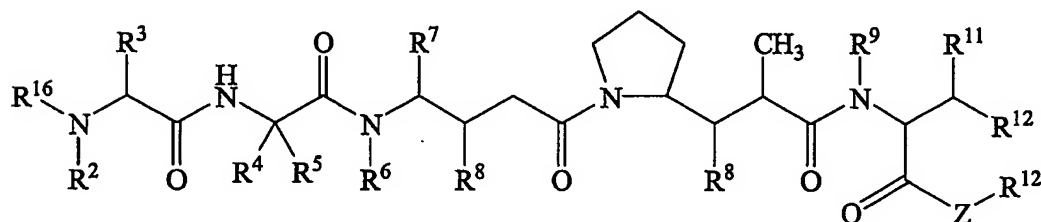
G is selected from -Cl, -Br, -I, -O-mesyl and -O-tosyl;

J is selected from -Cl, -Br, -I, -F, -OH, -O-N-succinimide, -O-(4-nitrophenyl), -O-pentafluorophenyl, -O-tetrafluorophenyl and -O-C(O)-OR¹⁸;

R¹⁷ is selected from -C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-, -C₃-C₈ carbocyclo-, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl)-, -arylene-, -C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-arylene-, -arylene-C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-, -C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-(C₃-C₈ carbocyclo)-, -(C₃-C₈ carbocyclo)-C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-, -C₃-C₈ heterocyclo-, -C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-(C₃-C₈ heterocyclo)-, -(C₃-C₈ heterocyclo)-C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-, -(CH₂CH₂O)_r-, and -(CH₂CH₂O)_r-CH₂-; r is an integer ranging from 1-10; and

R¹⁸ is -C₁-C₈ alkyl or -aryl.

10 In another aspect, the present invention provides compounds of the formula IIIh:



IIIh

and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and solvates thereof

wherein, independently at each location:

15 R² is selected from -H and -C₁-C₈ alkyl;

R³ is selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle);

20 R⁴ is selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle) wherein R⁵ is selected from -H and -methyl; or R⁴ and R⁵ join, have the formula -(CR^aR^b)_n- wherein R^a and R^b are independently selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl and -C₃-C₈ carbocycle and n is selected from 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6, and form a ring with the carbon atom to which they are attached;

25 R⁶ is selected from -H and -C₁-C₈ alkyl;

R⁷ is selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle);

each R⁸ is independently selected from -H, -OH, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle and -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl);

R⁹ is selected from -H and -C₁-C₈ alkyl;

Z is -O-, -S-, -NH- or -N(R¹⁴)-;

- 5 R¹¹ is selected from -H, -OH, -NH₂, -NHR¹⁴, -N(R¹⁴)₂, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle); or R¹¹ is an oxygen atom which forms a carbonyl unit (C=O) with the carbon atom to which it is attached and a hydrogen atom on this carbon atom is replaced by one of the bonds in the (C=O) double bond;

- 10 each R¹² is independently selected from -aryl and -C₃-C₈ heterocycle;

each R¹⁴ is independently -H or -C₁-C₈ alkyl;

R¹⁶ is -Yy-Ww-A'

wherein

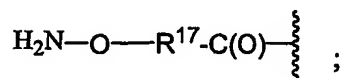
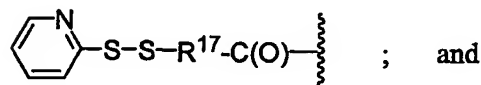
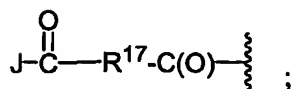
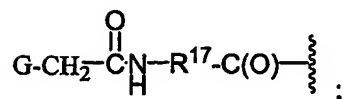
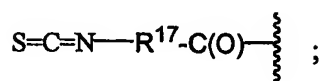
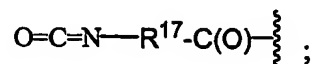
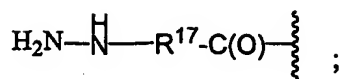
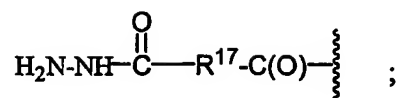
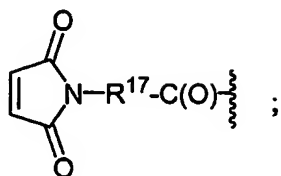
each -W- is independently an Amino Acid unit;

- 15 -Y- is a Spacer unit;

w is an integer ranging from 0 to 12;

y is 0, 1 or 2; and

-A' is selected from



wherein

G is selected from -Cl, -Br, -I, -O-mesyl and -O-tosyl;

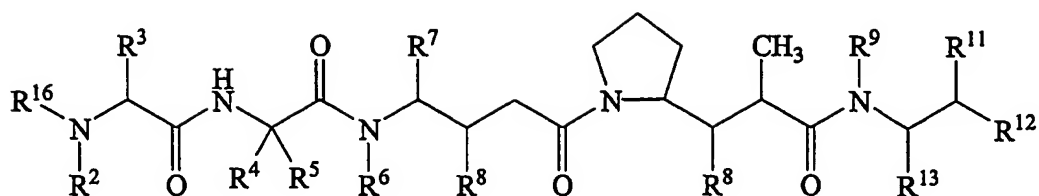
J is selected from -Cl, -Br, -I, -F, -OH, -O-N-succinimide, -O-(4-nitrophenyl), -O-pentafluorophenyl, -O-tetrafluorophenyl and -O-C(O)-OR¹⁸;

R¹⁷ is selected from -C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-, -C₃-C₈ carbocyclo-, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl)-, -arylene-, -C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-arylene-, -arylene-C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-, -C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-(C₃-C₈ carbocyclo)-, -(C₃-C₈ carbocyclo)-C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-, -C₃-C₈ heterocyclo-, -C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-(C₃-C₈ heterocyclo)-, -(C₃-C₈ heterocyclo)-C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-, -(CH₂CH₂O)_r-, and -(CH₂CH₂O)_r-CH₂-; r is an integer ranging from 1-10; and

R¹⁸ is -C₁-C₈ alkyl or -aryl.

In another aspect, the present invention provides compounds of the formula

III:



III

and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and solvates thereof

wherein, independently at each location:

R^2 is selected from -H and -C₁-C₈ alkyl;

5 R^3 is selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle);

R^4 is selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle) wherein R^5 is selected from -H and -methyl; or R^4 and R^5 join, 10 have the formula $-(CR^aR^b)_n-$ wherein R^a and R^b are independently selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl and -C₃-C₈ carbocycle and n is selected from 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6, and form a ring with the carbon atom to which they are attached;

R^6 is selected from -H and -C₁-C₈ alkyl;

15 R^7 is selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle);

each R^8 is independently selected from -H, -OH, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle and -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl);

20 R^9 is selected from -H and -C₁-C₈ alkyl;

R^{11} is selected from -H, -OH, -NH₂, -NHR¹⁴, -N(R¹⁴)₂, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle); or R^{11} is an oxygen atom which forms a carbonyl unit (C=O) with the carbon atom to which it is attached and a hydrogen atom on 25 this carbon atom is replaced by one of the bonds in the (C=O) double bond;

each R^{12} is independently selected from -aryl and -C₃-C₈ heterocycle;

R^{13} is selected from -H, -OH, -NH₂, -NHR¹⁴, -N(R¹⁴)₂, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle);

each R^{14} is independently -H or -C₁-C₈ alkyl;

R^{16} is -Yy-Ww-A'

wherein

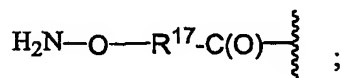
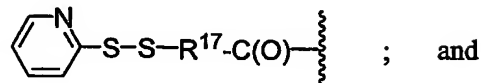
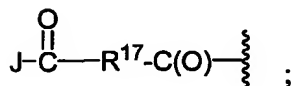
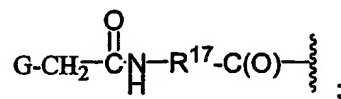
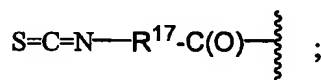
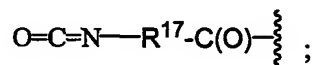
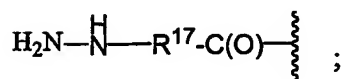
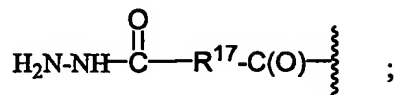
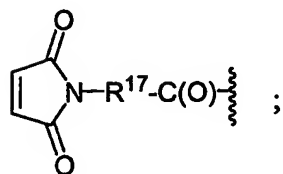
each -W- is independently an Amino Acid unit;

5 -Y- is a Spacer unit;

w is an integer ranging from 0 to 12;

y is 0, 1 or 2; and

-A' is selected from



10 wherein

G is selected from -Cl, -Br, -I, -O-mesyl and -O-tosyl;

J is selected from -Cl, -Br, -I, -F, -OH, -O-N-succinimide, -O-(4-nitrophenyl), -O-pentafluorophenyl, -O-tetrafluorophenyl and -O-C(O)-OR¹⁸;

15 R^{17} is selected from -C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-, -C₃-C₈ carbocyclo-, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl)-, -arylene-, -C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-arylene-, -arylene-C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-, -C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-(C₃-C₈ carbocyclo)-, -(C₃-C₈ carbocyclo)-C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-, -C₃-C₈ heterocyclo-, -C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-(C₃-C₈ heterocyclo)-, -(C₃-C₈ heterocyclo)-C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-, -(CH₂CH₂O)_r, and -(CH₂CH₂O)_r-CH₂-; r is an integer ranging from 1-10; and

R¹⁸ is -C₁-C₈ alkyl or -aryl.

A compound of formula IIa-i or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or solvate thereof (a "Drug-Linker Compound") is useful for treating cancer, an autoimmune disease or an infectious disease in an animal or useful as an intermediate for the synthesis of a

5 Drug-Linker-Ligand Conjugate.

In another aspect, the present invention provides compositions comprising an effective amount of a Drug-Linker-Ligand Conjugate and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier or vehicle.

10 In still another aspect, the present invention provides compositions comprising an effective amount of a Drug-Linker Compound and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier or vehicle.

In yet another aspect, the present invention provides methods for killing or inhibiting the multiplication of a tumor cell or cancer cell, comprising administering to an animal in need thereof an effective amount of a Drug-Linker Compound.

15 In another aspect, the present invention provides methods for killing or inhibiting the multiplication of a tumor cell or cancer cell, comprising administering to an animal in need thereof an effective amount of a Drug-Linker-Ligand Conjugate.

In still another aspect, the invention provides methods for treating cancer, comprising administering to an animal in need thereof an effective amount of a Drug-
20 Linker Compound.

In yet another aspect, the invention provides methods for treating cancer, comprising administering to an animal in need thereof an effective amount of a Drug-Linker-Ligand Conjugate.

25 In still another aspect, the invention provides methods for killing or inhibiting the replication of a cell that expresses an auto-immune antibody, comprising administering to an animal in need thereof an effective amount of a Drug-Linker Compound.

In another aspect, the invention provides methods for killing or inhibiting the replication of a cell that expresses an auto-immune antibody, comprising administering to
30 an animal in need thereof an effective amount of a Drug-Linker-Ligand Conjugate.

In yet another aspect, the invention provides methods for treating an autoimmune disease, comprising administering to an animal in need thereof an effective amount of a Drug-Linker Compound.

In yet another aspect, the invention provides methods for treating an autoimmune disease, comprising administering to an animal in need thereof an effective amount of a Drug-Linker-Ligand Conjugate.

5 In still another aspect, the invention provides methods for treating an infectious disease, comprising administering to an animal in need thereof an effective amount of a Drug-Linker Compound.

In still another aspect, the invention provides methods for treating an infectious disease, comprising administering to an animal in need thereof an effective amount of a Drug-Linker-Ligand Conjugate.

10 In yet another aspect, the present invention provides methods for preventing the multiplication of a tumor cell or cancer cell, comprising administering to an animal in need thereof an effective amount of a Drug-Linker Compound.

In another aspect, the present invention provides methods for preventing the multiplication of a tumor cell or cancer cell, comprising administering to an animal in need thereof an effective amount of a Drug-Linker-Ligand Conjugate.

15 In still another aspect, the invention provides methods for preventing cancer, comprising administering to an animal in need thereof an effective amount of a Drug-Linker Compound.

20 In yet another aspect, the invention provides methods for preventing cancer, comprising administering to an animal in need thereof an effective amount of a Drug-Linker-Ligand Conjugate.

In still another aspect, the invention provides methods for preventing the multiplication of a cell that expresses an auto-immune antibody, comprising administering to an animal in need thereof an effective amount of a Drug-Linker Compound.

25 In another aspect, the invention provides methods for preventing the multiplication of a cell that expresses an auto-immune antibody, comprising administering to an animal in need thereof an effective amount of a Drug-Linker-Ligand Conjugate.

In yet another aspect, the invention provides methods for preventing an autoimmune disease, comprising administering to an animal in need thereof an effective amount of a Drug-Linker Compound.

30 In yet another aspect, the invention provides methods for preventing an autoimmune disease, comprising administering to an animal in need thereof an effective amount of a Drug-Linker-Ligand Conjugate.

In still another aspect, the invention provides methods for preventing an infectious disease, comprising administering to an animal in need thereof an effective amount of a Drug-Linker Compound.

In still another aspect, the invention provides methods for preventing an infectious disease, comprising administering to an animal in need thereof an effective amount of a Drug-Linker-Ligand Conjugate.

In another aspect, the invention provides a Drug-Linker Compound which can be used as an intermediate for the synthesis of a Drug-Linker-Ligand Conjugate.

The present invention may be understood more fully by reference to the following detailed description, Figures and illustrative examples, which are intended to exemplify non-limiting embodiments of the invention.

4. BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

FIG. 1 shows the cytotoxicity of Compound 49 and Compound 53 against the H3396 cell line. Line -D- represents Compound 49 and line -o- represents Compound 53.

FIG. 2 shows the cytotoxicity of Compounds 64, 65, 68 and 69 against the H3396 cell line. Line -◆- represents Compound 64, line -■- represents Compound 65, line -▲- represents Compound 68, and line -X- represents Compound 69.

FIG. 3 shows the cytotoxicity of Compounds 64, 65, 68 and 69 against the HCT-116 cell line. Line -◆- represents Compound 64, line -■- represents Compound 65, line -▲- represents Compound 68, and line -X- represents Compound 69.

FIG. 4 shows the cytotoxicity of Compounds 66 and 68 against the H3396 cell line. Line -□- represents Compound 66 and line -* represents Compound 68.

FIG. 5 shows the cytotoxicity of Compounds 66, 68 and 69 against the Karpas human colorectal cell line. Line -◆- represents Compound 66, line -▲- represents Compound 68, and line -X- represents Compound 69.

FIG. 6 shows the cytotoxicity of Compounds 66 and 67 against the H3396 cell line as a function of exposure length. The cells were either exposed to the conjugates for the entire duration of the assay without washing (96 hours), or were exposed to the conjugates for 2 hours, washed, and then incubated for an additional 94 hours. At the end of the 96 hour period, the cells were pulsed with Alamar Blue to determine cell viability. Line -□- represents Compound 66 at 2 h exposure, line -- represents Compound 67 at 2 h

exposure, line -●- represents Compound 66 at 96 h exposure, and line - - represents Compound 67 at 96 h exposure.

FIG. 7 shows the effect of Compounds 66-69 on the growth of L2987 human lung adenocarcinoma xenograft tumors which were implanted in nude mice. Line -X- represents untreated tumor, line -▼- represents Compound 66, line -◆- represents Compound 68, line -▽- Compound 67, and line -◇- represents Compound 69.

FIG. 8 shows the effects of Compounds 66-69 on the growth of Karpas human anaplastic large cell lymphoma xenograft tumors which were implanted in nude mice. Line -X- represents untreated tumor, line -▲- represents Compound 67, line -●- represents Compound 69, line -△- represents Compound 66, and line -○- represents Compound 68.

5. DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

5.1 DEFINITIONS

Examples of an "animal" include, but are not limited to, a human, rat, mouse, guinea pig, monkey, pig, goat, cow, horse, dog, cat, bird and fowl.

"Aryl" refers to a carbocyclic aromatic group. Examples of aryl groups include, but are not limited to, phenyl, naphthyl and anthracenyl. A carbocyclic aromatic group or a heterocyclic aromatic group can be unsubstituted or substituted with one or more groups including, but not limited to, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C(O)R', -OC(O)R', -C(O)OR', -C(O)NH₂, -C(O)NHR', -C(O)N(R')₂, -NHC(O)R', -S(O)₂R', -S(O)R', -OH, -halogen, -N₃, -NH₂, -NH(R'), -N(R')₂ and -CN; where each R' is independently selected from -C₁-C₈ alkyl and aryl.

The term "C₁-C₈ alkyl," as used herein refers to a straight chain or branched, saturated or unsaturated hydrocarbon having from 1 to 8 carbon atoms. Representative "C₁-C₈ alkyl" groups include, but are not limited to, -methyl, -ethyl, -n-propyl, -n-butyl, -n-pentyl, -n-hexyl, -n-heptyl, -n-octyl, -n-nonyl and -n-decyl; while branched C₁-C₈ alkyls include, but are not limited to, -isopropyl, -*sec*-butyl, -isobutyl, -*tert*-butyl, -isopentyl, 2-methylbutyl, unsaturated C₁-C₈ alkyls include, but are not limited to, -vinyl, -allyl, -1-butenyl, -2-butenyl, -isobutenyl, -1-pentenyl, -2-pentenyl, -3-methyl-1-butenyl, -2-methyl-2-butenyl, -2,3-dimethyl-2-butenyl, 1-hexyl, 2-hexyl, 3-hexyl, -acetylenyl, -propynyl, -1-butyne, -2-butyne, -1-pentyne, -2-pentyne, -3-methyl-1-butyne, methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, *n*-butyl, isobutyl, *sec*-butyl, *tert*-butyl, *n*-pentyl, isopentyl, neopentyl, *n*-hexyl, isohexyl, 2-methylpentyl, 3-methylpentyl, 2,2-dimethylbutyl, 2,3-

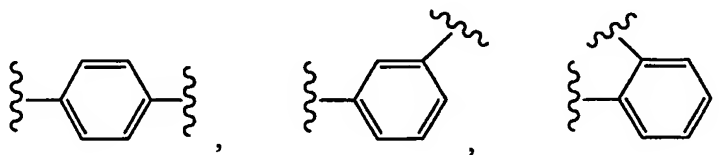
dimethylbutyl, 2,2-dimethylpentyl, 2,3-dimethylpentyl, 3,3-dimethylpentyl, 2,3,4-trimethylpentyl, 3-methylhexyl, 2,2-dimethylhexyl, 2,4-dimethylhexyl, 2,5-dimethylhexyl, 3,5-dimethylhexyl, 2,4-dimethylpentyl, 2-methylheptyl, 3-methylheptyl, *n*-heptyl, isoheptyl, *n*-octyl, and isooctyl. A C₁-C₈ alkyl group can be unsubstituted or substituted
 5 with one or more groups including, but not limited to, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C(O)R', -OC(O)R', -C(O)OR', -C(O)NH₂, -C(O)NHR', -C(O)N(R')₂, -NHC(O)R', -S(O)₂R', -S(O)R', -OH, -halogen, -N₃, -NH₂, -NH(R'), -N(R')₂ and -CN; where each R' is independently selected from -C₁-C₈ alkyl and aryl.

A "C₃-C₈ carbocycle" is a 3-, 4-, 5-, 6-, 7- or 8-membered saturated or
 10 unsaturated non-aromatic carbocyclic ring. Representative C₃-C₈ carbocycles include, but are not limited to, -cyclopropyl, -cyclobutyl, -cyclopentyl, -cyclopentadienyl, -cyclohexyl, -cyclohexenyl, -1,3-cyclohexadienyl, -1,4-cyclohexadienyl, -cycloheptyl, -1,3-cycloheptadienyl, -1,3,5-cycloheptatrienyl, -cyclooctyl, and -cyclooctadienyl. A C₃-C₈ carbocycle group can be unsubstituted or substituted with one or more groups including, but
 15 not limited to, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C(O)R', -OC(O)R', -C(O)OR', -C(O)NH₂, -C(O)NHR', -C(O)N(R')₂, -NHC(O)R', -S(O)₂R', -S(O)R', -OH, -halogen, -N₃, -NH₂, -NH(R'), -N(R')₂ and -CN; where each R' is independently selected from -C₁-C₈ alkyl and aryl.

A "C₃-C₈ carbocyclo" refers to a C₃-C₈ carbocycle group defined above
 20 wherein one of the carbocycle groups hydrogen atoms is replaced with a bond.

A "C₁-C₁₀ alkylene" is a straight chain, saturated hydrocarbon group of the formula -(CH₂)₁₋₁₀-. Examples of a C₁-C₁₀ alkylene include methylene, ethylene, propylene, butylene, pentylene, hexylene, heptylene, octylene, nonylene and decalene.

An "arylene" is an aryl group which has two covalent bonds and can be in
 25 the ortho, meta, or para configurations as shown in the following structures:



in which the phenyl group can be unsubstituted or substituted with up to four groups including, but not limited to, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C(O)R', -OC(O)R', -C(O)OR', -C(O)NH₂, -C(O)NHR', -C(O)N(R')₂, -NHC(O)R', -S(O)₂R', -S(O)R', -OH, -
 30 halogen, -N₃, -NH₂, -NH(R'), -N(R')₂ and -CN; where each R' is independently selected from -C₁-C₈ alkyl and aryl.

A "C₃-C₈ heterocycle" refers to an aromatic or non-aromatic C₃-C₈ carbocycle in which one to four of the ring carbon atoms are independently replaced with a heteroatom from the group consisting of O, S and N. Representative examples of a C₃-C₈ heterocycle include, but are not limited to, benzofuranyl, benzothiophene, indolyl, benzopyrazolyl, coumarinyl, isoquinolinyl, pyrrolyl, thiophenyl, furanyl, thiazolyl, imidazolyl, pyrazolyl, triazolyl, quinolinyl, pyrimidinyl, pyridinyl, pyridonyl, pyrazinyl, pyridazinyl, isothiazolyl, isoxazolyl and tetrazolyl. A C₃-C₈ Heterocycle can be unsubstituted or substituted with up to seven groups including, but not limited to, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C(O)R', -OC(O)R', -C(O)OR', -C(O)NH₂, -C(O)NHR', -C(O)N(R')₂, -NHC(O)R', -S(O)₂R', -S(O)R', -OH, -halogen, -N₃, -NH₂, -NH(R'), -N(R')₂ and -CN; where each R' is independently selected from -C₁-C₈ alkyl and aryl.

"C₃-C₈ heterocyclo" refers to a C₃-C₈ heterocycle group defined above wherein one of the heterocycle groups hydrogen atoms is replaced with a bond. A C₃-C₈ heterocyclo can be unsubstituted or substituted with up to six groups including, but not limited to, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C(O)R', -OC(O)R', -C(O)OR', -C(O)NH₂, -C(O)NHR', -C(O)N(R')₂, -NHC(O)R', -S(O)₂R', -S(O)R', -OH, -halogen, -N₃, -NH₂, -NH(R'), -N(R')₂ and -CN; where each R' is independently selected from -C₁-C₈ alkyl and aryl.

A "Compound of the Invention" is a Drug-Linker Compound or a Drug-Linker-Ligand Conjugate.

In one embodiment, the Compounds of the Invention are in isolated or purified form. As used herein, "isolated" means separated from other components of (a) a natural source, such as a plant or animal cell or cell culture, or (b) a synthetic organic chemical reaction mixture. As used herein, "purified" means that when isolated, the isolate contains at least 95 %, preferably at least 98%, of a Compound of the Invention by weight of the isolate.

Examples of a "Hydroxyl protecting group" include, but are not limited to, methoxymethyl ether, 2-methoxyethoxymethyl ether, tetrahydropyranyl ether, benzyl ether, p-methoxybenzyl ether, trimethylsilyl ether, triisopropyl silyl ether, t-butyldimethyl silyl ether, triphenylmethyl silyl ether, acetate ester, substituted acetate esters, pivaloate, benzoate, methanesulfonate and p-toluenesulfonate.

"Leaving group" refers to a functional group that can be substituted by another functional group. Such leaving groups are well known in the art, and examples include, but are not limited to, a halide (e.g., chloride, bromide, iodide), methanesulfonyl

(mesyl), p-toluenesulfonyl (tosyl), trifluoromethylsulfonyl (triflate), and trifluoromethylsulfonate.

The term "antibody," as used herein, refers to a full-length immunoglobulin molecule or an immunologically active portion of a full-length immunoglobulin molecule, *i.e.*, a molecule that contains an antigen binding site that immunospecifically binds an antigen of a target of interest or part thereof, such targets including but not limited to, cancer cell or cells that produce auto-immune antibodies associated with an autoimmune disease. The immunoglobulin disclosed herein can be of any type (*e.g.*, IgG, IgE, IgM, IgD, IgA and IgY), class (*e.g.*, IgG1, IgG2, IgG3, IgG4, IgA1 and IgA2) or subclass of immunoglobulin molecule. The immunoglobulins can be derived from any species. Preferably, however, the immunoglobulin is of human, murine, or rabbit origin. Antibodies useful in the invention are preferably monoclonal, and include, but are not limited to, polyclonal, monoclonal, bispecific, human, humanized or chimeric antibodies, single chain antibodies, Fv, Fab fragments, F(ab') fragments, F(ab')₂ fragments, fragments produced by a Fab expression library, anti-idiotypic (anti-Id) antibodies, CDR's, and epitope-binding fragments of any of the above which immunospecifically bind to cancer cell antigens, viral antigens or microbial antigens.

The phrase "pharmaceutically acceptable salt," as used herein, refers to pharmaceutically acceptable organic or inorganic salts of a Compound of the Invention. The Compounds of the Invention contain at least one amino group, and accordingly acid addition salts can be formed with this amino group. Preferred salts include, but are not limited, to sulfate, citrate, acetate, oxalate, chloride, bromide, iodide, nitrate, bisulfate, phosphate, acid phosphate, isonicotinate, lactate, salicylate, acid citrate, tartrate, oleate, tannate, pantothenate, bitartrate, ascorbate, succinate, maleate, gentisinate, fumarate, gluconate, glucaronate, saccharate, formate, benzoate, glutamate, methanesulfonate, ethanesulfonate, benzenesulfonate, p-toluenesulfonate, and pamoate (*i.e.*, 1,1'-methylene-bis-(2-hydroxy-3-naphthoate)) salts. A pharmaceutically acceptable salt may involve the inclusion of another molecule such as an acetate ion, a succinate ion or other counterion. The counterion may be any organic or inorganic moiety that stabilizes the charge on the parent compound. Furthermore, a pharmaceutically acceptable salt may have more than one charged atom in its structure. Instances where multiple charged atoms are part of the pharmaceutically acceptable salt can have multiple counterions. Hence, a pharmaceutically acceptable salt can have one or more charged atoms and/or one or more counterion.

"Pharmaceutically acceptable solvate" refers to an association of one or more solvent molecules and a Compound of the Invention. Examples of solvents that form pharmaceutically acceptable solvates include, but are not limited to, water, isopropanol, ethanol, methanol, DMSO, ethyl acetate, acetic acid, and ethanolamine.

5 In the context of cancer, the term "treating" includes any or all of: preventing growth of tumor cells or cancer cells, preventing replication of tumor cells or cancer cells, lessening of overall tumor burden and ameliorating one or more symptoms associated with the disease.

10 In the context of an autoimmune disease, the term "treating" includes any or all of: preventing replication of cells associated with an autoimmune disease state including, but not limited to, cells capable of producing an autoimmune antibody, lessening the autoimmune-antibody burden and ameliorating one or more symptoms of an autoimmune disease.

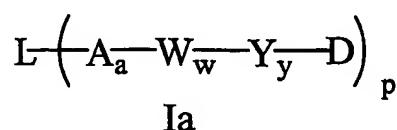
15 In the context of an infectious disease, the term "treating" includes any or all of: preventing the growth, multiplication or replication of the pathogen that causes the infectious disease and ameliorating one or more symptoms of an infectious disease.

The following abbreviations are used herein and have the indicated definitions: AE is auristatin E, Boc is *N*-(*t*-butoxycarbonyl), cit is citrulline, dap is dolaproine, DCC is 1,3-dicyclohexylcarbodiimide, DCM is dichloromethane, DEA is diethylamine, DEAD is diethylazodicarboxylate, DEPC is diethylphosphorylcyanidate, DIAD is diisopropylazodicarboxylate, DIEA is *N,N*-diisopropylethylamine, dil is dolaisoleuine, DMAP is 4-dimethylaminopyridine, DME is ethyleneglycol dimethyl ether (or 1,2-dimethoxyethane), DMF is *N,N*-dimethylformamide, DMSO is dimethylsulfoxide, doe is dolaphenine, dov is *N,N*-dimethylvaline, DTNB is 5,5'-dithiobis(2-nitrobenzoic acid), DTPA is diethylenetriaminepentaacetic acid, DTT is dithiothreitol, EDCI is 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride, EEDQ is 2-ethoxy-1-ethoxycarbonyl-1,2-dihydroquinoline, ES-MS is electrospray mass spectrometry, EtOAc is ethyl acetate, Fmoc is *N*-(9-fluorenylmethoxycarbonyl), gly is glycine, HATU is *O*-(7-azabenzotriazol-1-yl)-*N,N,N',N'*-tetramethyluronium hexafluorophosphate, HOBt is 1-hydroxybenzotriazole, HPLC is high pressure liquid chromatography, ile is isoleucine, lys is lysine, MeCN is acetonitrile, MeOH is methanol, Mtr is 4-anisylidiphenylmethyl (or 4-methoxytrityl), nor is (1*S*, 2*R*)-(+)-norephedrine, PAB is *p*-aminobenzyl, PBS is phosphate-buffered saline (pH 7.4), PEG is polyethylene glycol, Ph is phenyl, Pnp is *p*-nitrophenyl, MC is 6-maleimidocaproyl, Ph is phenyl, phe is

L-phenylalanine, PyBrop is bromo-tris-pyrrolidino-phosphonium hexafluorophosphate, SEC is size-exclusion chromatography, Su is succinimide, TFA is trifluoroacetic acid, TLC is thin layer chromatography, UV is ultraviolet, val is valine.

5.2 DRUG-LINKER-LIGAND CONJUGATES

5 As stated above, the invention provides compounds of the formula Ia:



and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and solvates thereof

wherein,

L- is a Ligand unit;

10 -A- is a Stretcher unit;

a is 0 or 1;

each -W- is independently an Amino Acid unit;

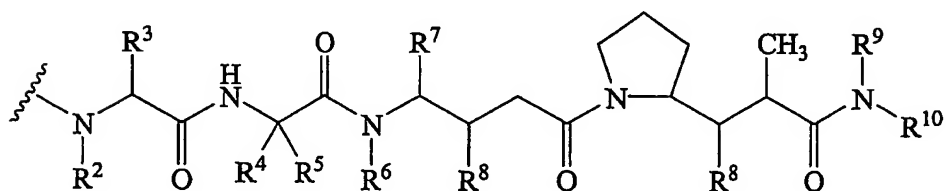
-Y- is a Spacer unit;

w is an integer ranging from 0 to 12;

15 y is 0, 1 or 2;

p ranges from 1 to about 20; and

-D is a Drug unit of the formula



wherein, independently at each location:

20 R^2 is selected from -H and -C₁-C₈ alkyl;

R³ is selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle);

25 R^4 is selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle) wherein R^5 is selected from -H and -methyl; or R^4 and R^5 join,

have the formula $-(CR^aR^b)_n-$ wherein R^a and R^b are independently selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl and -C₃-C₈ carbocycle and n is selected from 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6, and form a ring with the carbon atom to which they are attached;

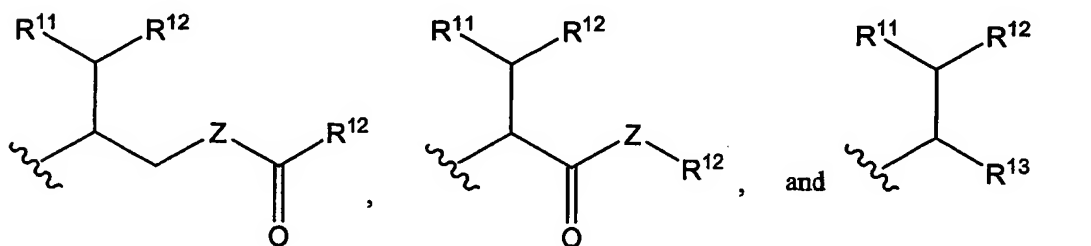
R^6 is selected from -H and -C₁-C₈ alkyl;

5 R^7 is selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle);

each R^8 is independently selected from -H, -OH, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle and -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl);

10 R^9 is selected from -H and -C₁-C₈ alkyl;

R^{10} is selected from



Z is -O-, -S-, -NH- or -N(R¹⁴)-;

15 R^{11} is selected from -H, -OH, -NH₂, -NHR¹⁴, -N(R¹⁴)₂, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle); or R^{11} is an oxygen atom which forms a carbonyl unit (C=O) with the carbon atom to which it is attached and a hydrogen atom on this carbon atom is replaced by one of the bonds in the (C=O) double bond;

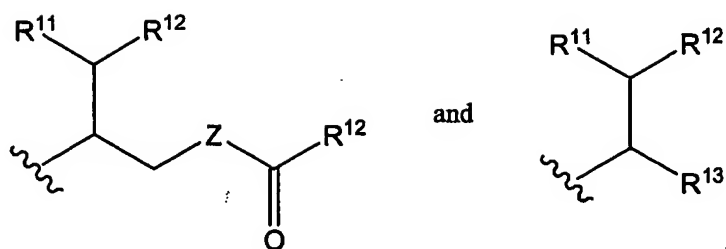
20 each R^{12} is independently selected from -aryl and -C₃-C₈ heterocycle;

R^{13} is selected from -H, -OH, -NH₂, -NHR¹⁴, -N(R¹⁴)₂, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle); and

each R^{14} is independently -H or -C₁-C₈ alkyl.

25

In one embodiment R^{10} is selected from



In another embodiment, w is an integer ranging from 2 to 12.

In another embodiment, p ranges from 1 to about 8.

5

In another embodiment, p ranges from 1 to about 3.

In another embodiment, p ranges from about 3 to about 5.

In still another embodiment, p ranges from about 7 to about 9.

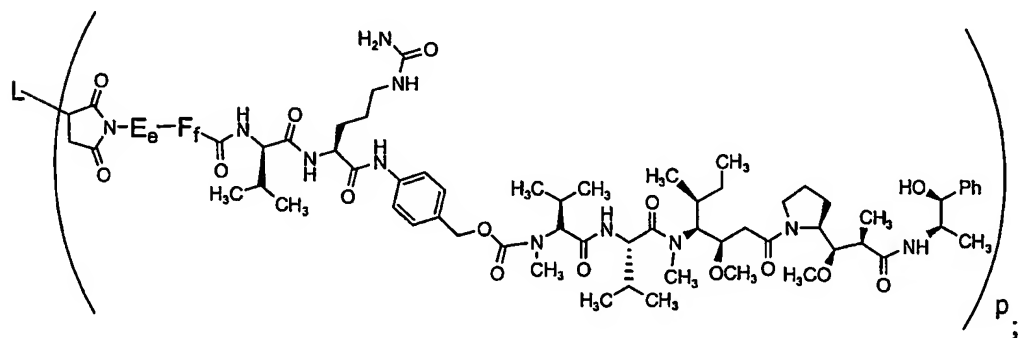
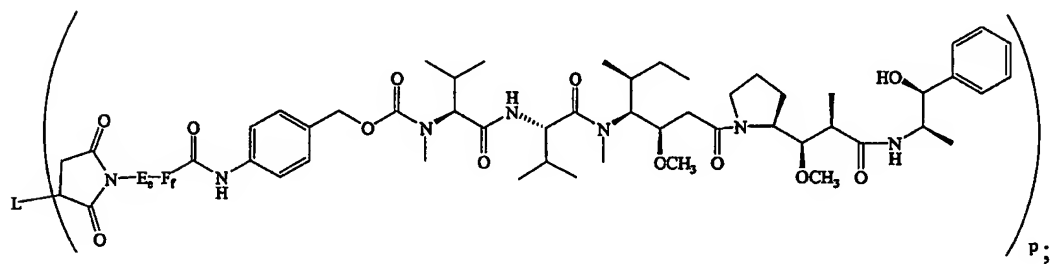
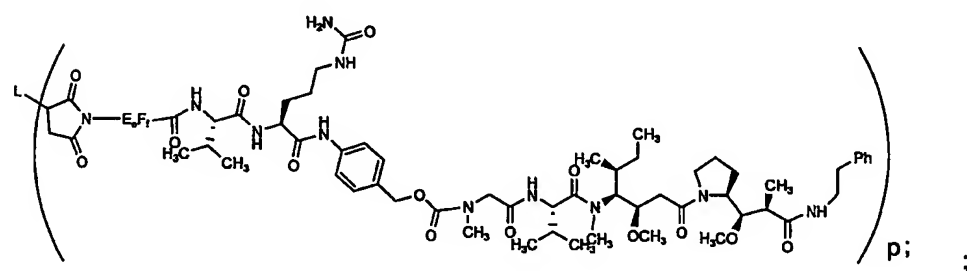
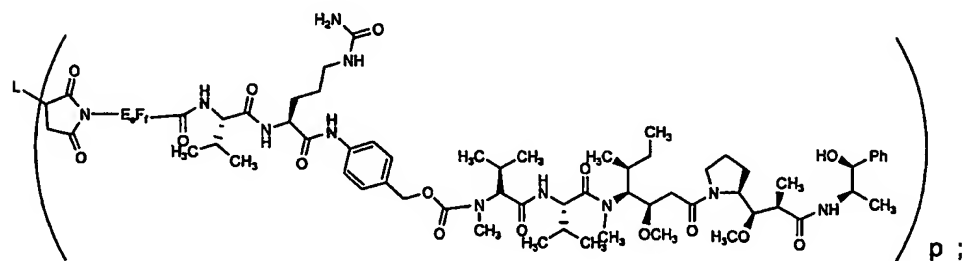
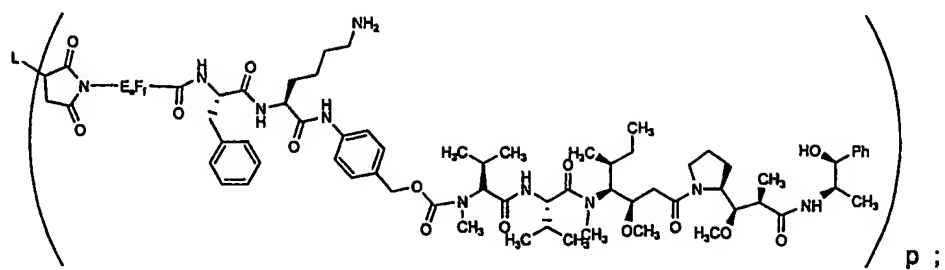
In another embodiment, p is about 8.

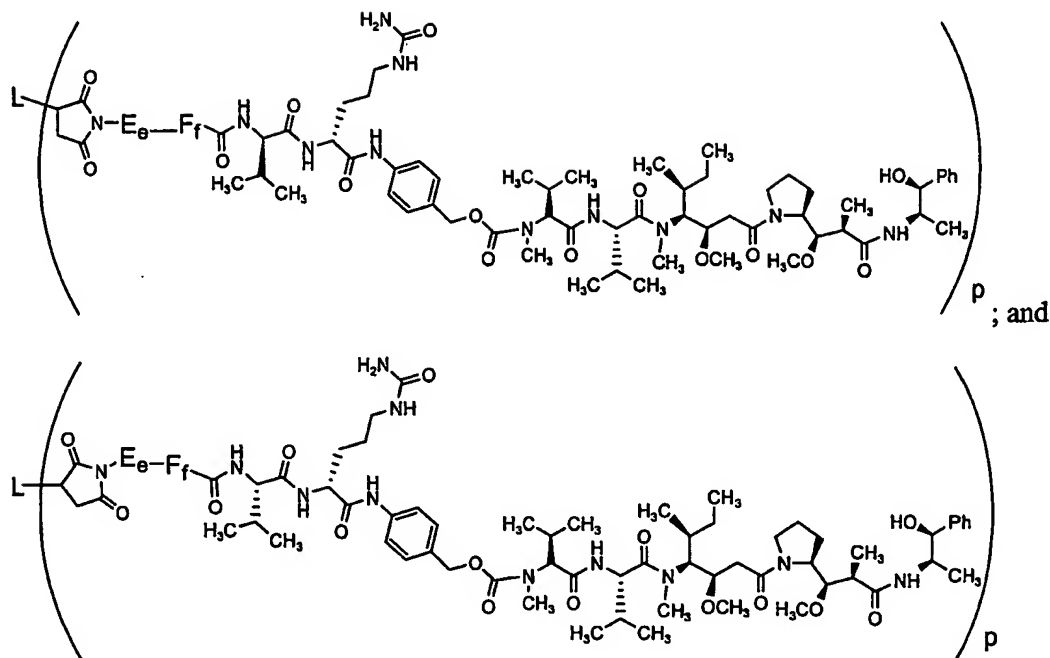
In another embodiment, p is about 4.

10

In a further embodiment, p is about 2.

Illustrative classes of compounds of formula Ia have the structures:





and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and solvates thereof,

where L- is a Ligand unit, E is -CH₂- or -CH₂CH₂O-; e is an integer ranging either from 0-

- 5 10 when E is -CH₂-, or from 1-10 when E is -CH₂CH₂O-; F is -CH₂-; f is 0 or 1; and p ranges from 1 to about 20.

In another embodiment, p ranges from 1 to about 8.

In another embodiment, p ranges from 1 to about 3.

In another embodiment, p ranges from about 3 to about 5.

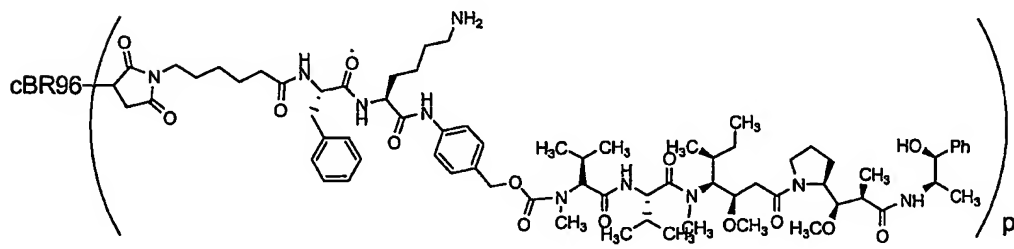
- 10 In still another embodiment, p ranges from about 7 to about 9.

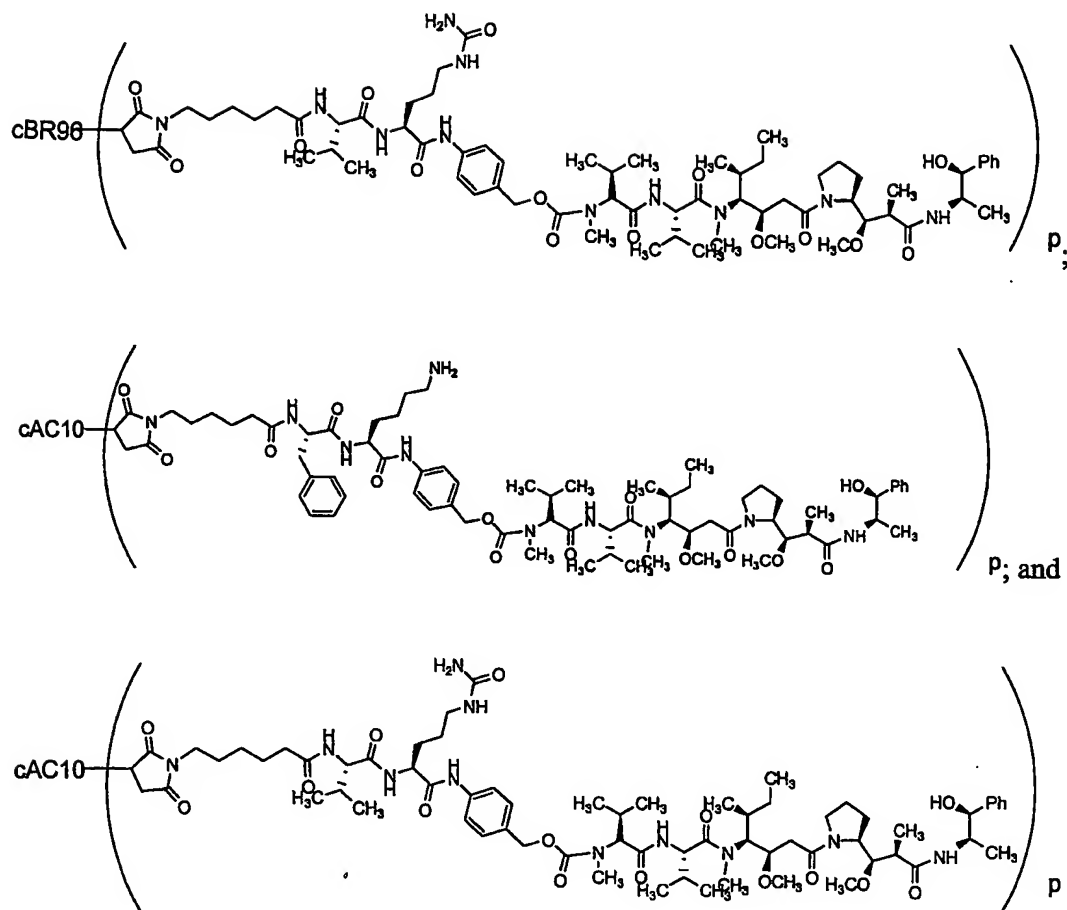
In another embodiment, p is about 8.

In another embodiment, p is about 4.

In another embodiment L is cBR96, cAC10 or 1F6.

- 15 Illustrative compounds of formula Ia have the structure:





and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and solvates thereof,

5 where p ranges from about 7 to about 9.

In one embodiment p ranges from 1 to about 3.

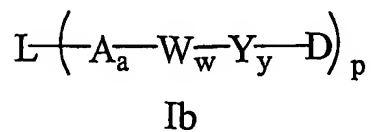
In another embodiment, p ranges from about 3 to about 5.

In another embodiment, p is about 8.

In yet another embodiment, p is about 4.

10 In a further embodiment, p is about 2.

In another aspect, the present invention provides compounds of general formula Ib:



15

and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and solvates thereof

wherein,

L- is a Ligand unit;

-A- is a Stretcher unit;

a is 0 or 1;

5 each -W- is independently an Amino Acid unit;

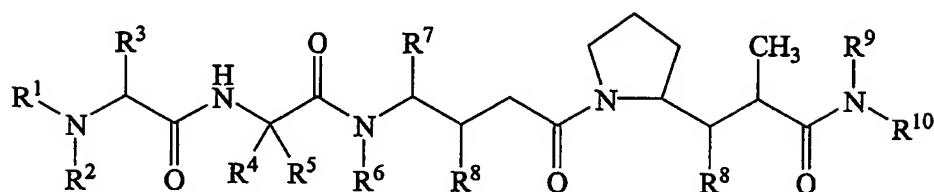
-Y- is a Spacer unit;

w is an integer ranging from 0 to 12;

y is 0, 1 or 2;

p ranges from 1 to about 20; and

10 -D is a Drug unit of the formula



wherein, independently at each location:

R^1 is selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl and -C₃-C₈ carbocycle; and R^2 is selected from -H and -C₁-C₈ alkyl; or R^1 and R^2 join, have the formula $-(CR^aR^b)_n$ - wherein R^a and R^b are independently selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl and -C₃-C₈ carbocycle and n is selected from 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6, and form a ring with the nitrogen atom to which they are attached;

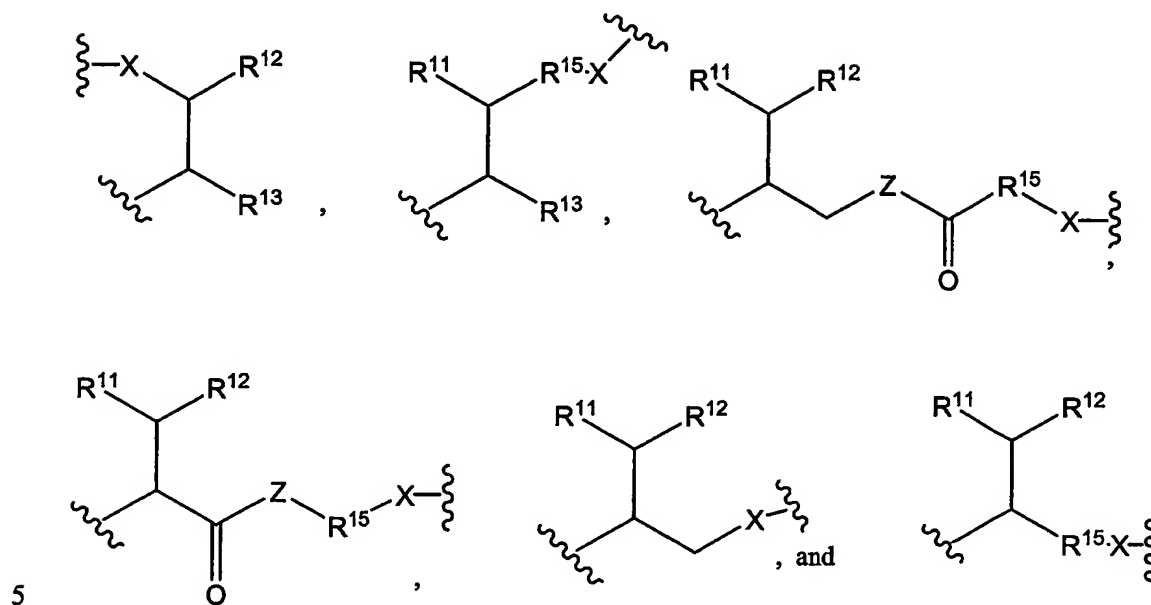
R^3 is selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle);

R^4 is selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle) wherein R^5 is selected from -H and -methyl; or R^4 and R^5 join, have the formula $-(CR^aR^b)_n$ - wherein R^a and R^b are independently selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl and -C₃-C₈ carbocycle and n is selected from 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6, and form a ring with the carbon atom to which they are attached;

R^6 is selected from -H and -C₁-C₈ alkyl;

R^7 is selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle);

each R^8 is independently selected from -H, -OH, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle and -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl);
 R^9 is selected from -H and -C₁-C₈ alkyl;
 R^{10} is selected from



X is -O-, -S-, -NH- or -N(R¹⁴)-, where X is bonded to Y when y is 1 or 2, or X is bonded to W when y is 0;

Z is -O-, -S-, -NH- or -N(R¹⁴)-;

R^{11} is selected from -H, -OH, -NH₂, -NHR¹⁴, -N(R¹⁴)₂, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle); or R^{11} is an oxygen atom which forms a carbonyl unit (C=O) with the carbon atom to which it is attached and a hydrogen atom on this carbon atom is replaced by one of the bonds in the (C=O) double bond;

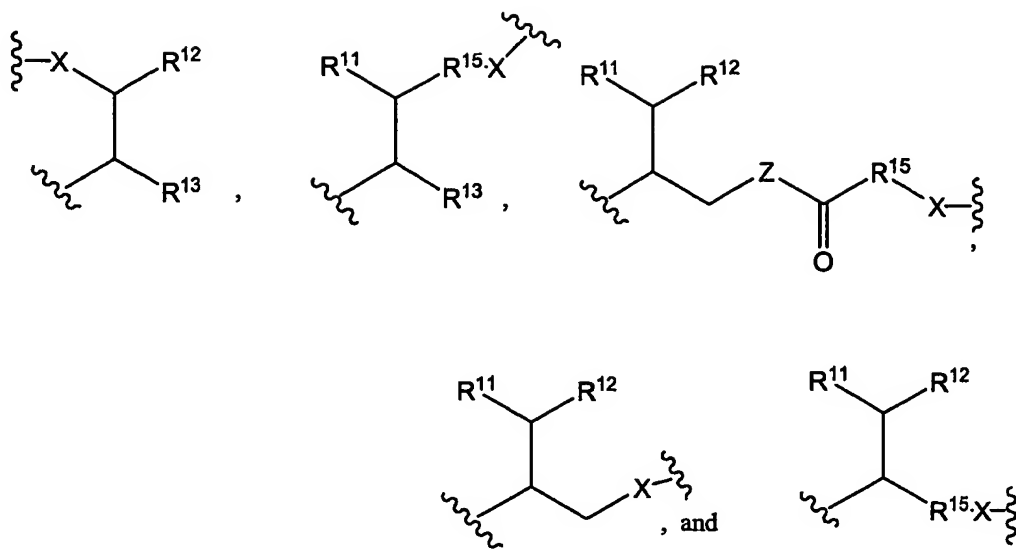
each R^{12} is independently selected from -aryl and -C₃-C₈ heterocycle;

R^{13} is selected from -H, -OH, -NH₂, -NHR¹⁴, -N(R¹⁴)₂, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle);

each R^{14} is independently -H or -C₁-C₈ alkyl; and

R^{15} is -arylene-, -C₃-C₈ carbocyclo- or -C₃-C₈ heterocyclo-.

In one embodiment, when R^1 is -H, R^{10} is selected from:



In another embodiment, w is an integer ranging from 2 to 12.

In another embodiment, p ranges from 1 to about 8.

5

In another embodiment, p ranges from 1 to about 3.

In another embodiment, p ranges from about 3 to about 5.

In still another embodiment, p ranges from about 7 to about 9.

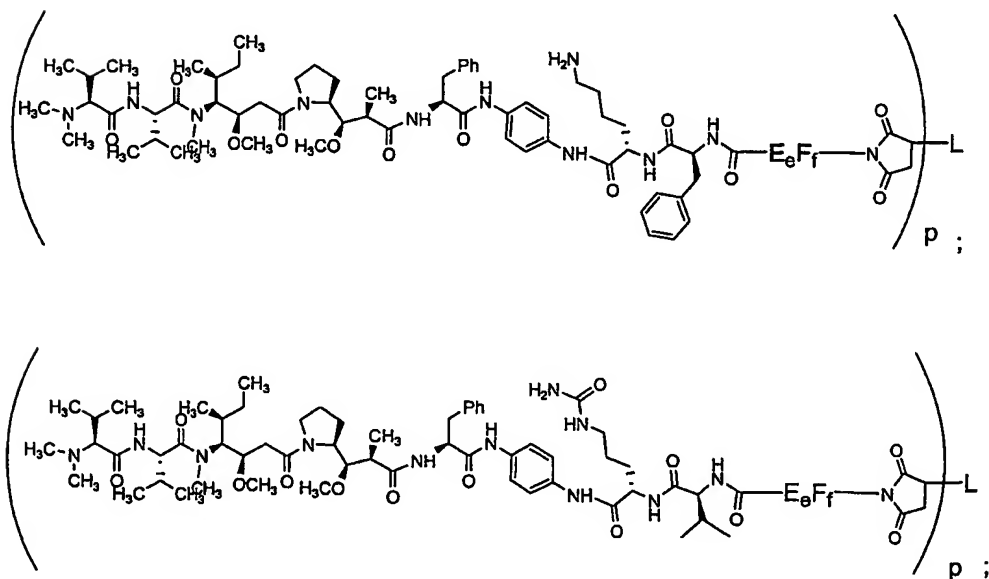
In another embodiment, p is about 8.

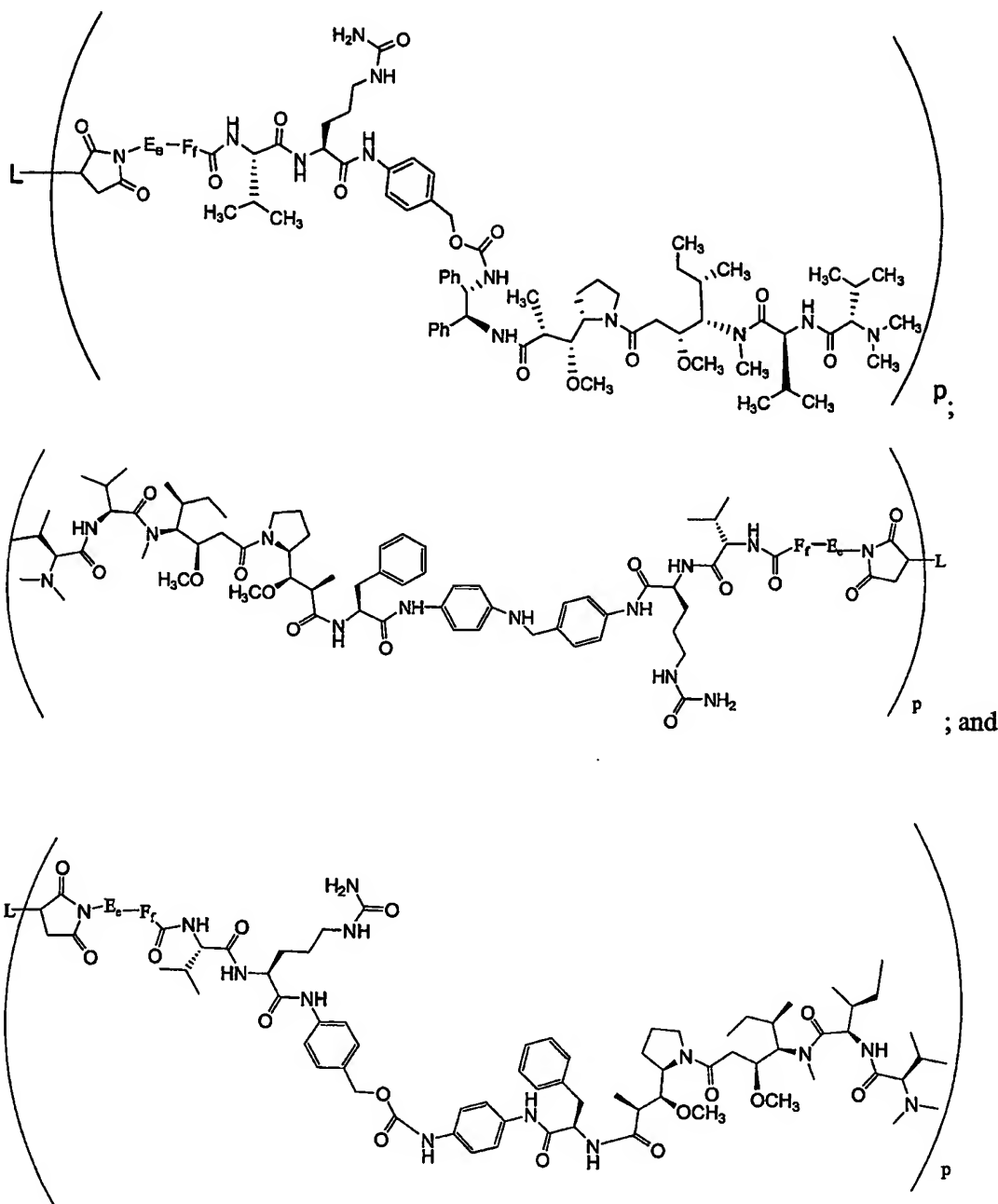
In another embodiment, p is about 4.

10

In a further embodiment, p is about 2.

Illustrative classes of compounds of formula Ib have the structure:





5 pharmaceutically acceptable salts and solvates thereof,

where L- is Ligand unit, E is -CH₂- or -CH₂CH₂O-; e is an integer ranging either from 0-10 when E is -CH₂-, or 1-10 when E is -CH₂CH₂O-; F is -CH₂-; f is 0 or 1; and p ranges from 1 to about 20.

In another embodiment, p ranges from 1 to about 8.

10

In another embodiment, p ranges from 1 to about 3.

In another embodiment, p ranges from about 3 to about 5.

In still another embodiment, p ranges from about 7 to about 9.

In another embodiment, p is about 8.

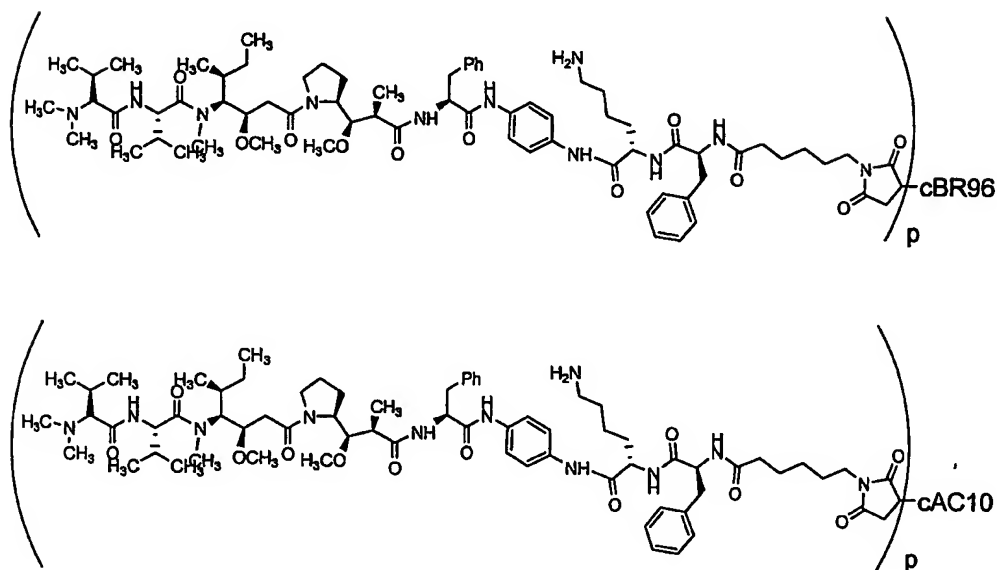
In another embodiment, p is about 4.

In a further embodiment, p is about 2.

In another embodiment L is cBR96, cAC10 or 1F6.

5

Illustrative compounds of formula Ib have the structure:



and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and solvates thereof,
where p ranges from about 7 to about 9.

10

In one embodiment p ranges from 1 to about 3.

In another embodiment, p ranges from about 3 to about 5.

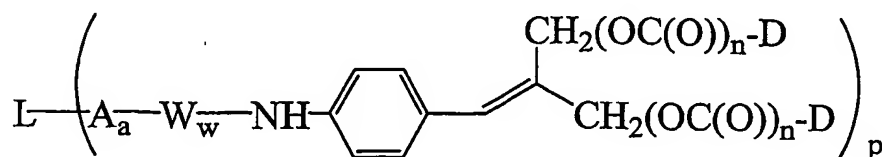
In another embodiment, p is about 8.

In yet another embodiment, p is about 4.

In a further embodiment, p is about 2.

15

In another aspect, the present invention provides compounds of general formula Ic:



Ic

L- is a Ligand unit;

-A- is a Stretcher unit;

a is 0 or 1;

each -W- is independently an Amino Acid unit;

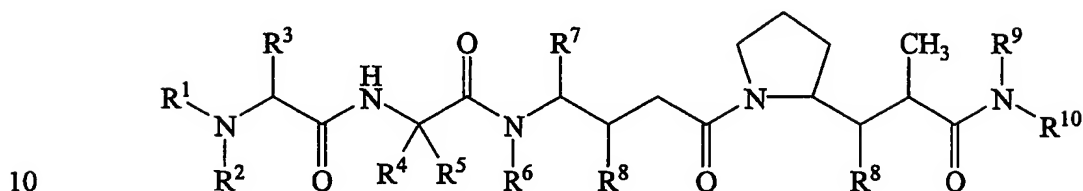
5 w is an integer ranging from 0 to 12;

each n is independently 0 or 1;

p ranges from 1 to about 20; and

each -D is independently:

(a) a Drug unit of the formula:



wherein, independently at each location:

R^1 is selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl and -C₃-C₈ carbocycle; and R^2 is selected from -H and -C₁-C₈ alkyl; or R^1 and R^2 join, have the formula $-(CR^aR^b)_n-$ wherein R^a and R^b are independently selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl and -C₃-C₈ carbocycle and n is selected from 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6, and form a ring with the nitrogen atom to which they are attached;

R^3 is selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle);

20 R^4 is selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle) wherein R^5 is selected from -H and -methyl; or R^4 and R^5 join, have the formula $-(CR^aR^b)_n-$ wherein R^a and R^b are independently selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl and -C₃-C₈ carbocycle and n is selected from 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6, and form a ring with the carbon atom to which they are attached;

R^6 is selected from -H and -C₁-C₈ alkyl;

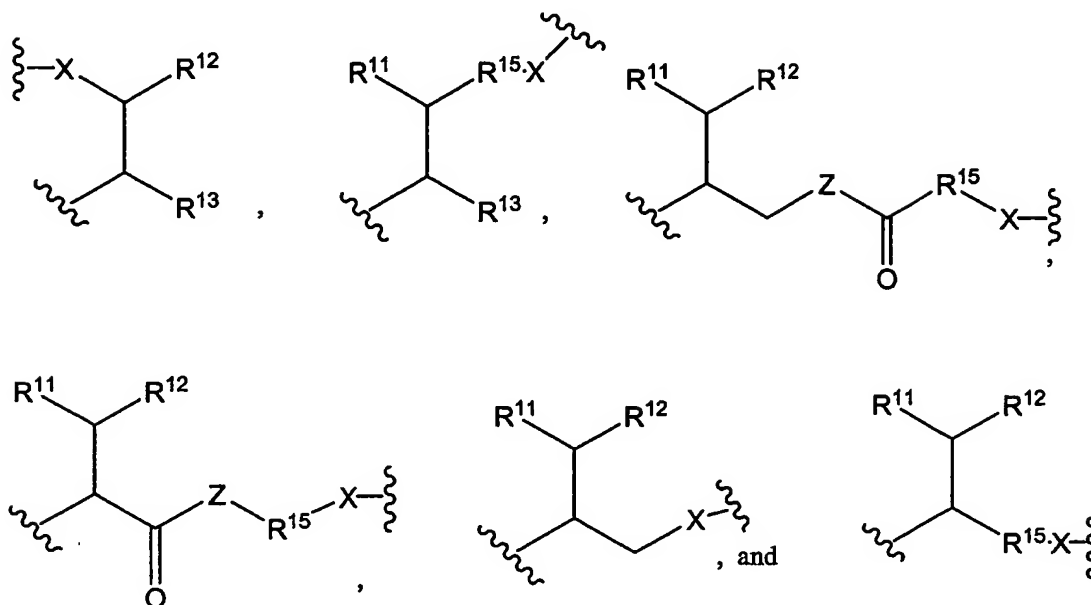
R^7 is selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle);

30 each R^8 is independently selected from -H, -OH, -C₁-C₈ alkyl,

-C₃-C₈ carbocycle and -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl);

R⁹ is selected from -H and -C₁-C₈ alkyl;

R¹⁰ is selected from



- 5 X is -O-, -S-, -NH- or -N(R¹⁴)-, where X is bonded to -C(O)- when y is 1 or 2, or X is bonded to -CH₂- when n is 0;

Z is -O-, -S-, -NH- or -N(R¹⁴)-;

- R¹¹ is selected from -H, -OH, -NH₂, -NHR¹⁴, -N(R¹⁴)₂, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle); or R¹¹ is an oxygen atom which forms a carbonyl unit (C=O) with the carbon atom to which it is attached and a hydrogen atom on this carbon atom is replaced by one of the bonds in the (C=O) double bond;

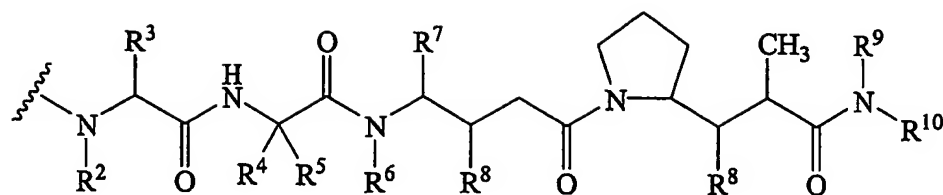
each R¹² is independently selected from -aryl and -C₃-C₈ heterocycle;

- R¹³ is selected from -H, -OH, -NH₂, -NHR¹⁴, -N(R¹⁴)₂, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle);

each R¹⁴ is independently -H or -C₁-C₈ alkyl; and

R¹⁵ is -arylene-, -C₃-C₈ carbocyclo- or -C₃-C₈ heterocyclo-; or

(b) a Drug unit of the formula:



wherein, independently at each location:

R² is selected from -H and -C₁-C₈ alkyl;

R³ is selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -
 5 aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈
 alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle);

R⁴ is selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -
 aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈
 alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle) wherein R⁵ is selected from -H and -methyl; or R⁴ and R⁵ join,
 10 have the formula -(CR^aR^b)_n- wherein R^a and R^b are independently selected from -H, -C₁-C₈
 alkyl and -C₃-C₈ carbocycle and n is selected from 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6, and form a ring with the
 carbon atom to which they are attached;

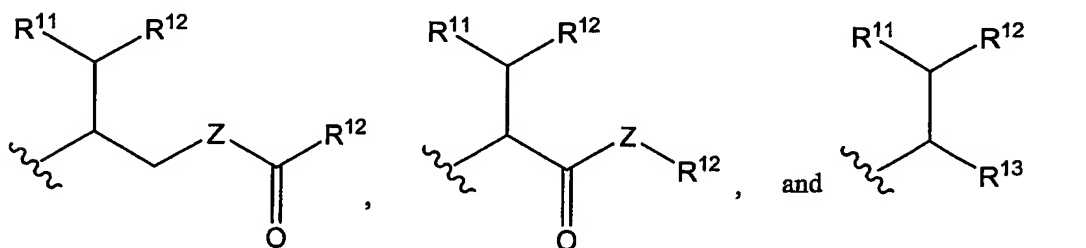
R⁶ is selected from -H and -C₁-C₈ alkyl;

R⁷ is selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -
 15 aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈
 alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle);

each R⁸ is independently selected from -H, -OH, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈
 carbocycle and -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl);

R⁹ is selected from -H and -C₁-C₈ alkyl;

20 R¹⁰ is selected from



Z is -O-, -S-, -NH- or -N(R¹⁴)₂;

R¹¹ is selected from -H, -OH, -NH₂, -NHR¹⁴, -N(R¹⁴)₂, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈
 25 carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-
 C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle); or R¹¹ is an oxygen atom which forms

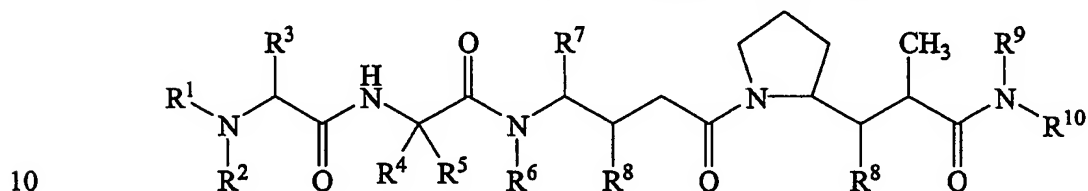
a carbonyl unit (C=O) with the carbon atom to which it is attached and a hydrogen atom on this carbon atom is replaced by one of the bonds in the (C=O) double bond;

each R^{12} is independently selected from -aryl and -C₃-C₈ heterocycle;

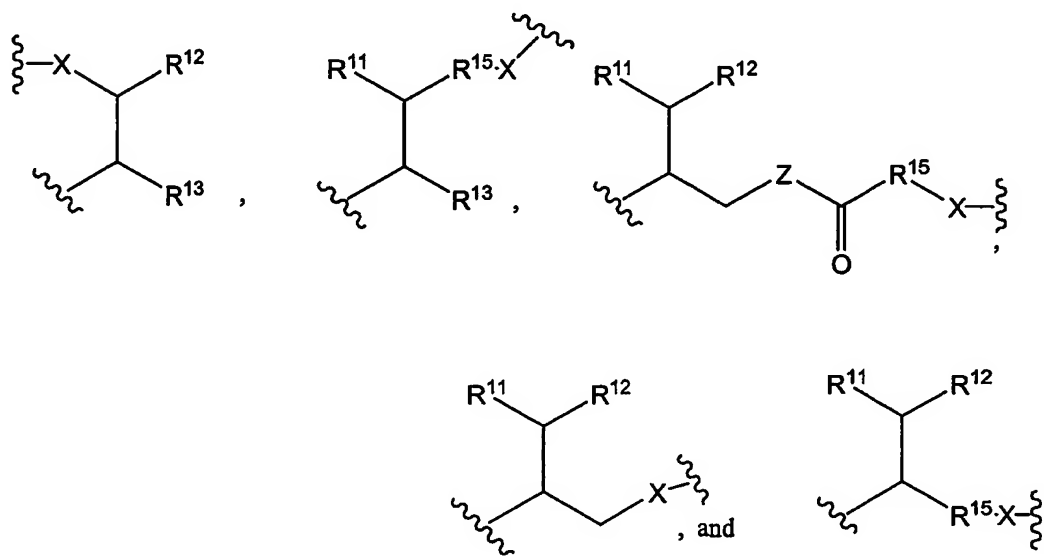
R^{13} is selected from -H, -OH, -NH₂, -NHR¹⁴, -N(R¹⁴)₂, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle); and

each R^{14} is independently -H or -C₁-C₈ alkyl.

In one embodiment, when the drug unit has the formula:

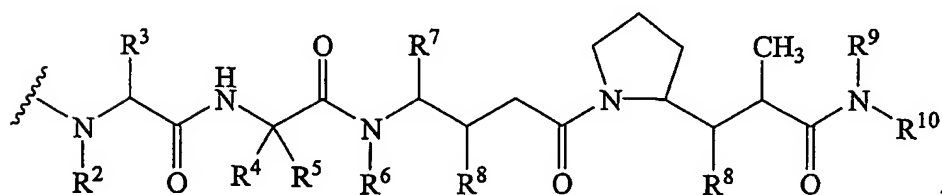


and R^1 is -H, R^{10} is selected from

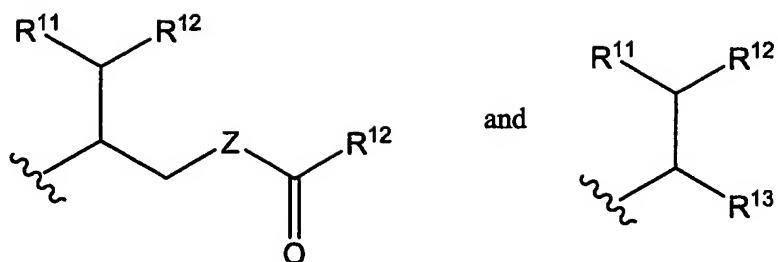


15

In another embodiment, when the drug unit has the formula:

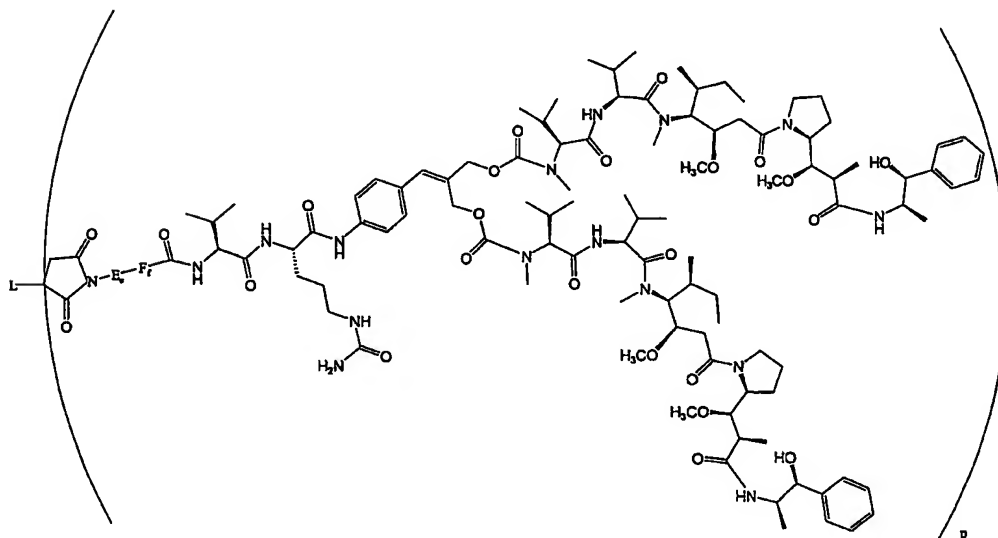


R¹⁰ is selected from



- 5 In another embodiment, w is an integer ranging from 2 to 12.
 In another embodiment, p ranges from 1 to about 8.
 In another embodiment, p ranges from 1 to about 3.
 In another embodiment, p ranges from about 3 to about 5.
 In still another embodiment, p ranges from about 7 to about 9.
- 10 In another embodiment, p is about 8.
 In another embodiment, p is about 4.
 In a further embodiment, p is about 2.

An illustrative compound of formula Ic has the structure:



15 wherein where L- is Ligand unit, E is -CH₂- or -CH₂CH₂O-; e is an integer ranging either from 0-10 when E is -CH₂-, or 1-10 when E is -CH₂CH₂O-; F is -CH₂-; f is 0 or 1; and p ranges from 1 to about 20.

- 20 In another embodiment, p ranges from 1 to about 8.
 In another embodiment, p ranges from 1 to about 3.

In another embodiment, p ranges from about 3 to about 5.

In still another embodiment, p ranges from about 7 to about 9.

In another embodiment, p is about 8.

In another embodiment, p is about 4.

5 In a further embodiment, p is about 2.

In another embodiment L is cBR96, cAC10 or 1F6.

The Drug-Linker-Ligand Conjugates are useful for treating or preventing cancer, an autoimmune disease or an infectious disease in an animal.

10 It is understood that p is the average number of $-A_a-W_w-Y_y-D$ units per ligand in a Drug-Linker-Ligand Conjugate of formulas Ia, Ib and Ic.

In one embodiment p ranges from 1 to 15.

In another embodiment p ranges from 1 to 10.

In another embodiment, p ranges from 1 to about 8.

15 In a further embodiment p ranges from 1 to about 5.

In another embodiment p ranges from 1 to about 3.

In one embodiment p ranges from about 3 to about 5.

In one embodiment p ranges from about 7 to about 9.

In another embodiment p is about 8.

20 In yet another embodiment p is about 4.

In still another embodiment p is about 2.

The Drug-Linker-Ligand Conjugates of formulas Ia, Ib and Ic may exist as mixtures, wherein each component of a mixture has a different p value. For example, a
25 Drug-Linker-Ligand Conjugate may exist as a mixture of two separate Conjugates, one Conjugate component wherein p is 7 and the other Conjugate component wherein p is 8.

In one embodiment, a Drug-Linker-Ligand Conjugate exists as a mixture of three separate conjugates wherein p for the three separate conjugates is 1, 2, and 3, respectively.

30 In another embodiment, a Drug-Linker-Ligand Conjugate exists as a mixture of three separate conjugates wherein p for the three separate conjugates is 3, 4, and 5, respectively.

In another embodiment, a Drug-Linker-Ligand Conjugate exists as a mixture of three separate conjugates wherein p for the three separate conjugates is 5, 6, and 7, respectively.

In still another embodiment, a Drug-Linker-Ligand Conjugate exists as a mixture of three separate conjugates wherein p for the three separate conjugates is 7, 8, and 9, respectively.

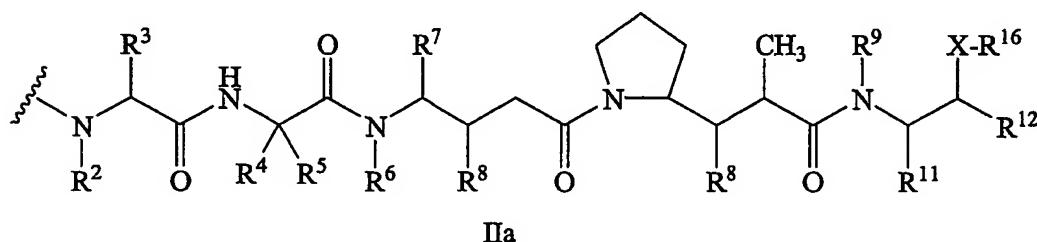
In yet another embodiment, a Drug-Linker-Ligand Conjugate exists as a mixture of three separate conjugates wherein p for the three separate conjugates is 9, 10, and 11, respectively.

In still another embodiment, a Drug-Linker-Ligand Conjugate exists as a mixture of three separate conjugates wherein p for the three separate conjugates is 11, 12, and 13, respectively.

In another embodiment, a Drug-Linker-Ligand Conjugate exists as a mixture of three separate conjugates wherein p for the three separate conjugates is 13, 14, and 15, respectively.

5.3 DRUG-LINKER COMPOUNDS

The present invention provides compounds of the formula IIa:



and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and solvates thereof

wherein, independently at each location:

R^1 is selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl and -C₃-C₈ carbocycle; and R^2 is selected from -H and -C₁-C₈ alkyl; or R^1 and R^2 join, have the formula $-(CR^aR^b)_n-$ wherein R^a and R^b are independently selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl and -C₃-C₈ carbocycle and n is selected from 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6, and form a ring with the nitrogen atom to which they are attached;

R^3 is selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle);

R^4 is selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle) wherein R^5 is selected from -H and -methyl; or R^4 and R^5 join, have the formula $-(CR^aR^b)_n-$ wherein R^a and R^b are independently selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl and -C₃-C₈ carbocycle and n is selected from 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6, and form a ring with the carbon atom to which they are attached;

R^6 is selected from -H and -C₁-C₈ alkyl;

R^7 is selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle);

each R^8 is independently selected from -H, -OH, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle and -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl);

R^9 is selected from -H and -C₁-C₈ alkyl;

X is -O-, -S-, -NH- or -N(R^{14})-, where X is bonded to Y when y is 1 or 2, or X is bonded to W when y is 0;

R^{11} is selected from -H, -OH, -NH₂, -NHR¹⁴, -N(R^{14})₂, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle); or R^{11} is an oxygen atom which forms a carbonyl unit (C=O) with the carbon atom to which it is attached and a hydrogen atom on this carbon atom is replaced by one of the bonds in the (C=O) double bond;

each R^{12} is independently selected from -aryl and -C₃-C₈ heterocycle;

each R^{14} is independently -H or -C₁-C₈ alkyl;

R^{16} is -Yy-Ww-A'

wherein

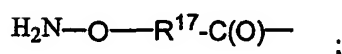
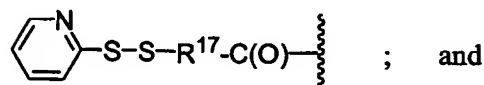
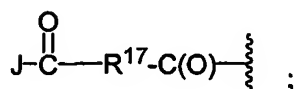
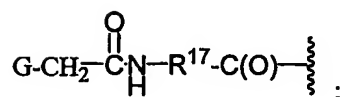
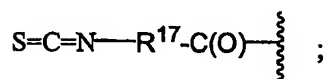
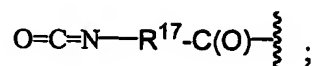
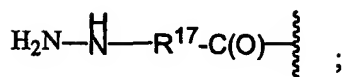
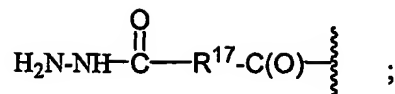
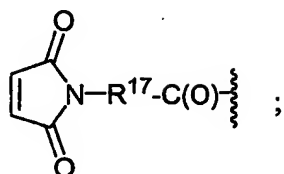
each -W- is independently an Amino Acid unit;

-Y- is a Spacer unit;

w is an integer ranging from 0 to 12;

y is 0, 1 or 2; and

-A' is selected from



wherein

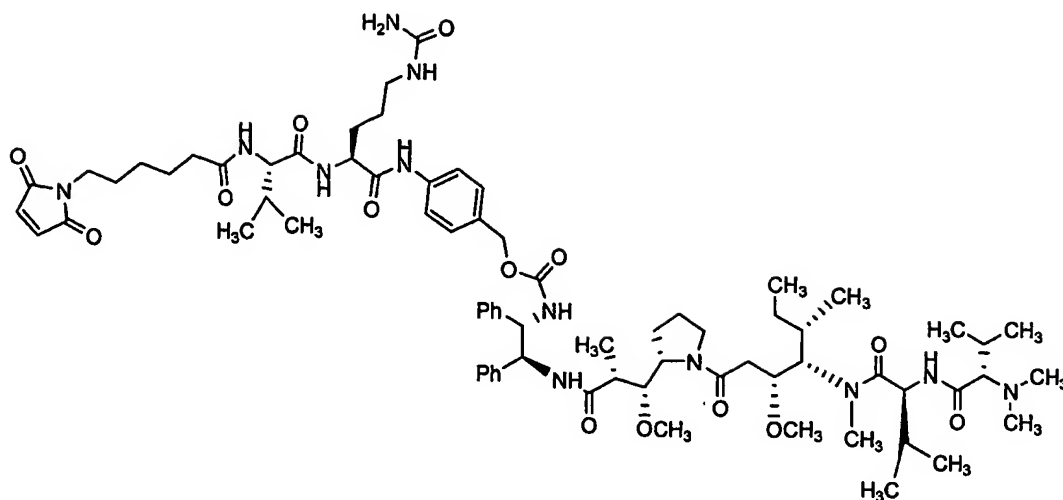
G is selected from -Cl, -Br, -I, -O-mesyl and -O-tosyl;

J is selected from -Cl, -Br, -I, -F, -OH, -O-N-succinimide, -O-(4-nitrophenyl), -O-pentafluorophenyl, -O-tetrafluorophenyl and -O-C(O)-OR¹⁸;

R¹⁷ is selected from -C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-, -C₃-C₈ carbocyclo-, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl)-, -arylene-, -C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-arylene-, -arylene-C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-, -C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-(C₃-C₈ carbocyclo)-, -(C₃-C₈ carbocyclo)-C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-, -C₃-C₈ heterocyclo-, -C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-(C₃-C₈ heterocyclo)-, -(C₃-C₈ heterocyclo)-C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-, -(CH₂CH₂O)_r-, and
 10 -(CH₂CH₂O)_r-CH₂-; r is an integer ranging from 1-10; and

R¹⁸ is -C₁-C₈ alkyl or -aryl.

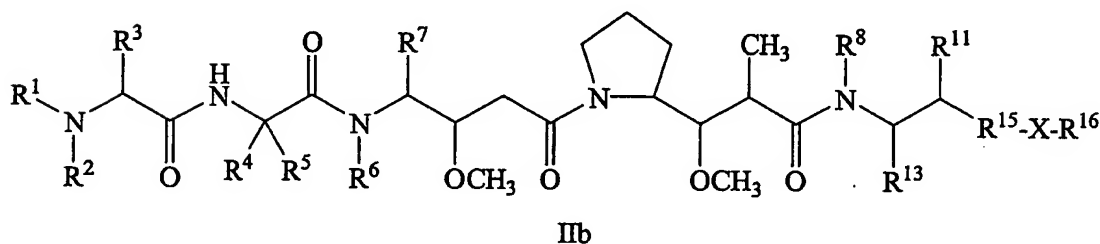
An illustrative compound of formula IIa has the structure:



and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and solvates thereof.

In another aspect, the present invention provides compounds of the formula

IIb:



5

and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and solvates thereof

wherein, independently at each location:

R^1 is selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl and -C₃-C₈ carbocycle; and R^2 is selected from -H and -C₁-C₈ alkyl; or R^1 and R^2 join, have the formula $-(CR^aR^b)_n-$ wherein R^a and R^b are independently selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl and -C₃-C₈ carbocycle and n is selected from 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6, and form a ring with the nitrogen atom to which they are attached;

R^3 is selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle);

R^4 is selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle) wherein R^5 is selected from -H and -methyl; or R^4 and R^5 join, have the formula $-(CR^aR^b)_n-$ wherein R^a and R^b are independently selected from -H, -C₁-C₈

alkyl and -C₃-C₈ carbocycle and n is selected from 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6, and form a ring with the carbon atom to which they are attached;

R⁶ is selected from -H and -C₁-C₈ alkyl;

R⁷ is selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -
 5 aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle);

each R⁸ is independently selected from -H, -OH, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle and -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl);

R⁹ is selected from -H and -C₁-C₈ alkyl;

10 X is -O-, -S-, -NH- or -N(R¹⁴)-;

R¹¹ is selected from -H, -OH, -NH₂, -NHR¹⁴, -N(R¹⁴)₂, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle); or R¹¹ is an oxygen atom which forms
 15 a carbonyl unit (C=O) with the carbon atom to which it is attached and a hydrogen atom on this carbon atom is replaced by one of the bonds in the (C=O) double bond;

R¹³ is selected from hydrogen, -OH, -NH₂, -NHR¹⁴, -N(R¹⁴)₂, C₁-C₈ alkyl, C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, alkyl-aryl, alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), C₃-C₈ heterocycle and alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle);

each R¹⁴ is independently -H or -C₁-C₈ alkyl;

20 R¹⁵ is -arylene-, -C₃-C₈ carbocyclo- or -C₃-C₈ heterocyclo-;

R¹⁶ is -Yy-Ww-A'

wherein

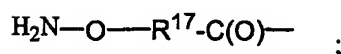
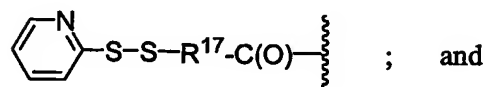
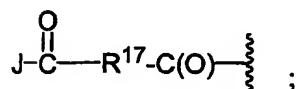
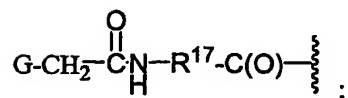
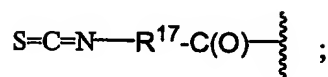
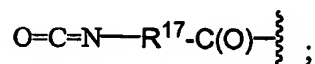
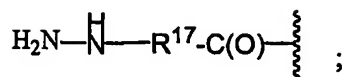
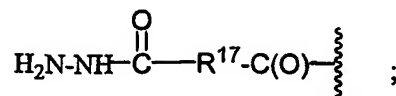
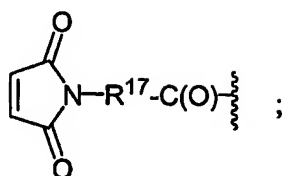
each -W- is independently an Amino Acid unit;

-Y- is a Spacer unit;

25 w is an integer ranging from 0 to 12;

y is 0, 1 or 2; and

-A' is selected from



wherein

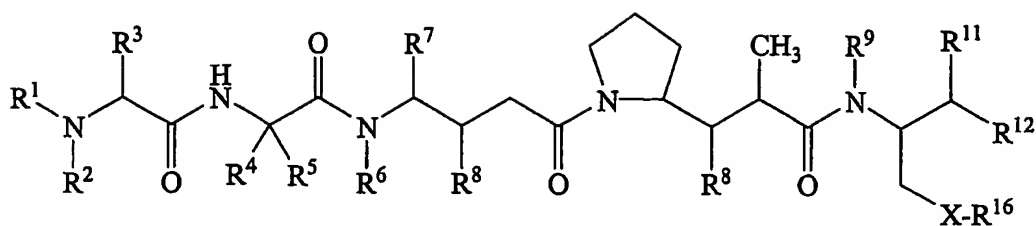
G is selected from -Cl, -Br, -I, -O-mesyl and -O-tosyl;

J is selected from -Cl, -Br, -I, -F, -OH, -O-N-succinimide, -O-(4-nitrophenyl), -O-pentafluorophenyl, -O-tetrafluorophenyl and -O-C(O)-OR¹⁸;

R¹⁷ is selected from -C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-, -C₃-C₈ carbocyclo-, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl)-, -arylene-, -C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-arylene-, -arylene-C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-, -C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-(C₃-C₈ carbocyclo)-, -(C₃-C₈ carbocyclo)-C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-, -C₃-C₈ heterocyclo-, -C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-(C₃-C₈ heterocyclo)-, -(C₃-C₈ heterocyclo)-C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-, -(CH₂CH₂O)_r-, and -(CH₂CH₂O)_r-CH₂-; r is an integer ranging from 1-10; and

R¹⁸ is -C₁-C₈ alkyl or -aryl.

In another aspect, the present invention provides compounds of the formula IIc:



IIc

and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and solvates thereof

wherein, independently at each location:

- R¹ is selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl and -C₃-C₈ carbocycle; and R² is
 5 selected from -H and -C₁-C₈ alkyl; or R¹ and R² join, have the formula -(CR^aR^b)_n- wherein R^a and R^b are independently selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl and -C₃-C₈ carbocycle and n is selected from 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6, and form a ring with the nitrogen atom to which they are attached;

- R³ is selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -
 10 aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle);

- R⁴ is selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -
 aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle) wherein R⁵ is selected from -H and -methyl; or R⁴ and R⁵ join,
 15 have the formula -(CR^aR^b)_n- wherein R^a and R^b are independently selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl and -C₃-C₈ carbocycle and n is selected from 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6, and form a ring with the carbon atom to which they are attached;

R⁶ is selected from -H and -C₁-C₈ alkyl;

- R⁷ is selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -
 20 aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle);

each R⁸ is independently selected from -H, -OH, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle and -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl);

R⁹ is selected from -H and -C₁-C₈ alkyl;

- X is -O-, -S-, -NH- or -N(R¹⁴)₂;

R¹¹ is selected from -H, -OH, -NH₂, -NHR¹⁴, -N(R¹⁴)₂, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle); or R¹¹ is an oxygen atom which forms

a carbonyl unit (C=O) with the carbon atom to which it is attached and a hydrogen atom on this carbon atom is replaced by one of the bonds in the (C=O) double bond;

each R¹² is independently selected from -aryl and -C₃-C₈ heterocycle;

each R¹⁴ is independently -H or -C₁-C₈ alkyl;

5 R¹⁶ is -Yy-Ww-A'

wherein

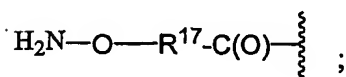
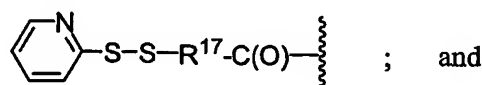
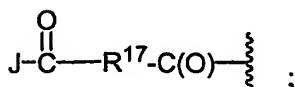
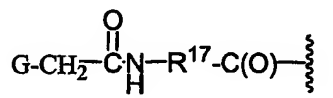
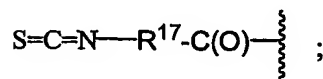
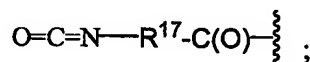
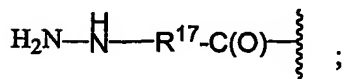
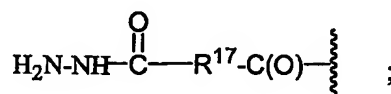
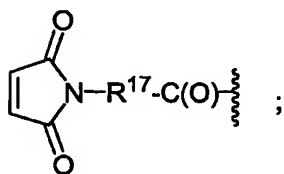
each -W- is independently an Amino Acid unit;

-Y- is a Spacer unit;

w is an integer ranging from 0 to 12;

10 y is 0, 1 or 2; and

-A' is selected from



wherein

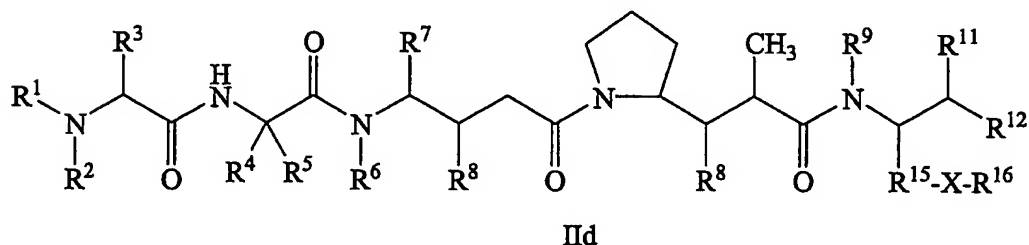
G is selected from -Cl, -Br, -I, -O-mesyl and -O-tosyl;

15 J is selected from -Cl, -Br, -I, -F, -OH, -O-N-succinimide, -O-(4-nitrophenyl), -O-pentafluorophenyl, -O-tetrafluorophenyl and -O-C(O)-OR¹⁸;

R¹⁷ is selected from -C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-, -C₃-C₈ carbocyclo-, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl)-, -arylene-, -C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-arylene-, -arylene-C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-, -C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-(C₃-C₈

carbocyclo)-, -(C₃-C₈ carbocyclo)-C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-, -C₃-C₈ heterocyclo-, -C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-(C₃-C₈ heterocyclo)-, -(C₃-C₈ heterocyclo)-C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-, -(CH₂CH₂O)_r-, and -(CH₂CH₂O)_r-CH₂-; r is an integer ranging from 1-10; and R¹⁸ is -C₁-C₈ alkyl or -aryl.

5 In another aspect, the present invention provides compounds of the formula II_d:



and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and solvates thereof
wherein, independently at each location:

10 R¹ is selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl and -C₃-C₈ carbocycle; and R² is selected from -H and -C₁-C₈ alkyl; or R¹ and R² join, have the formula -(CR^aR^b)_n- wherein R^a and R^b are independently selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl and -C₃-C₈ carbocycle and n is selected from 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6, and form a ring with the nitrogen atom to which they are attached;

15 R³ is selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle);

R⁴ is selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle) wherein R⁵ is selected from -H and -methyl; or R⁴ and R⁵ join, have the formula -(CR^aR^b)_n- wherein R^a and R^b are independently selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl and -C₃-C₈ carbocycle and n is selected from 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6, and form a ring with the carbon atom to which they are attached;

R⁶ is selected from -H and -C₁-C₈ alkyl;

25 R⁷ is selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle);

each R^8 is independently selected from -H, -OH, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle and -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl);

R^9 is selected from -H and -C₁-C₈ alkyl;

X is -O-, -S-, -NH- or -N(R^{14})-;

- 5 R^{11} is selected from -H, -OH, -NH₂, -NHR¹⁴, -N(R^{14})₂, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle); or R^{11} is an oxygen atom which forms a carbonyl unit (C=O) with the carbon atom to which it is attached and a hydrogen atom on this carbon atom is replaced by one of the bonds in the (C=O) double bond;

- 10 each R^{12} is independently selected from -aryl and -C₃-C₈ heterocycle;

each R^{14} is independently -H or -C₁-C₈ alkyl;

R^{15} is -arylene-, -C₃-C₈ carbocyclo- or -C₃-C₈ heterocyclo-;

R^{16} is -Yy-Ww-A'

wherein

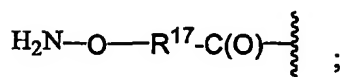
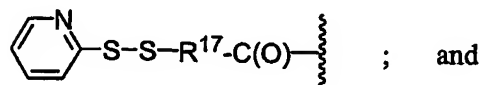
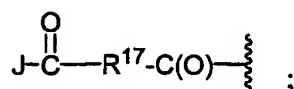
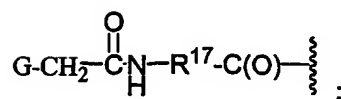
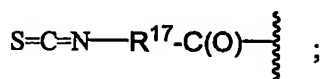
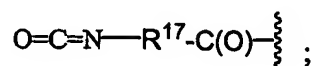
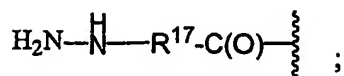
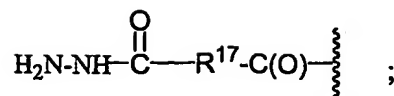
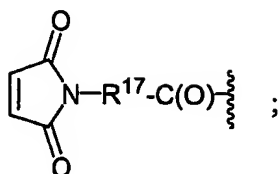
- 15 each -W- is independently an Amino Acid unit;

-Y- is a Spacer unit;

w is an integer ranging from 0 to 12;

y is 0, 1 or 2; and

-A' is selected from



wherein

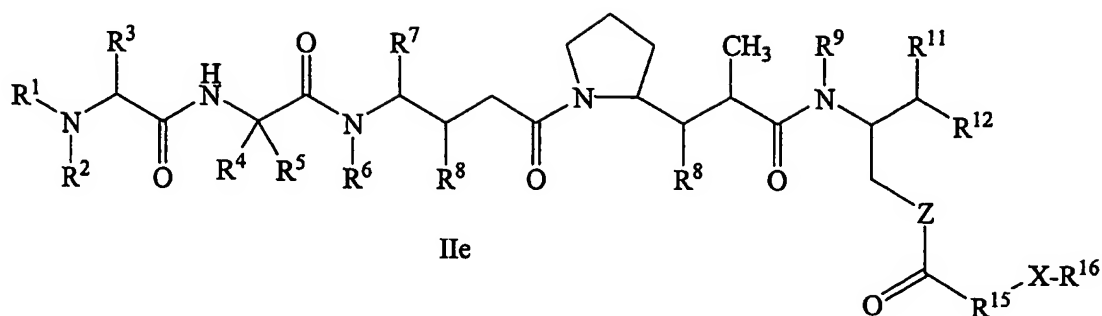
G is selected from -Cl, -Br, -I, -O-mesyl and -O-tosyl;

J is selected from -Cl, -Br, -I, -F, -OH, -O-N-succinimide, -O-(4-nitrophenyl), -O-pentafluorophenyl, -O-tetrafluorophenyl and -O-C(O)-OR¹⁸;

R¹⁷ is selected from -C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-, -C₃-C₈ carbocyclo-, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl)-, -arylene-, -C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-arylene-, -arylene-C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-, -C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-(C₃-C₈ carbocyclo)-, -(C₃-C₈ carbocyclo)-C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-, -C₃-C₈ heterocyclo-, -C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-(C₃-C₈ heterocyclo)-, -(C₃-C₈ heterocyclo)-C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-, -(CH₂CH₂O)_r, and -(CH₂CH₂O)_r-CH₂-; r is an integer ranging from 1-10; and

R¹⁸ is -C₁-C₈ alkyl or -aryl.

In another aspect, the present invention provides compounds of the formula IIe:



and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and solvates thereof

wherein, independently at each location:

5 R^1 is selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl and -C₃-C₈ carbocycle; and R^2 is selected from -H and -C₁-C₈ alkyl; or R^1 and R^2 join, have the formula $-(CR^aR^b)_n$ wherein R^a and R^b are independently selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl and -C₃-C₈ carbocycle and n is selected from 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6, and form a ring with the nitrogen atom to which they are attached;

10 R^3 is selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle);

R^4 is selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle) wherein R^5 is selected from -H and -methyl; or R^4 and R^5 join, have the formula $-(CR^aR^b)_n$ wherein R^a and R^b are independently selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl and -C₃-C₈ carbocycle and n is selected from 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6, and form a ring with the carbon atom to which they are attached;

R^6 is selected from -H and -C₁-C₈ alkyl;

20 R^7 is selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle);

each R^8 is independently selected from -H, -OH, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle and -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl);

25 R^9 is selected from -H and -C₁-C₈ alkyl;

X is -O-, -S-, -NH- or -N(R¹⁴)-;

Z is -O-, -S-, -NH- or -N(R¹⁴)-;

R^{11} is selected from -H, -OH, -NH₂, -NHR¹⁴, -N(R¹⁴)₂, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-

C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle); or R¹¹ is an oxygen atom which forms a carbonyl unit (C=O) with the carbon atom to which it is attached and a hydrogen atom on this carbon atom is replaced by one of the bonds in the (C=O) double bond;

each R¹² is independently selected from -aryl and -C₃-C₈ heterocycle;

5 each R¹⁴ is independently -H or -C₁-C₈ alkyl;

R¹⁵ is -arylene-, -C₃-C₈ carbocyclo- or -C₃-C₈ heterocyclo-;

R¹⁶ is -Yy-Ww-A'

wherein

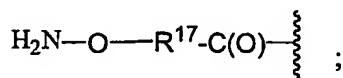
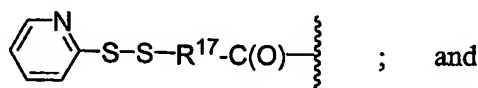
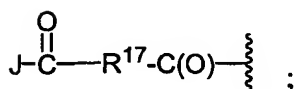
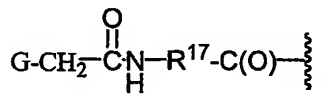
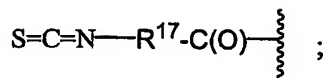
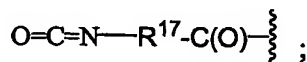
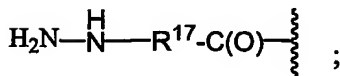
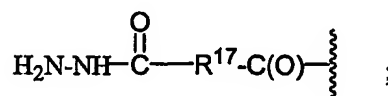
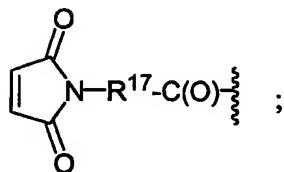
each -W- is independently an Amino Acid unit;

10 -Y- is a Spacer unit;

w is an integer ranging from 0 to 12;

y is 0, 1 or 2; and

-A' is selected from



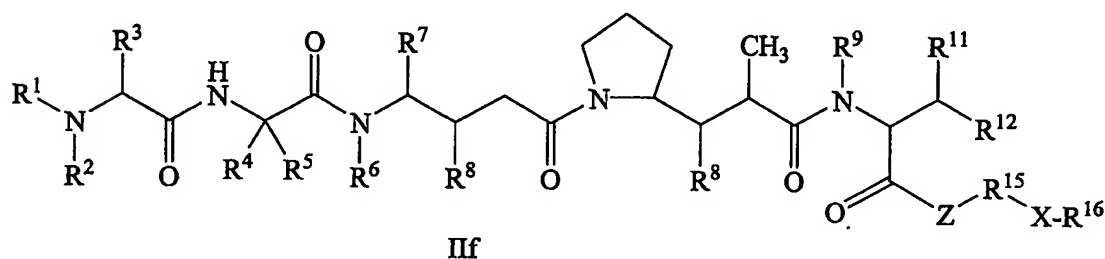
15 wherein

G is selected from -Cl, -Br, -I, -O-mesyl and -O-tosyl;

J is selected from -Cl, -Br, -I, -F, -OH, -O-N-succinimide, -O-(4-nitrophenyl), -O-pentafluorophenyl, -O-tetrafluorophenyl and -O-C(O)-OR¹⁸;

- R^{17} is selected from $-C_1-C_{10}$ alkylene-, $-C_3-C_8$ carbocyclo-, $-O-(C_1-C_8 \text{ alkyl})-$, $-$ arylene-, $-C_1-C_{10}$ alkylene-arylene-, $-$ arylene- C_1-C_{10} alkylene-, $-C_1-C_{10}$ alkylene- $(C_3-C_8 \text{ carbocyclo})-$, $-(C_3-C_8 \text{ carbocyclo})-C_1-C_{10}$ alkylene-, $-C_3-C_8$ heterocyclo-, $-C_1-C_{10}$ alkylene- $(C_3-C_8 \text{ heterocyclo})-$, $-(C_3-C_8 \text{ heterocyclo})-C_1-C_{10}$ alkylene-, $-(CH_2CH_2O)_r-$, and
- 5 $-(CH_2CH_2O)_r-CH_2-$; r is an integer ranging from 1-10; and
- R^{18} is $-C_1-C_8$ alkyl or $-$ aryl.

In another aspect, the present invention provides compounds of the formula
IIf:



10

and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and solvates thereof
wherein, independently at each location:

- R^1 is selected from $-H$, $-C_1-C_8$ alkyl and $-C_3-C_8$ carbocycle; and R^2 is selected from $-H$ and $-C_1-C_8$ alkyl; or R^1 and R^2 join, have the formula $-(CR^aR^b)_n-$ wherein
- 15 R^a and R^b are independently selected from $-H$, $-C_1-C_8$ alkyl and $-C_3-C_8$ carbocycle and n is selected from 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6, and form a ring with the nitrogen atom to which they are attached;

- R^3 is selected from $-H$, $-C_1-C_8$ alkyl, $-C_3-C_8$ carbocycle, $-O-(C_1-C_8 \text{ alkyl})$, $-$ aryl, $-C_1-C_8$ alkyl-aryl, $-C_1-C_8$ alkyl- $(C_3-C_8 \text{ carbocycle})$, $-C_3-C_8$ heterocycle and $-C_1-C_8$
- 20 alkyl- $(C_3-C_8 \text{ heterocycle})$;

- R^4 is selected from $-H$, $-C_1-C_8$ alkyl, $-C_3-C_8$ carbocycle, $-O-(C_1-C_8 \text{ alkyl})$, $-$ aryl, $-C_1-C_8$ alkyl-aryl, $-C_1-C_8$ alkyl- $(C_3-C_8 \text{ carbocycle})$, $-C_3-C_8$ heterocycle and $-C_1-C_8$ alkyl- $(C_3-C_8 \text{ heterocycle})$ wherein R^5 is selected from $-H$ and $-$ methyl; or R^4 and R^5 join, have the formula $-(CR^aR^b)_n-$ wherein R^a and R^b are independently selected from $-H$, $-C_1-C_8$
- 25 alkyl and $-C_3-C_8$ carbocycle and n is selected from 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6, and form a ring with the carbon atom to which they are attached;

R^6 is selected from $-H$ and $-C_1-C_8$ alkyl;

R^7 is selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle);

5 each R^8 is independently selected from -H, -OH, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle and -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl);

R^9 is selected from -H and -C₁-C₈ alkyl;

X is -O-, -S-, -NH- or -N(R^{14})-;

Z is -O-, -S-, -NH- or -N(R^{14})-;

10 R^{11} is selected from -H, -OH, -NH₂, -NHR¹⁴, -N(R^{14})₂, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle); or R^{11} is an oxygen atom which forms a carbonyl unit (C=O) with the carbon atom to which it is attached and a hydrogen atom on this carbon atom is replaced by one of the bonds in the (C=O) double bond;

each R^{12} is independently selected from -aryl and -C₃-C₈ heterocycle;

15 each R^{14} is independently -H or -C₁-C₈ alkyl;

R^{15} is -arylene-, -C₃-C₈ carbocyclo- or -C₃-C₈ heterocyclo-;

R^{16} is -Yy-Ww-A'

wherein

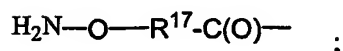
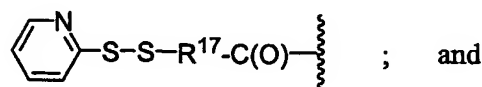
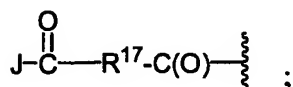
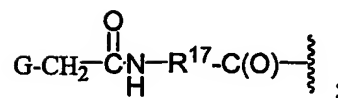
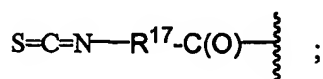
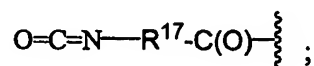
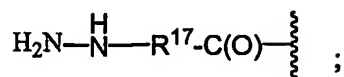
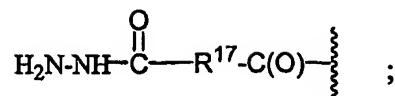
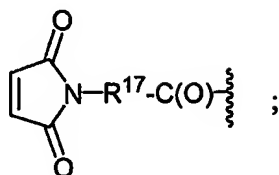
each -W- is independently an Amino Acid unit;

20 -Y- is a Spacer unit;

w is an integer ranging from 0 to 12;

y is 0, 1 or 2; and

-A' is selected from



wherein

G is selected from -Cl, -Br, -I, -O-mesyl and -O-tosyl;

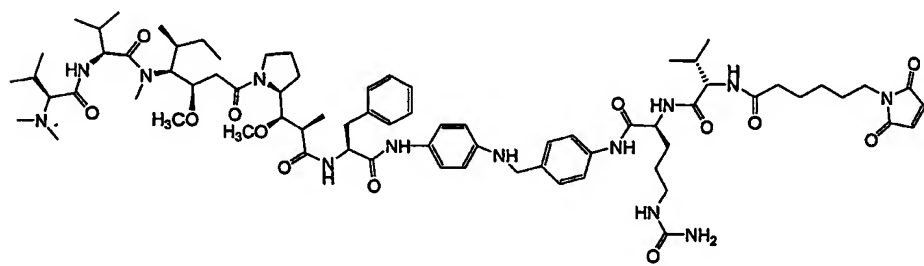
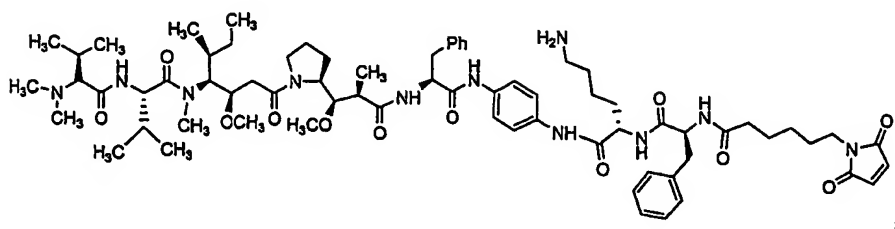
J is selected from -Cl, -Br, -I, -F, -OH, -O-N-succinimide, -O-(4-nitrophenyl), -O-pentafluorophenyl, -O-tetrafluorophenyl and -O-C(O)-OR¹⁸;

R¹⁷ is selected from -C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-, -C₃-C₈ carbocyclo-, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl)-, -arylene-, -C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-arylene-, -arylene-C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-, -C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-(C₃-C₈ carbocyclo)-, -(C₃-C₈ carbocyclo)-C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-, -C₃-C₈ heterocyclo-, -C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-(C₃-C₈ heterocyclo)-, -(C₃-C₈ heterocyclo)-C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-, -(CH₂CH₂O)_r-, and -(CH₂CH₂O)_r-CH₂-; r is an integer ranging from 1-10; and

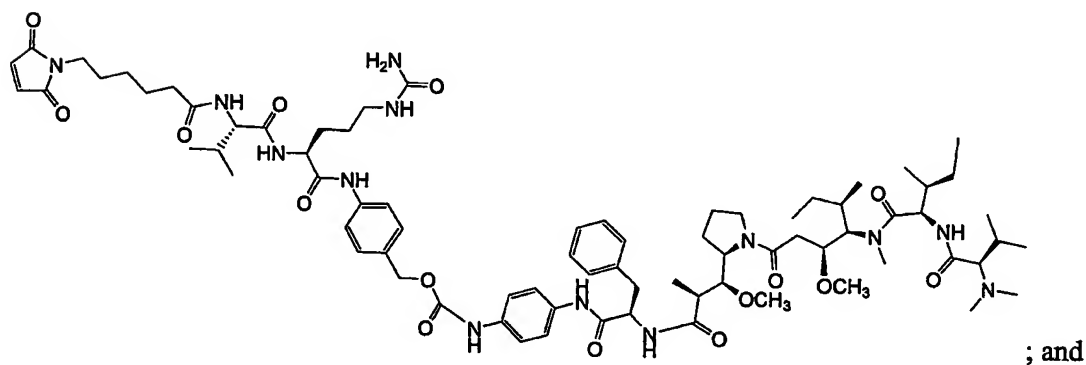
R¹⁸ is -C₁-C₈ alkyl or -aryl.

In one embodiment R¹ is selected from -C₁-C₈ alkyl and -C₃-C₈ carbocycle; and R² is selected from -H and -C₁-C₈ alkyl; or R¹ and R² join, have the formula -(CR^aR^b)_n- wherein R^a and R^b are independently selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl and -C₃-C₈ carbocycle and n is selected from 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6, and form a ring with the nitrogen atom to which they are attached

Illustrative compounds of formula II_f have the structure:



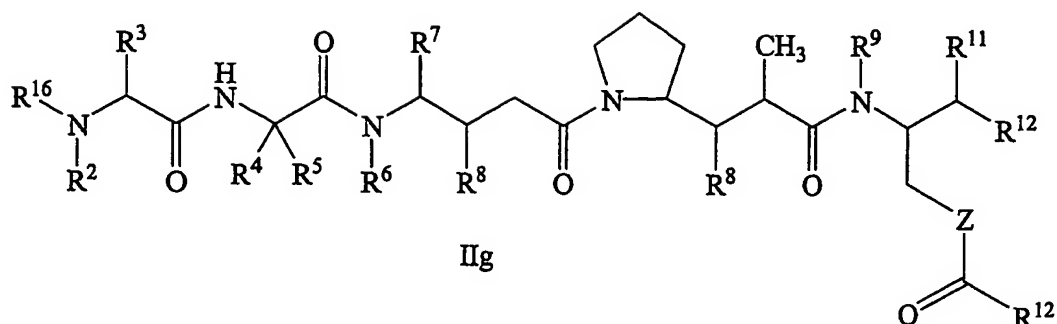
5



and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and solvates thereof.

10

In another aspect, the present invention provides compounds of the formula II_g:



and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and solvates thereof

wherein, independently at each location:

R^2 is selected from -H and -C₁-C₈ alkyl;

5 R^3 is selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle);

R^4 is selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle) wherein R^5 is selected from -H and -methyl; or R^4 and R^5 join, 10 have the formula $-(CR^aR^b)_n$ wherein R^a and R^b are independently selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl and -C₃-C₈ carbocycle and n is selected from 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6, and form a ring with the carbon atom to which they are attached;

R^6 is selected from -H and -C₁-C₈ alkyl;

15 R^7 is selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle);

each R^8 is independently selected from -H, -OH, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle and -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl);

20 R^9 is selected from -H and -C₁-C₈ alkyl;

Z is -O-, -S-, -NH- or -N(R¹⁴)-;

R^{11} is selected from -H, -OH, -NH₂, -NHR¹⁴, -N(R¹⁴)₂, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle); or R^{11} is an oxygen atom which forms 25 a carbonyl unit (C=O) with the carbon atom to which it is attached and a hydrogen atom on this carbon atom is replaced by one of the bonds in the (C=O) double bond;

each R^{12} is independently selected from -aryl and -C₃-C₈ heterocycle;

each R^{14} is independently -H or -C₁-C₈ alkyl;

R^{16} is -Yy-Ww-A'

wherein

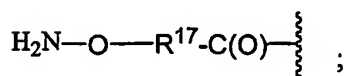
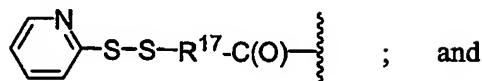
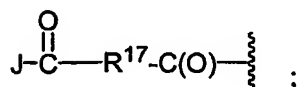
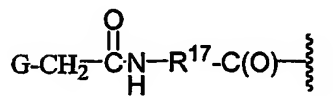
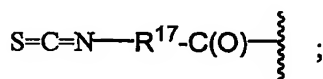
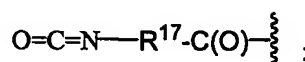
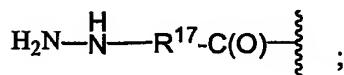
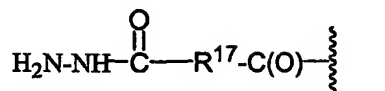
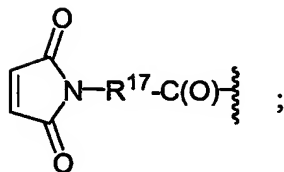
each -W- is independently an Amino Acid unit;

-Y- is a Spacer unit;

5 w is an integer ranging from 0 to 12;

y is 0, 1 or 2; and

-A' is selected from



wherein

10 G is selected from -Cl, -Br, -I, -O-mesyl and -O-tosyl;

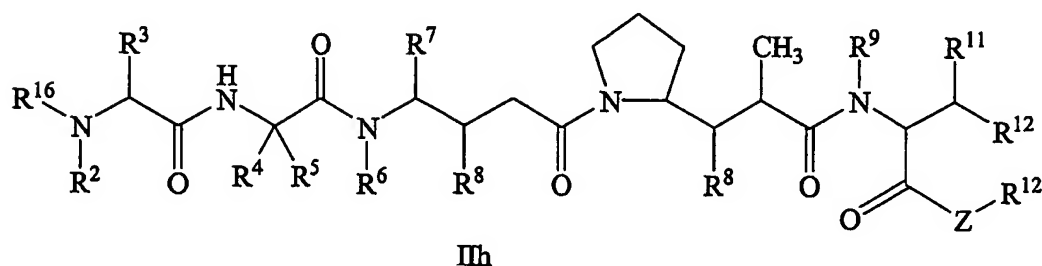
J is selected from -Cl, -Br, -I, -F, -OH, -O-N-succinimide, -O-(4-nitrophenyl), -O-pentafluorophenyl, -O-tetrafluorophenyl and -O-C(O)-OR¹⁸;

R^{17} is selected from -C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-, -C₃-C₈ carbocyclo-, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl)-, -arylene-, -C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-arylene-, -arylene-C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-, -C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-(C₃-C₈ carbocyclo)-, -(C₃-C₈ carbocyclo)-C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-, -C₃-C₈ heterocyclo-, -C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-(C₃-C₈ heterocyclo)-, -(C₃-C₈ heterocyclo)-C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-, -(CH₂CH₂O)_r-, and -(CH₂CH₂O)_r-CH₂-; r is an integer ranging from 1-10; and

R^{18} is -C₁-C₈ alkyl or -aryl.

In another aspect, the present invention provides compounds of the formula

IIIh:



and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and solvates thereof

5 wherein, independently at each location:

R^2 is selected from -H and -C₁-C₈ alkyl;

R^3 is selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle);

10 R^4 is selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle) wherein R^5 is selected from -H and -methyl; or R^4 and R^5 join, have the formula -(CR^aR^b)_n- wherein R^a and R^b are independently selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl and -C₃-C₈ carbocycle and n is selected from 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6, and form a ring with the
15 carbon atom to which they are attached;

R^6 is selected from -H and -C₁-C₈ alkyl;

R^7 is selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle);

20 each R^8 is independently selected from -H, -OH, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle and -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl);

R^9 is selected from -H and -C₁-C₈ alkyl;

Z is -O-, -S-, -NH- or -N(R¹⁴)-;

25 R^{11} is selected from -H, -OH, -NH₂, -NHR¹⁴, -N(R¹⁴)₂, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle); or R^{11} is an oxygen atom which forms a carbonyl unit (C=O) with the carbon atom to which it is attached and a hydrogen atom on this carbon atom is replaced by one of the bonds in the (C=O) double bond;

each R^{12} is independently selected from -aryl and -C₃-C₈ heterocycle;

each R^{14} is independently -H or -C₁-C₈ alkyl;

R^{16} is -Yy-Ww-A'

wherein

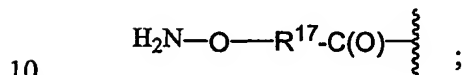
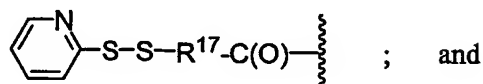
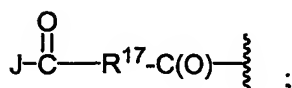
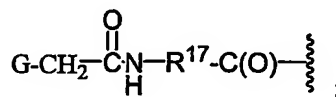
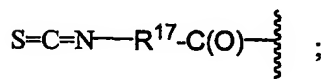
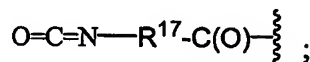
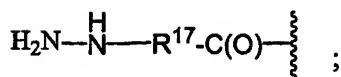
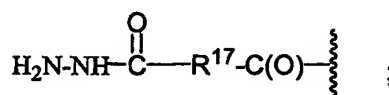
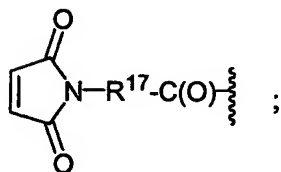
5 each -W- is independently an Amino Acid unit;

-Y- is a Spacer unit;

w is an integer ranging from 0 to 12;

y is 0, 1 or 2; and

-A' is selected from



wherein

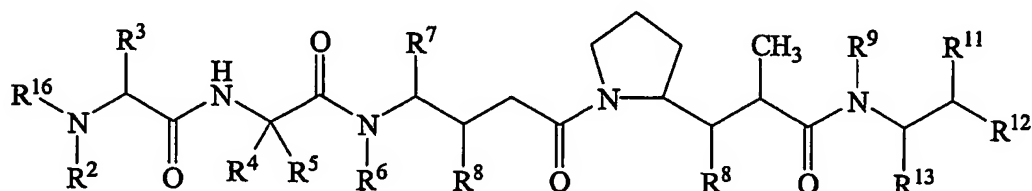
G is selected from -Cl, -Br, -I, -O-mesyl and -O-tosyl;

J is selected from -Cl, -Br, -I, -F, -OH, -O-N-succinimide, -O-(4-nitrophenyl), -O-pentafluorophenyl, -O-tetrafluorophenyl and -O-C(O)-OR¹⁸;

15 R^{17} is selected from -C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-, -C₃-C₈ carbocyclo-, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl)-, -arylene-, -C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-arylene-, -arylene-C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-, -C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-(C₃-C₈ carbocyclo)-, -(C₃-C₈ carbocyclo)-C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-, -C₃-C₈ heterocyclo-, -C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-

(C₃-C₈ heterocyclo)-, -(C₃-C₈ heterocyclo)-C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-, -(CH₂CH₂O)_r-, and -(CH₂CH₂O)_r-CH₂-; r is an integer ranging from 1-10; and R¹⁸ is -C₁-C₈ alkyl or -aryl.

5 In another aspect, the present invention provides compounds of the formula
Iii:



Iii

and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and solvates thereof

wherein, independently at each location:

10

R² is selected from -H and -C₁-C₈ alkyl;

R³ is selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle);

15

R⁴ is selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle) wherein R⁵ is selected from -H and -methyl; or R⁴ and R⁵ join, have the formula -(CR^aR^b)_n- wherein R^a and R^b are independently selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl and -C₃-C₈ carbocycle and n is selected from 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6, and form a ring with the carbon atom to which they are attached;

20

R⁶ is selected from -H and -C₁-C₈ alkyl;

R⁷ is selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle);

25

each R⁸ is independently selected from -H, -OH, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle and -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl);

R⁹ is selected from -H and -C₁-C₈ alkyl;

R¹¹ is selected from -H, -OH, -NH₂, -NHR¹⁴, -N(R¹⁴)₂, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle); or R¹¹ is an oxygen atom which forms

a carbonyl unit (C=O) with the carbon atom to which it is attached and a hydrogen atom on this carbon atom is replaced by one of the bonds in the (C=O) double bond;

each R^{12} is independently selected from -aryl and -C₃-C₈ heterocycle;

R^{13} is selected from hydrogen, -OH, -NH₂, -NHR¹⁴, -N(R¹⁴)₂, C₁-C₈ alkyl,

- 5 C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, alkyl-aryl, alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), C₃-C₈ heterocycle and alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle);

each R^{14} is independently -H or -C₁-C₈ alkyl;

R^{16} is -Yy-Ww-A'

wherein

10

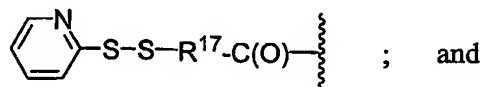
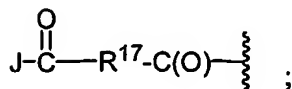
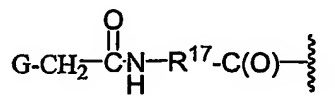
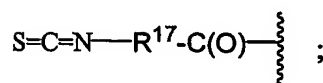
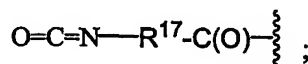
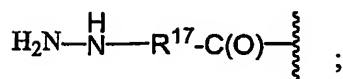
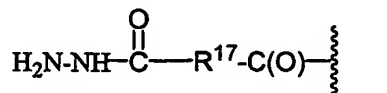
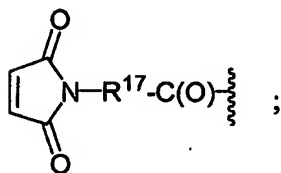
each -W- is independently an Amino Acid unit;

-Y- is a Spacer unit;

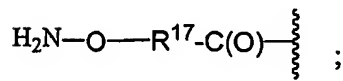
w is an integer ranging from 0 to 12;

y is 0, 1 or 2; and

-A' is selected from



15



wherein

G is selected from -Cl, -Br, -I, -O-mesyl and -O-tosyl;

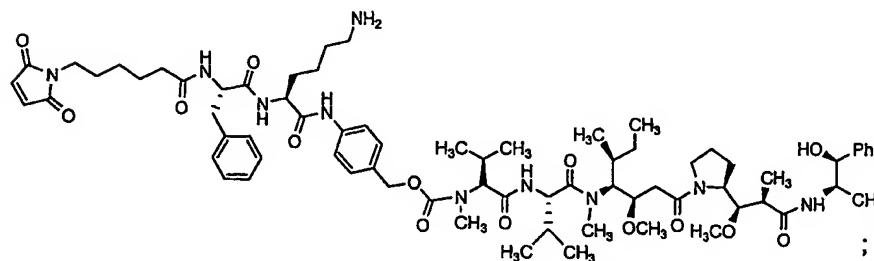
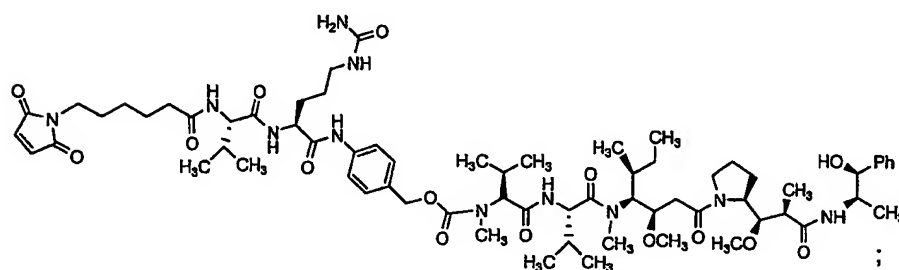
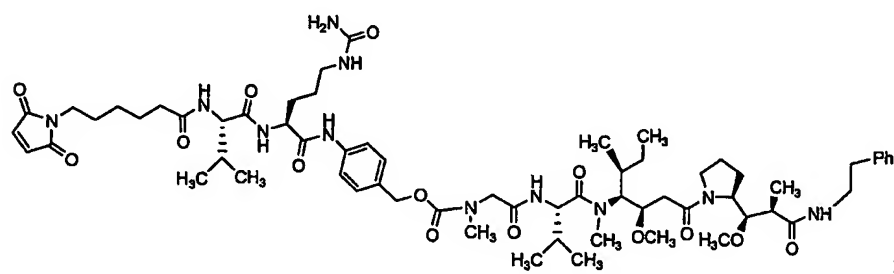
J is selected from -Cl, -Br, -I, -F, -OH, -O-N-succinimide, -O-(4-nitrophenyl), -O-pentafluorophenyl, -O-tetrafluorophenyl and -O-C(O)-OR¹⁸;

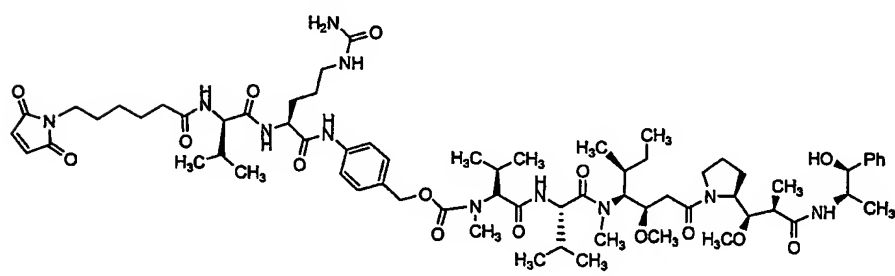
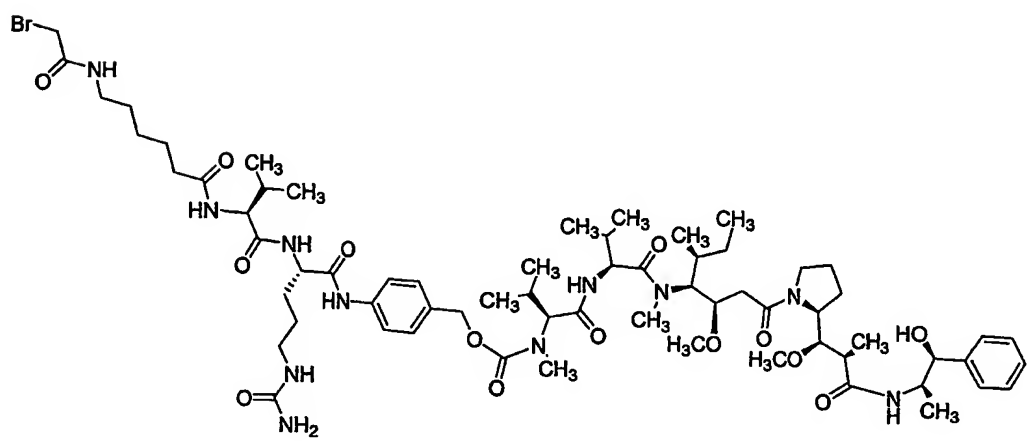
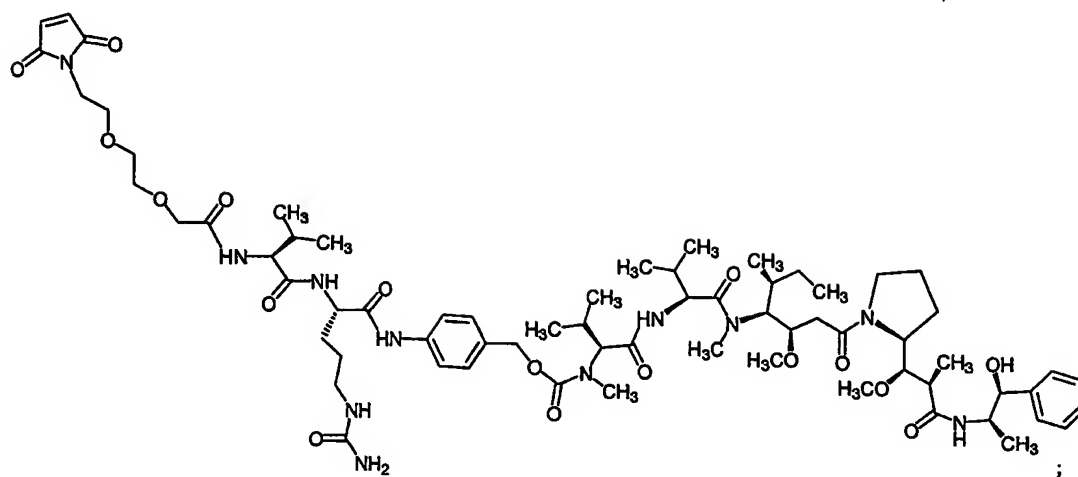
R¹⁷ is selected from -C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-, -C₃-C₈ carbocyclo-, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl)-, -arylene-, -C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-arylene-, -arylene-C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-, -C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-(C₃-C₈ carbocyclo)-, -(C₃-C₈ carbocyclo)-C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-, -C₃-C₈ heterocyclo-, -C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-(C₃-C₈ heterocyclo)-, -(C₃-C₈ heterocyclo)-C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-, -(CH₂CH₂O)_r, and -(CH₂CH₂O)_r-CH₂-; r is an integer ranging from 1-10; and

R¹⁸ is -C₁-C₈ alkyl or -aryl.

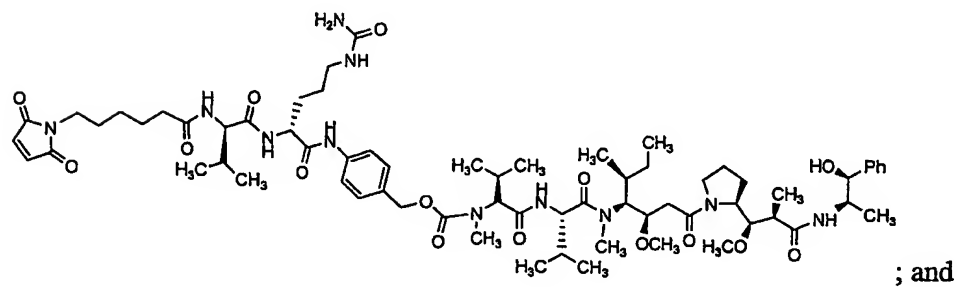
Illustrative compounds of formula III have the structures:

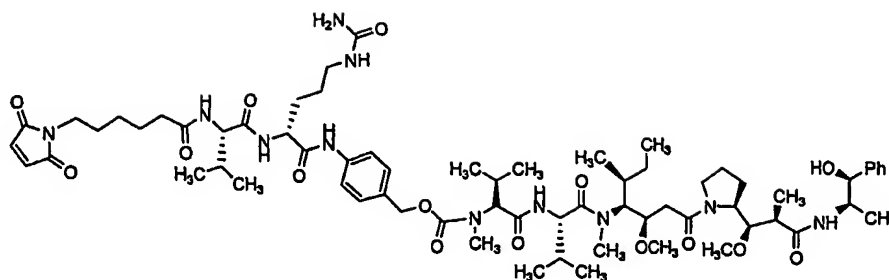
10





5





and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and solvates thereof.

The compounds of formulas IIa-i are useful for treating or preventing cancer,
 5 an autoimmune disease or an infectious disease in an animal.

5.4 THE LINKER UNIT

The Linker unit of the Drug-Linker-Ligand Conjugate links the Drug unit and the Ligand unit and has the formula:



10 wherein:

-A- is a Stretcher unit;

a is 0 or 1;

each -W- is independently an Amino Acid unit;

w is independently an integer ranging from 0 to 12;

15 -Y- is a Spacer unit; and

y is 0, 1 or 2.

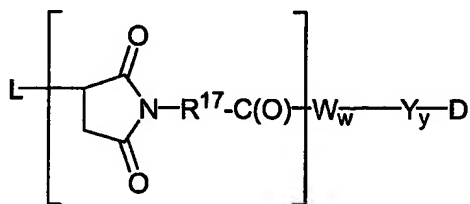
5.4.1 THE STRETCHER UNIT

The Stretcher unit (-A-), when present, links a Ligand unit to an amino acid unit (-W-). In this regard a Ligand (L) has a functional group that can form a bond with a
 20 functional group of a Stretcher. Useful functional groups that can be present on a ligand, either naturally or via chemical manipulation include, but are not limited to, sulfhydryl (-SH), amino, hydroxyl, carboxy, the anomeric hydroxyl group of a carbohydrate, and carboxyl. Preferred Ligand functional groups are sulfhydryl and amino. Sulfhydryl groups can be generated by reduction of an intramolecular disulfide bond of a Ligand.
 25 Alternatively, sulfhydryl groups can be generated by reaction of an amino group of a lysine

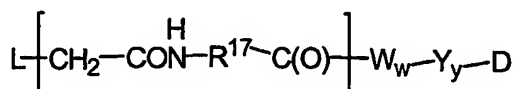
moiety of a Ligand using 2-iminothiolane (Traut's reagent) or another sulfhydryl generating reagent.

In one embodiment, the Stretcher unit forms a bond with a sulfur atom of the Ligand unit. The sulfur atom can be derived from a sulfhydryl group of a Ligand.

- 5 Representative Stretcher units of this embodiment are depicted within the square brackets of Formulas (IIIa) and (IIIb), wherein L-, -W-, -Y-, -D, w and y are as defined above and R¹⁷ is selected from -C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-, -C₃-C₈ carbocyclo-, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl)-, -arylene-, -C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-arylene-, -arylene-C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-, -C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-(C₃-C₈ carbocyclo)-, -(C₃-C₈ carbocyclo)-C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-, -C₃-C₈ heterocyclo-, -C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-(C₃-C₈ heterocyclo)-, -
 10 (C₃-C₈ heterocyclo)-C₁-C₁₀ alkylene-, -(CH₂CH₂O)_r-, and -(CH₂CH₂O)_r-CH₂-; and r is an integer ranging from 1-10.

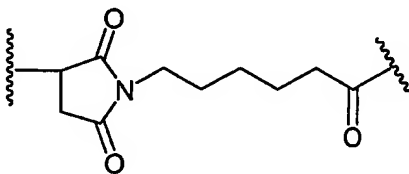


(IIIa)

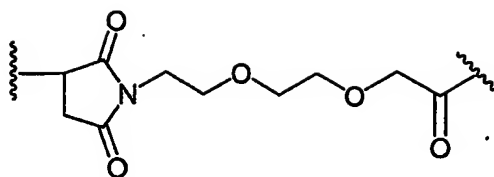


(IIIb)

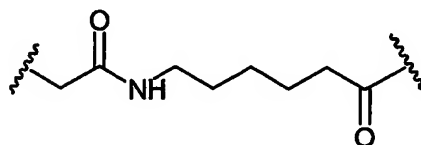
An illustrative Stretcher unit is that of formula (IIIa) where R¹⁷ is -(CH₂)₅-:



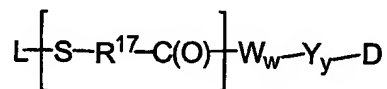
- 20 Another illustrative Stretcher unit is that of formula (IIIa) where R¹⁷ is -(CH₂CH₂O)_r-CH₂-; and r is 2:



Still another illustrative Stretcher unit is that of formula (IIIb) where R^{17} is $-(CH_2)_5-$:



5 In another embodiment, the Stretcher unit is linked to the Ligand unit via a disulfide bond between a sulfur atom of the Ligand unit and a sulfur atom of the Stretcher unit. A representative Stretcher unit of this embodiment is depicted within the square brackets of Formula (IV), wherein R^{17} , $L-$, $-W-$, $-Y-$, $-D$, w and y are as defined above.

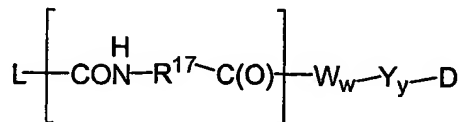


10

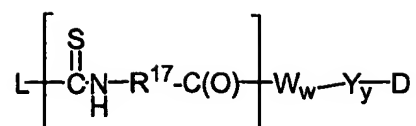
(IV)

In yet another embodiment, the reactive group of the Stretcher contains a reactive site that can form a bond with a primary or secondary amino group of a Ligand. Example of these reactive sites include, but are not limited to, activated esters such as succinimide esters, 4-nitrophenyl esters, pentafluorophenyl esters, tetrafluorophenyl esters, anhydrides, acid chlorides, sulfonyl chlorides, isocyanates and isothiocyanates. Representative Stretcher units of this embodiment are depicted within the square brackets of Formulas (Va) and (Vb), wherein $-R^{17}-$, $L-$, $-W-$, $-Y-$, $-D$, w and y are as defined above;

20

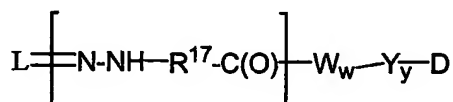


(Va)

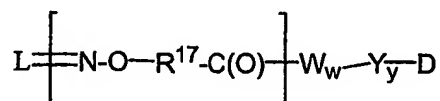


(Vb)

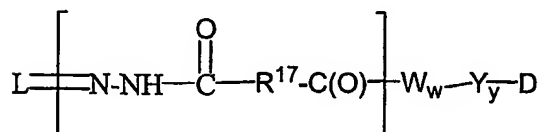
In yet another aspect of the invention, the reactive group of the Stretcher contains a reactive site that is reactive to a carbohydrate's (-CHO) group that can be present on a Ligand. For example, a carbohydrate can be mildly oxidized using a reagent such as sodium periodate and the resulting (-CHO) unit of the oxidized carbohydrate can be condensed with a Stretcher that contains a functionality such as a hydrazide, an oxime, a primary or secondary amine, a hydrazine, a thiosemicarbazone, a hydrazine carboxylate, and an arylhydrazide such as those described by Kaneko, T. et al. *Bioconjugate Chem* 1991, 2, 133-41. Representative Stretcher units of this embodiment are depicted within the square brackets of Formulas (VIa)-(VIc), wherein -R¹⁷-, L-, -W-, -Y-, -D, w and y are as defined above.



(VIa)



(VIb)

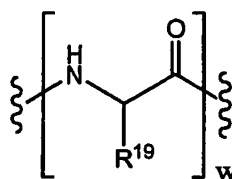


(VIc)

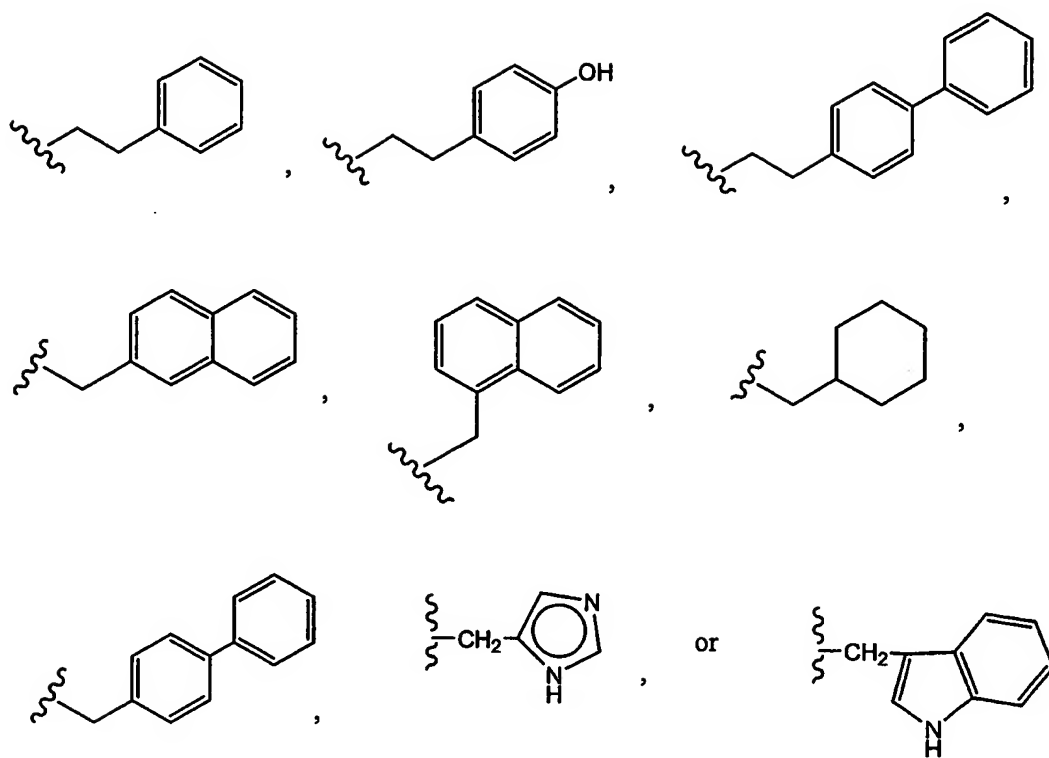
5.4.2 THE AMINO ACID UNIT

The Amino Acid unit (-W-), when present, links the Stretcher unit to the Spacer unit if the Spacer unit is present, links the Stretcher unit to the Drug unit if the Spacer unit is absent, and links the Ligand unit to the Drug unit if the Stretcher unit and Spacer unit are absent.

- 5 - W_w- is a dipeptide, tripeptide, tetrapeptide, pentapeptide, hexapeptide, heptapeptide, octapeptide, nonapeptide, decapeptide, undecapeptide or dodecapeptide unit. Each -W- unit independently has the formula denoted below in the square brackets, and w is an integer ranging from 0 to 12:

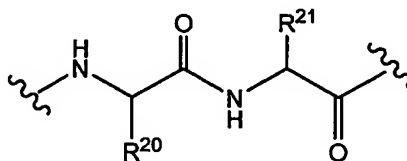


- 10 wherein R¹⁹ is hydrogen, methyl, isopropyl, isobutyl, *sec*-butyl, benzyl, *p*-hydroxybenzyl, -CH₂OH, -CH(OH)CH₃, -CH₂CH₂SCH₃, -CH₂CONH₂, -CH₂COOH, -CH₂CH₂CONH₂, -CH₂CH₂COOH, -(CH₂)₃NHC(=NH)NH₂, -(CH₂)₃NH₂, -(CH₂)₃NHCOCH₃, -(CH₂)₃NHCHO, -(CH₂)₄NHC(=NH)NH₂, -(CH₂)₄NH₂, -(CH₂)₄NHCOCH₃, -(CH₂)₄NHCHO, -(CH₂)₃NHCONH₂, -(CH₂)₄NHCONH₂, -CH₂CH₂CH(OH)CH₂NH₂, 2-pyridylmethyl-, 3-pyridylmethyl-, 4-pyridylmethyl-, phenyl, cyclohexyl,
- 15



The Amino Acid unit of the Compounds of the Invention can be enzymatically cleaved by one or more enzymes, including a tumor-associated protease, to liberate the Drug unit (-D), which in one embodiment is protonated in vivo upon release to provide a Drug (D).

Illustrative W_w units are represented by formulas (VII)-(IX):



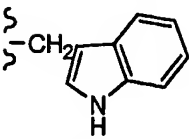
10

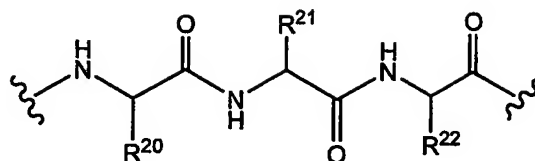
(VII)

wherein R^{20} and R^{21} are as follows:

R^{20}
benzyl
methyl
isopropyl
isopropyl

R^{21}
(CH₂)₄NH₂;
(CH₂)₄NH₂;
(CH₂)₄NH₂;
(CH₂)₃NHCONH₂;

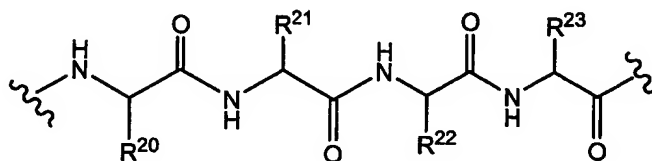
benzyl	$(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{NHCONH}_2$;
isobutyl	$(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{NHCONH}_2$;
sec-butyl	$(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{NHCONH}_2$;
	$(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{NHCONH}_2$;
benzyl	methyl; and
benzyl	$(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{NHC(=NH)NH}_2$;



(VIII)

wherein R^{20} , R^{21} and R^{22} are as follows:

<u>R^{20}</u>	<u>R^{21}</u>	<u>R^{22}</u>
benzyl	benzyl	$(\text{CH}_2)_4\text{NH}_2$;
isopropyl	benzyl	$(\text{CH}_2)_4\text{NH}_2$; and
H	benzyl	$(\text{CH}_2)_4\text{NH}_2$;



(IX)

wherein R^{20} , R^{21} , R^{22} and R^{23} are as follows:

<u>R^{20}</u>	<u>R^{21}</u>	<u>R^{22}</u>	<u>R^{23}</u>
H	benzyl	isobutyl	H; and
methyl	isobutyl	methyl	isobutyl.

- Preferred Amino Acid units include, but are not limited to, units of formula (VII) where: R^{20} is benzyl and R^{21} is $-(\text{CH}_2)_4\text{NH}_2$; R^{20} isopropyl and R^{21} is $-(\text{CH}_2)_4\text{NH}_2$; R^{20} isopropyl and R^{21} is $-(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{NHCONH}_2$. Another preferred Amino Acid unit is a unit of formula (VIII) where R^{20} is benzyl, R^{21} is benzyl, and R^{22} is $-(\text{CH}_2)_4\text{NH}_2$.

-W_w- units useful in the present invention can be designed and optimized in their selectivity for enzymatic cleavage by a particular enzymes, for example, a tumor-associated protease. In one embodiment, a -W_w- unit is that whose cleavage is catalyzed by cathepsin B, C and D, or a plasmin protease.

5 In one embodiment, -W_w- is a dipeptide, tripeptide or pentapeptide.

Where R¹⁹, R²⁰, R²¹, R²² or R²³ is other than hydrogen, the carbon atom to which R¹⁹, R²⁰, R²¹, R²² or R²³ is attached is chiral.

Each carbon atom to which R¹⁹, R²⁰, R²¹, R²² or R²³ is attached is independently in the (S) or (R) configuration.

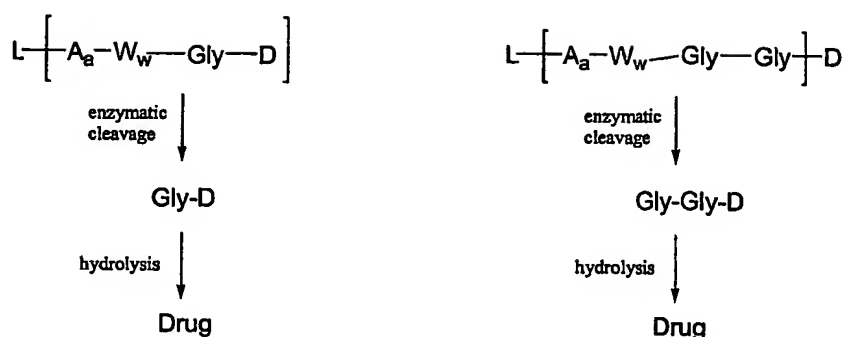
10

5.4.3 THE SPACER UNIT

The Spacer unit (-Y-), when present, links an Amino Acid unit to the Drug unit when an Amino Acid unit is present. Alternately, the Spacer unit links the Stretcher unit to the Drug unit when the Amino Acid unit is absent. The Spacer unit also links the Drug unit to the ligand unit when both the Amino Acid unit and Stretcher unit are absent.

15 Spacer units are of two general types: self-immolative and non self-immolative. A non self-immolative Spacer unit is one in which part or all of the Spacer unit remains bound to the Drug unit after cleavage, particularly enzymatic, of an Amino Acid unit from the Drug-Linker-Ligand Conjugate or the Drug-Linker Compound. Examples of a non self-immolative Spacer unit include, but are not limited to a (glycine-glycine) Spacer unit and a
20 glycine Spacer unit (both depicted in Scheme 1). When a Compound of the Invention containing a glycine-glycine Spacer unit or a glycine Spacer unit undergoes enzymatic cleavage via a tumor-cell associated-protease, a cancer-cell-associated protease or a lymphocyte-associated protease, a glycine-glycine-Drug moiety or a glycine-Drug moiety is cleaved from L-A_a-Ww-. In one embodiment, an independent hydrolysis reaction takes
25 place within the target cell, cleaving the glycine-Drug unit bond and liberating the Drug.

In a preferred embodiment, -Y_y- is a p-aminobenzyl alcohol (PAB) unit (see Schemes 2 and 3) whose phenylene portion is substituted with Q_m where Q is is -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -halogen, -nitro or -cyano; and m is an integer ranging from 0-4.

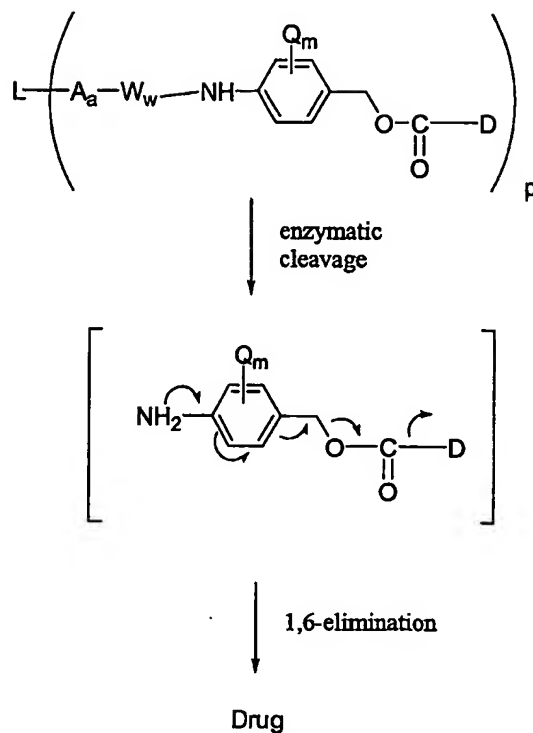
Scheme 1

In one embodiment, a non self-immolative Spacer unit (-Y-) is -Gly-Gly-.

In another embodiment, a non self-immolative the Spacer unit (-Y-) is -Gly-.

- 5 In one embodiment, the invention provides a Drug-Linker Compound or a Drug-Linker Ligand Conjugate in which the Spacer unit is absent ($y=0$), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or solvate thereof.

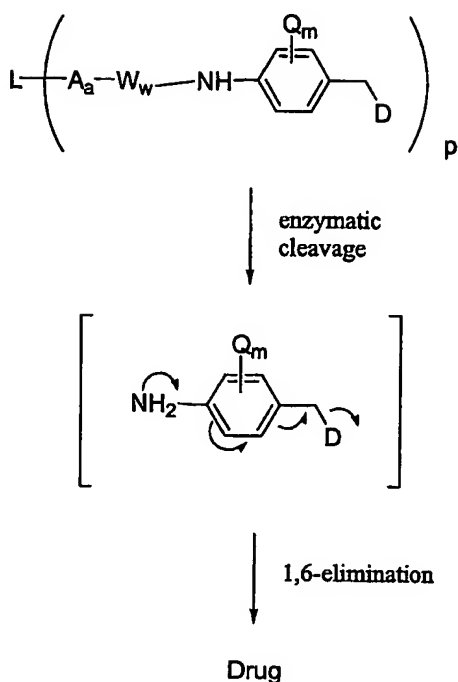
- 10 Alternatively, a Compound of the Invention containing a self-immolative Spacer unit can release -D without the need for a separate hydrolysis step. In this embodiment, -Y- is a PAB group that is linked to -W_w- via the amino nitrogen atom of the PAB group, and connected directly to -D via a carbonate, carbamate or ether group. Without being bound by theory, Scheme 2 depicts a possible mechanism of Drug release of a PAB group which is attached directly to -D via a carbamate or carbonate group.

Scheme 2

where Q is -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -halogen, -nitro or -cyano; m is an integer ranging from 0-4; and p ranges from 1 to about 20.

- 5 Without being bound by theory, Scheme 3 depicts a possible mechanism of Drug release of a PAB group which is attached directly to -D via an ether or amine linkage.

Scheme 3

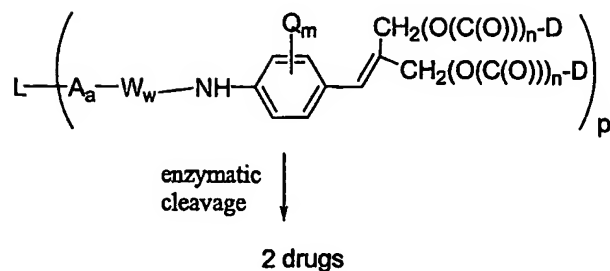


where Q is -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -halogen, -nitro or -cyano; m is an integer ranging from 0-4; and p ranges from 1 to about 20.

- 5 Other examples of self-immolative spacers include, but are not limited to, aromatic compounds that are electronically similar to the PAB group such as 2-aminoimidazol-5-methanol derivatives (see Hay et al., *Bioorg. Med. Chem. Lett.*, 1999, 9, 2237) and ortho or para-aminobenzylacetals. Spacers can be used that undergo cyclization upon amide bond hydrolysis, such as substituted and unsubstituted 4-aminobutyric acid
- 10 amides (Rodrigues et al., *Chemistry Biology*, 1995, 2, 223), appropriately substituted bicyclo[2.2.1] and bicyclo[2.2.2] ring systems (Storm, et al., *J. Amer. Chem. Soc.*, 1972, 94, 5815) and 2-aminophenylpropionic acid amides (Amsberry, et al., *J. Org. Chem.*, 1990, 55, 5867). Elimination of amine-containing drugs that are substituted at the α-position of glycine (Kingsbury, et al., *J. Med. Chem.*, 1984, 27, 1447) are also examples of self-
- 15 immolative spacer useful in the Compounds of the Invention.

In a preferred embodiment, the Spacer unit is a branched bis(hydroxymethyl)styrene (BHMS) unit as depicted in Scheme 4, which can be used to incorporate and release multiple drugs.

Scheme 4



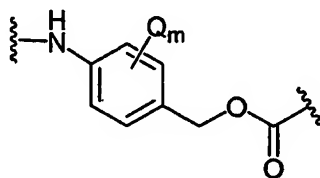
where Q is -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -halogen, -nitro or -cyano; m is an integer ranging from 0-4; n is 0 or 1; and p ranges raging from 1 to about 20.

5

In one embodiment, the -D moieties are the same.

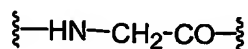
In another embodiment, the -D moieties are different.

Preferred Spacer units (-Y_y-) are represented by Formulas (X)-(XII):

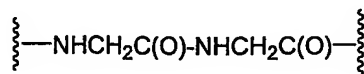


(X)

- 10 where Q is -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -halogen, -nitro or -cyano; and m is an integer ranging from 0-4;



(XI); and



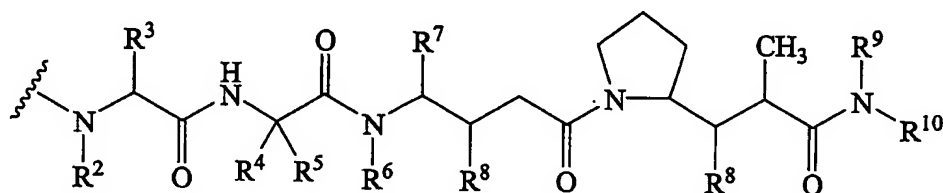
15

(XII).

5.5 THE DRUG UNIT

-D is a Drug unit having a nitrogen or oxygen atom that can form a bond with the Spacer unit when $y=1$ or 2 or with the C-terminal carbonyl group of an Amino Acid unit when $y=0$.

5 In one embodiment, -D is represented by the formula:



wherein, independently at each location:

R^2 is selected from -H and -C₁-C₈ alkyl;

10 R^3 is selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle);

R^4 is selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle) wherein R^5 is selected from -H and -methyl; or R^4 and R^5 join, 15 have the formula $-(CR^aR^b)_n$ - wherein R^a and R^b are independently selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl and -C₃-C₈ carbocycle and n is selected from 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6, and form a ring with the carbon atom to which they are attached;

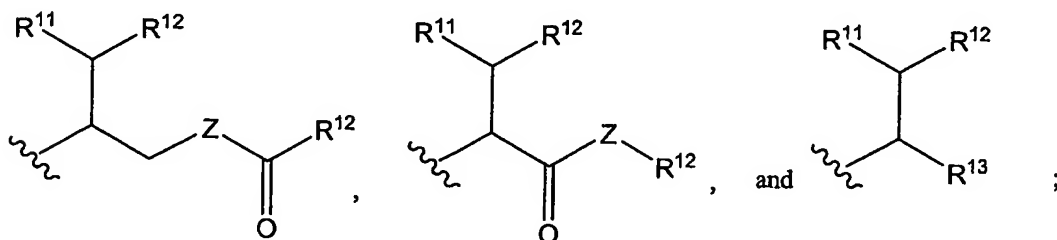
R^6 is selected from -H and -C₁-C₈ alkyl;

20 R^7 is selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle);

each R^8 is independently selected from -H, -OH, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle and -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl);

R^9 is selected from -H and -C₁-C₈ alkyl;

25 R^{10} is selected from



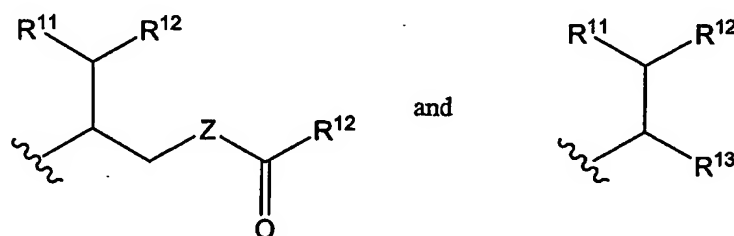
Z is -O-, -S-, -NH- or -N(R¹⁴)-;

R¹¹ is selected from -H, -OH, -NH₂, -NHR¹⁴, -N(R¹⁴)₂, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle); or R¹¹ is an oxygen atom which forms a carbonyl unit (C=O) with the carbon atom to which it is attached and a hydrogen atom on this carbon atom is replaced by one of the bonds in the (C=O) double bond;

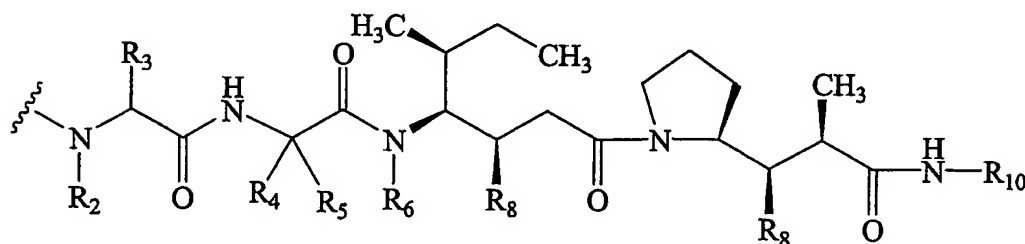
each R¹² is independently selected from -aryl and -C₃-C₈ heterocycle;

R¹³ is selected from -H, -OH, -NH₂, -NHR¹⁴, -N(R¹⁴)₂, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle); and
each R¹⁴ is independently -H or -C₁-C₈ alkyl.

In one embodiment, R¹⁰ is selected from



In a preferred embodiment, -D has the formula



or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or solvate thereof,

wherein, independently at each location:

R² is selected from -H and -methyl;

R³ is selected from -H, -methyl, and -isopropyl;

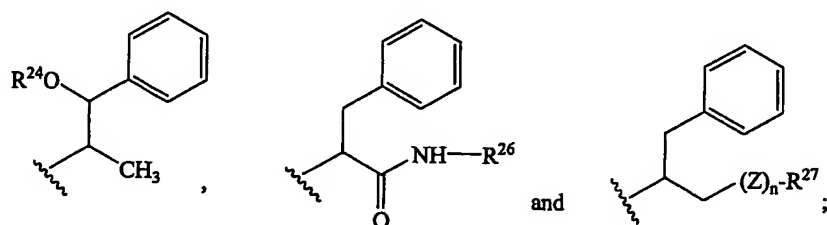
R⁴ is selected from -H and -methyl; R⁵ is selected from -isopropyl, -isobutyl, -sec-butyl, -methyl and -t-butyl; or R⁴ and R⁵ join, have the formula - (CR^aR^b)_n - where R^a and R^b are independently selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, and -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, and n is

selected from 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6, and form a ring with the carbon atom to which they are attached;

R^6 is selected from -H and -methyl;

each R^8 is independently selected from -OH, -methoxy and -ethoxy;

5 R^{10} is selected from



R^{24} is selected from H and $-C(O)R^{25}$; wherein R^{25} is selected from $-C_1-C_8$ alkyl, $-C_3-C_8$ carbocycle, -aryl, $-C_1-C_8$ alkyl-aryl, $-C_1-C_8$ alkyl- (C_3-C_8) carbocycle, $-C_3-C_8$ heterocycle and $-C_1-C_8$ alkyl- (C_3-C_8) heterocycle);

10 R^{26} is selected from $-C_1-C_8$ alkyl, $-C_3-C_8$ carbocycle, -aryl, $-C_1-C_8$ alkyl-aryl, $-C_1-C_8$ alkyl- (C_3-C_8) carbocycle, $-C_3-C_8$ heterocycle and $-C_1-C_8$ alkyl- (C_3-C_8) heterocycle);

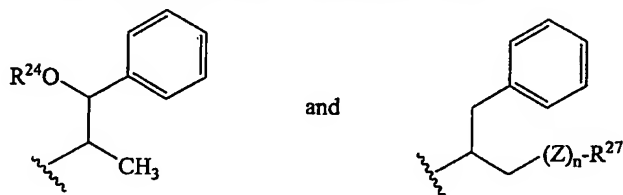
Z is -O-, -NH-, -OC(O)-, -NHC(O)-, $-N(R^{28})C(O)-$; where R^{28} is selected from -H and $-C_1-C_8$ alkyl;

n is 0 or 1; and

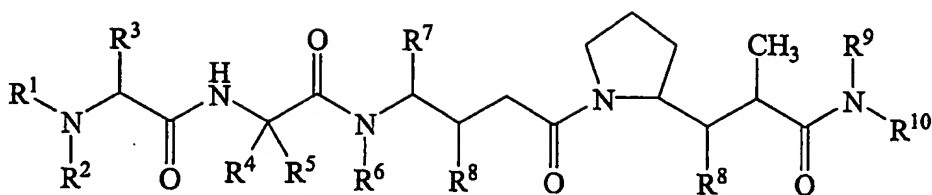
15 R^{27} is selected from -H, $-N_3$, $-C_1-C_8$ alkyl, $-C_3-C_8$ carbocycle, -aryl, $-C_1-C_8$ alkyl-aryl, $-C_1-C_8$ alkyl- (C_3-C_8) carbocycle, $-C_3-C_8$ heterocycle and $-C_1-C_8$ alkyl- (C_3-C_8) heterocycle) when n is 0; and R^{27} is selected from -H, $-C_1-C_8$ alkyl, $-C_3-C_8$ carbocycle, -aryl, $-C_1-C_8$ alkyl-aryl, $-C_1-C_8$ alkyl- (C_3-C_8) carbocycle, $-C_3-C_8$ heterocycle and $-C_1-C_8$ alkyl- (C_3-C_8) heterocycle) when n is 1.

20

In one embodiment, R^{10} is selected from



In another embodiment, -D is represented by the formula:



wherein, independently at each location:

R¹ is selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl and -C₃-C₈ carbocycle; and R² is selected from -H and -C₁-C₈ alkyl; or R¹ and R² join, have the formula -(CR^aR^b)_n- wherein
 5 R^a and R^b are independently selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl and -C₃-C₈ carbocycle and n is selected from 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6, and form a ring with the nitrogen atom to which they are attached;

R³ is selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈
 10 alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle);

R⁴ is selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle) wherein R⁵ is selected from -H and -methyl; or R⁴ and R⁵ join, have the formula -(CR^aR^b)_n- wherein R^a and R^b are independently selected from -H, -C₁-C₈
 15 alkyl and -C₃-C₈ carbocycle and n is selected from 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6, and form a ring with the carbon atom to which they are attached;

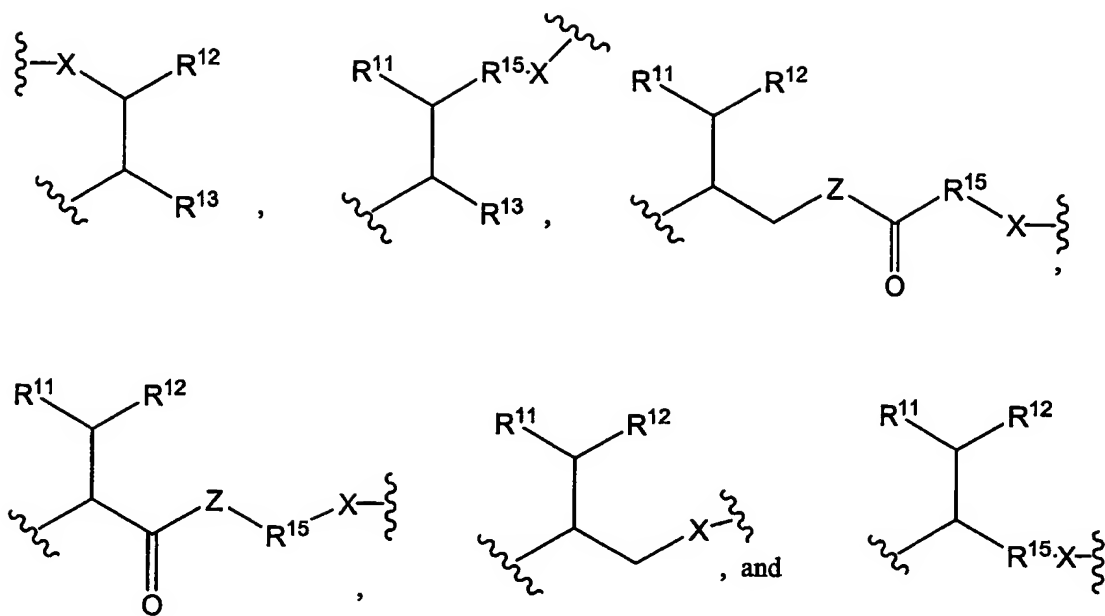
R⁶ is selected from -H and -C₁-C₈ alkyl;

R⁷ is selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈
 20 alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle);

each R⁸ is independently selected from -H, -OH, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle and -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl);

R⁹ is selected from -H and -C₁-C₈ alkyl;

R¹⁰ is selected from



X is -O-, -S-, -NH- or -N(R¹⁴)-, where X forms a bond with a Linker unit;

Z is -O-, -S-, -NH- or -N(R¹⁴)-;

R¹¹ is selected from -H, -OH, -NH₂, -NHR¹⁴, -N(R¹⁴)₂, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle); or R¹¹ is an oxygen atom which forms a carbonyl unit (C=O) with the carbon atom to which it is attached and a hydrogen atom on this carbon atom is replaced by one of the bonds in the (C=O) double bond;

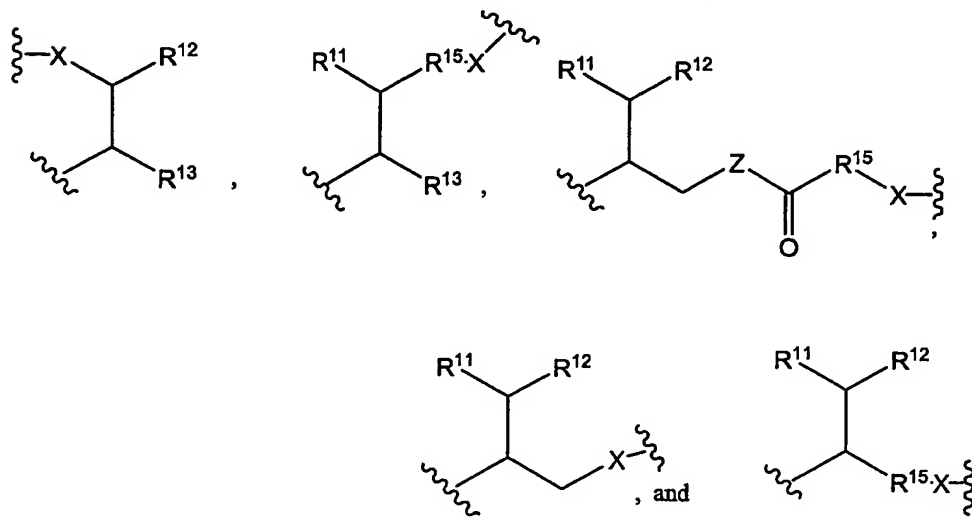
each R¹² is independently selected from -aryl and -C₃-C₈ heterocycle;

R¹³ is selected from -H, -OH, -NH₂, -NHR¹⁴, -N(R¹⁴)₂, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle);

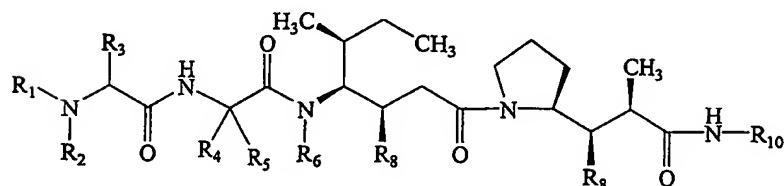
each R¹⁴ is independently -H or -C₁-C₈ alkyl; and

R¹⁵ is -arylene-, -C₃-C₈ carbocyclo- or -C₃-C₈ heterocyclo-.

In one embodiment, when R¹ is -H, R¹⁰ is selected from:



In a preferred embodiment, -D has the formula



or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or solvate thereof,

wherein, independently at each location:

R^1 is selected from -H and -methyl;

R^2 is selected from -H and -methyl;

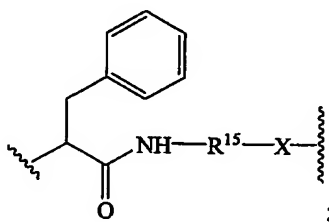
R^3 is selected from -H, -methyl, and -isopropyl;

- 5 R^4 is selected from -H and -methyl; R^5 is selected from -isopropyl, -isobutyl, -sec-butyl, -methyl and -t-butyl; or R^4 and R^5 join, have the formula $-(CR^aR^b)_n-$ where R^a and R^b are independently selected from -H, $-C_1-C_8$ alkyl, and $-C_3-C_8$ carbocycle, and n is selected from 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6, and form a ring with the carbon atom to which they are attached;

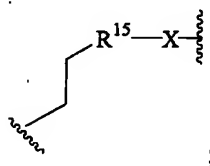
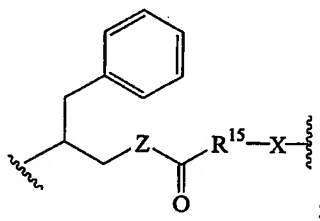
R^6 is selected from -H and -methyl;

- 10 each R^8 is independently selected from -OH, -methoxy and -ethoxy;

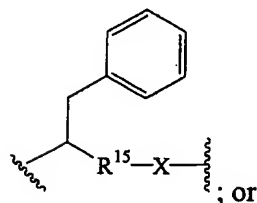
R^{10} is selected from



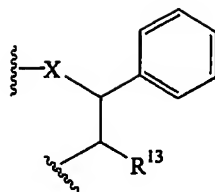
;



15



; or



where X is -O-, -NH- or -N(R¹⁴)- and forms a bond with Y when y is 1 or 2, with W when y is 0, and with A when w and y are both 0;

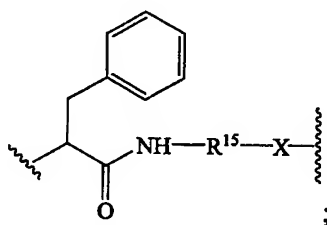
Z is -O-, -NH- or -N(R¹⁴)-;

5 R¹³ is -H or -methyl;

R¹⁴ is C₁-C₈ alkyl; and

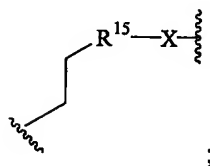
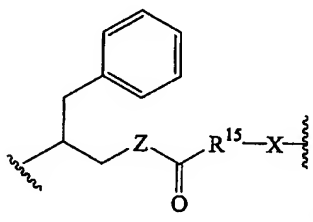
R¹⁵ is -arylene-, -C₃-C₈ carbocyclo or -C₃-C₈ heterocyclo-,

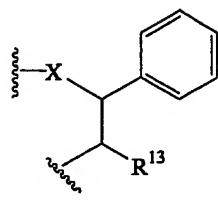
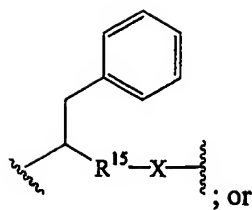
In one embodiment, when R¹ is -methyl, R¹⁰ is selected from



10

;





where X is -O-, -NH- or -N(R¹⁴)- and forms a bond with Y when y is 1 or 2, and with W when y is 0;

5 Z is -O-, -NH- or -N(R¹⁴)-;

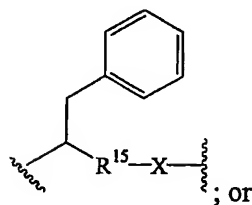
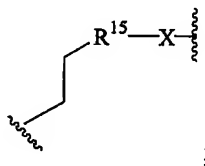
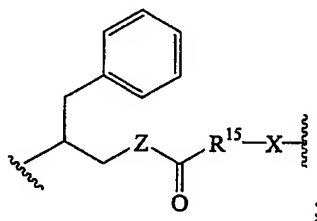
R¹³ is -H or -methyl;

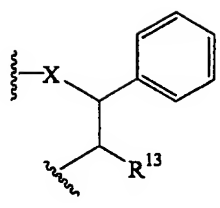
R¹⁴ is C₁-C₈ alkyl; and

R¹⁵ is -arylene-, -C₃-C₈ carbocyclo or -C₃-C₈ heterocyclo-.

10

In another embodiment, when R¹ is -H, R¹⁰ is selected from:





where X is -O-, -NH- or -N(R¹⁴)- and forms a bond with Y when y is 1 or 2, and with W when y is 0;

5 Z is -O-, -NH- or -N(R¹⁴)-;

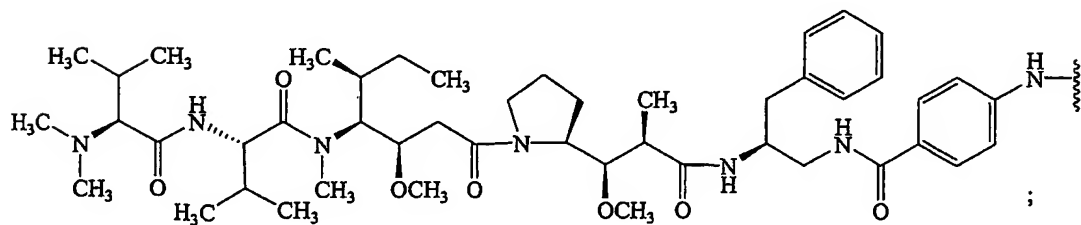
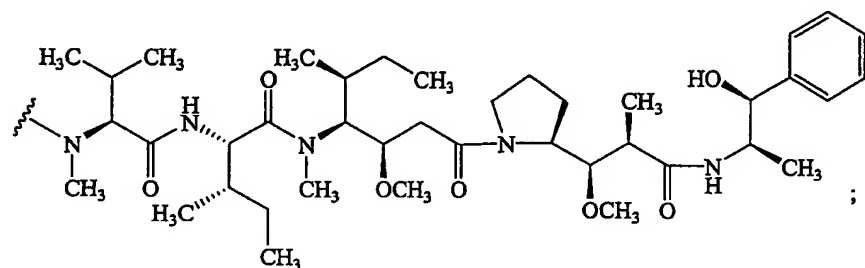
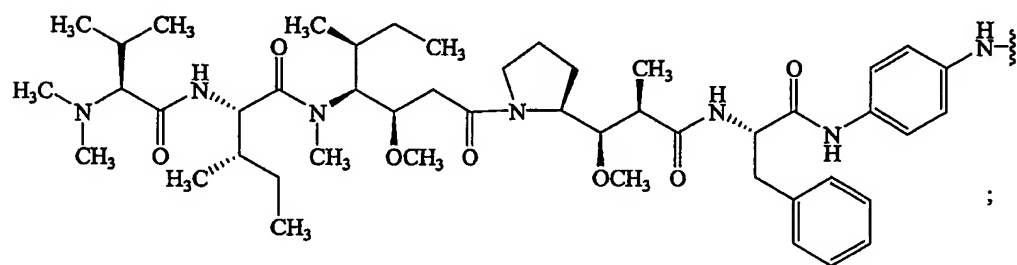
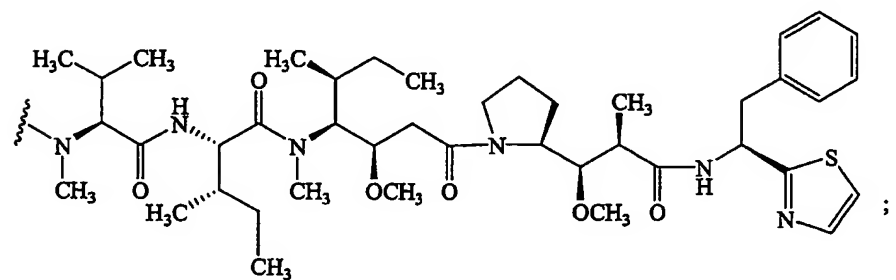
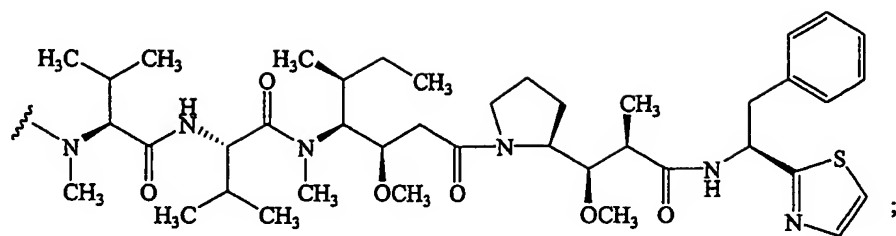
R¹³ is -H or -methyl;

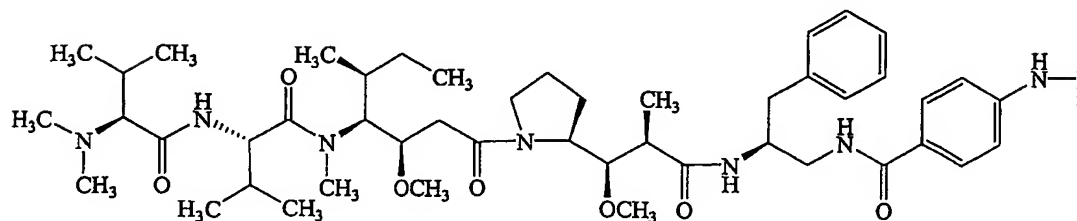
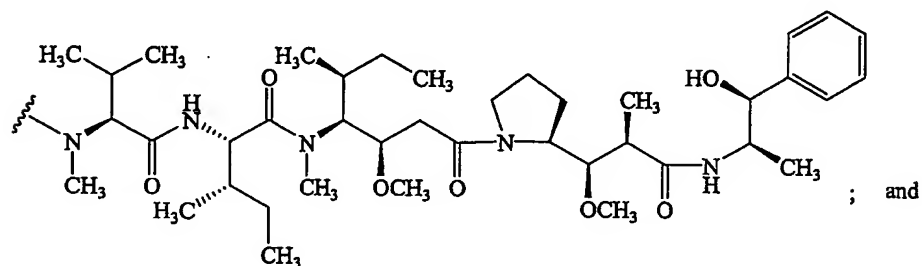
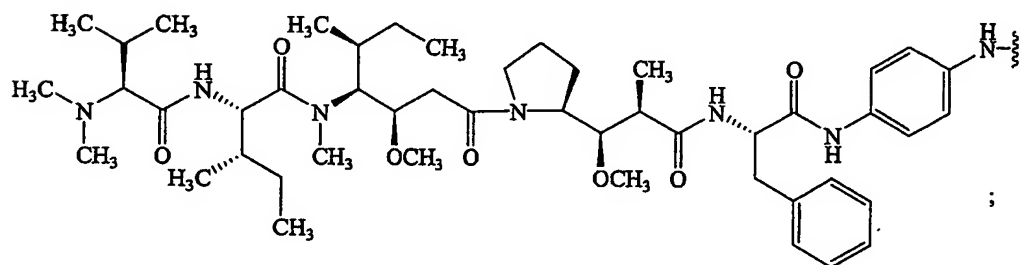
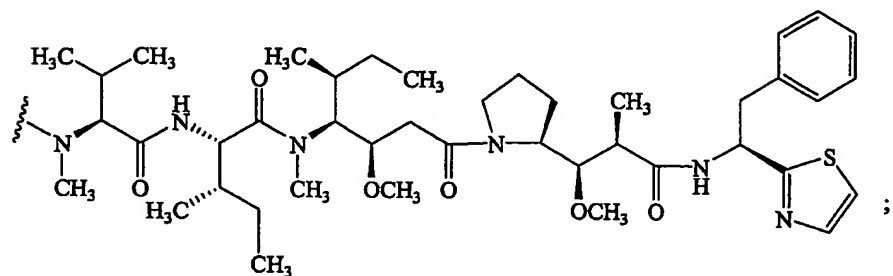
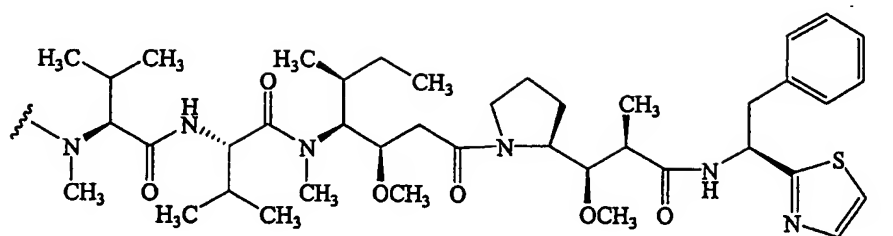
R¹⁴ is C₁-C₈ alkyl; and

R¹⁵ is -arylene-, -C₃-C₈ carbocyclo or -C₃-C₈ heterocyclo-.

10 A Drug unit can form a bond with a Linker unit via a nitrogen atom of a Drug's primary or secondary amino group, via an oxygen atom of a Drug's hydroxyl group, or via a sulfur atom of a Drug's sulfhydryl group to form a Drug-Linker Compound.

In a preferred embodiment, Drug units have the formula





5.6 THE LIGAND UNIT

The Ligand unit (L-) includes within its scope any unit of a Ligand (L) that binds or reactively associates or complexes with a receptor, antigen or other receptive

moiety associated with a given target-cell population. A Ligand can be any molecule that binds to, complexes with or reacts with a moiety of a cell population sought to be therapeutically or otherwise biologically modified. The Ligand unit acts to deliver the Drug unit to the particular target cell population with which the Ligand unit reacts. Such Ligands
5 include, but are not limited to, large molecular weight proteins such as, for example, full-length antibodies, antibody fragments, smaller molecular weight proteins, polypeptide or peptides, and lectins.

A Ligand unit can form a bond to either a Stretcher unit or an Amino Acid unit of a Linker. A Ligand unit can form a bond to a Linker unit via a heteroatom of the
10 Ligand. Heteroatoms that may be present on a Ligand unit include sulfur (in one embodiment, from a sulfhydryl group of a Ligand), oxygen (in one embodiment, from a carbonyl, carboxyl or hydroxyl group of a Ligand) and nitrogen (in one embodiment, from a primary or secondary amino group of a Ligand). These heteroatoms can be present on the Ligand in the Ligand's natural state, for example a naturally occurring antibody, or can be
15 introduced into the Ligand via chemical modification.

In a preferred embodiment, a Ligand has a sulfhydryl group and the Ligand bonds to the Linker unit via the sulfhydryl group's sulfur atom.

In another embodiment, the Ligand can have one or more carbohydrate groups that can be chemically modified to have one or more sulfhydryl groups. The Ligand
20 unit bonds to the Stretcher unit via the sulfhydryl group's sulfur atom.

In yet another embodiment, the Ligand can have one or more carbohydrate groups that can be oxidized to provide an aldehyde (-CHO) group (see Laguzza, et al., *J. Med. Chem.* 1989, 32(3), 548-55). The corresponding aldehyde can form a bond with a Reactive Site on a Stretcher. Reactive sites on a Stretcher that can react with a carbonyl
25 group on a Ligand include, but are not limited to, hydrazine and hydroxylamine.

Useful non-immunoreactive protein, polypeptide, or peptide Ligands include, but are not limited to, transferrin, epidermal growth factors ("EGF"), bombesin, gastrin, gastrin-releasing peptide, platelet-derived growth factor, IL-2, IL-6, transforming growth factors ("TGF"), such as TGF- α and TGF- β , vaccinia growth factor ("VGF"),
30 insulin and insulin-like growth factors I and II, lectins and apoprotein from low density lipoprotein.

Useful Polyclonal antibody Ligands are heterogeneous populations of antibody molecules derived from the sera of immunized animals. Various procedures well known in the art may be used for the production of polyclonal antibodies to an antigen-of-

interest. For example, for the production of polyclonal antibodies, various host animals can be immunized by injection with an antigen of interest or derivative thereof, including but not limited to rabbits, mice, rats, and guinea pigs. Various adjuvants may be used to increase the immunological response, depending on the host species, and including but not limited to Freund's (complete and incomplete), mineral gels such as aluminum hydroxide, surface active substances such as lysolecithin, pluronic polyols, polyanions, peptides, oil emulsions, keyhole limpet hemocyanins, dinitrophenol, and potentially useful human adjuvants such as BCG (bacille Calmette-Guerin) and corynebacterium parvum. Such adjuvants are also well known in the art.

Useful monoclonal antibody Ligands are homogeneous populations of antibodies to a particular antigen (*e.g.*, a cancer cell antigen, a viral antigen, a microbial antigen covalently linked to a second molecule). A monoclonal antibody (mAb) to an antigen-of-interest can be prepared by using any technique known in the art which provides for the production of antibody molecules by continuous cell lines in culture. These include, but are not limited to, the hybridoma technique originally described by Kohler and Milstein (1975, *Nature* 256, 495-497), the human B cell hybridoma technique (Kozbor et al., 1983, *Immunology Today* 4: 72), and the EBV-hybridoma technique (Cole et al., 1985, *Monoclonal Antibodies and Cancer Therapy*, Alan R. Liss, Inc., pp. 77-96). Such antibodies may be of any immunoglobulin class including IgG, IgM, IgE, IgA, and IgD and any subclass thereof. The hybridoma producing the mAbs of use in this invention may be cultivated *in vitro* or *in vivo*.

Useful monoclonal antibody Ligands include, but are not limited to, human monoclonal antibodies or chimeric human-mouse (or other species) monoclonal antibodies. Human monoclonal antibodies may be made by any of numerous techniques known in the art (*e.g.*, Teng et al., 1983, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A.* 80, 7308-7312; Kozbor et al., 1983, *Immunology Today* 4, 72-79; and Olsson et al., 1982, *Meth. Enzymol.* 92, 3-16).

The Ligand can also be a bispecific antibody. Methods for making bispecific antibodies are known in the art. Traditional production of full-length bispecific antibodies is based on the coexpression of two immunoglobulin heavy chain-light chain pairs, where the two chains have different specificities (Milstein et al., 1983, *Nature* 305:537-539). Because of the random assortment of immunoglobulin heavy and light chains, these hybridomas (quadromas) produce a potential mixture of 10 different antibody molecules, of which only one has the correct bispecific structure. Purification of the correct molecule, which is usually performed using affinity chromatography steps, is rather

cumbersome, and the product yields are low. Similar procedures are disclosed in International Publication No. WO 93/08829, and in Traunecker et al., *EMBO J.* 10:3655-3659 (1991).

According to a different and more preferred approach, antibody variable
5 domains with the desired binding specificities (antibody-antigen combining sites) are fused to immunoglobulin constant domain sequences. The fusion preferably is with an immunoglobulin heavy chain constant domain, comprising at least part of the hinge, CH2, and CH3 regions. It is preferred to have the first heavy-chain constant region (CH1) containing the site necessary for light chain binding, present in at least one of the fusions.
10 DNAs encoding the immunoglobulin heavy chain fusions and, if desired, the immunoglobulin light chain, are inserted into separate expression vectors, and are co-transfected into a suitable host organism. This provides for great flexibility in adjusting the mutual proportions of the three polypeptide fragments in embodiments when unequal ratios of the three polypeptide chains used in the construction provide the optimum yields. It is,
15 however, possible to insert the coding sequences for two or all three polypeptide chains in one expression vector when the expression of at least two polypeptide chains in equal ratios results in high yields or when the ratios are of no particular significance.

In a preferred embodiment of this approach, the bispecific antibodies have a hybrid immunoglobulin heavy chain with a first binding specificity in one arm, and a hybrid
20 immunoglobulin heavy chain-light chain pair (providing a second binding specificity) in the other arm. This asymmetric structure facilitates the separation of the desired bispecific compound from unwanted immunoglobulin chain combinations, as the presence of an immunoglobulin light chain in only one half of the bispecific molecule provides for a facile way of separation (International Publication No. WO 94/04690) which is incorporated
25 herein by reference in its entirety.

For further details for generating bispecific antibodies see, for example, Suresh et al., *Methods in Enzymology*, 1986, 121:210. Using such techniques, bispecific antibody Ligands can be prepared for use in the treatment or prevention of disease as defined herein.

30 Bifunctional antibodies are also described, in European Patent Publication No. EPA 0 105 360. As disclosed in this reference, hybrid or bifunctional antibodies can be derived either biologically, *i.e.*, by cell fusion techniques, or chemically, especially with cross-linking agents or disulfide-bridge forming reagents, and may comprise whole antibodies or fragments thereof. Methods for obtaining such hybrid antibodies are

disclosed for example, in International Publication WO 83/03679, and European Patent Publication No. EPA 0 217 577, both of which are incorporated herein by reference.

The Ligand can be a functionally active fragment, derivative or analog of an antibody that immunospecifically binds to cancer cell antigens, viral antigens, or microbial antigens. In this regard, "Functionally active" means that the fragment, derivative or analog is able to elicit anti-anti-idiotypic antibodies that recognize the same antigen that the antibody from which the fragment, derivative or analog is derived recognized. Specifically, in a preferred embodiment the antigenicity of the idiotype of the immunoglobulin molecule can be enhanced by deletion of framework and CDR sequences that are C-terminal to the CDR sequence that specifically recognizes the antigen. To determine which CDR sequences bind the antigen, synthetic peptides containing the CDR sequences can be used in binding assays with the antigen by any binding assay method known in the art (e.g., the BIA core assay)

Other useful Ligands include fragments of antibodies such as, but not limited to, F(ab')₂ fragments, which contain the variable region, the light chain constant region and the CH1 domain of the heavy chain can be produced by pepsin digestion of the antibody molecule, and Fab fragments, which can be generated by reducing the disulfide bridges of the F(ab')₂ fragments. Other useful Ligands are heavy chain and light chain dimers of antibodies, or any minimal fragment thereof such as Fvs or single chain antibodies (SCAs) (e.g., as described in U.S. Patent 4,946,778; Bird, 1988, *Science* 242:423-42; Huston et al., 1988, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 85:5879-5883; and Ward et al., 1989, *Nature* 334:544-54), or any other molecule with the same specificity as the antibody.

Additionally, recombinant antibodies, such as chimeric and humanized monoclonal antibodies, comprising both human and non-human portions, which can be made using standard recombinant DNA techniques, are useful Ligands. A chimeric antibody is a molecule in which different portions are derived from different animal species, such as those having a variable region derived from a murine monoclonal and a human immunoglobulin constant region. (See, e.g., Cabilly et al., U.S. Patent No. 4,816,567; and Boss et al., U.S. Patent No. 4,816,397, which are incorporated herein by reference in their entirety.) Humanized antibodies are antibody molecules from non-human species having one or more complementarity determining regions (CDRs) from the non-human species and a framework region from a human immunoglobulin molecule. (See, e.g., Queen, U.S. Patent No. 5,585,089, which is incorporated herein by reference in its entirety.) Such chimeric and humanized monoclonal antibodies can be produced by recombinant DNA

techniques known in the art, for example using methods described in International Publication No. WO 87/02671; European Patent Publication No. 184,187; European Patent Publication No. 171,496; European Patent Publication No. 173,494; International Publication No. WO 86/01533; U.S. Patent No. 4,816,567; European Patent Publication
5 No.125,023; Berter et al., 1988, *Science* 240:1041-1043; Liu et al., 1987, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 84:3439-3443; Liu et al., 1987, *J. Immunol.* 139:3521-3526; Sun et al., 1987, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 84:214-218; Nishimura et al., 1987, *Canc. Res.* 47:999-1005; Wood et al., 1985, *Nature* 314:446-449; and Shaw et al., 1988, *J. Natl. Cancer Inst.* 80:1553-1559; Morrison, 1985, *Science* 229:1202-1207; Oi et al., 1986, *BioTechniques*
10 4:214; U.S. Patent 5,225,539; Jones et al., 1986, *Nature* 321:552-525; Verhoeyan et al. (1988) *Science* 239:1534; and Beidler et al., 1988, *J. Immunol.* 141:4053-4060; each of which is incorporated herein by reference in its entirety.

Completely human antibodies are particularly desirable for Ligands. Such antibodies can be produced using transgenic mice that are incapable of expressing
15 endogenous immunoglobulin heavy and light chains genes, but which can express human heavy and light chain genes. The transgenic mice are immunized in the normal fashion with a selected antigen, *e.g.*, all or a portion of a polypeptide of the invention. Monoclonal antibodies directed against the antigen can be obtained using conventional hybridoma technology. The human immunoglobulin transgenes harbored by the transgenic mice
20 rearrange during B cell differentiation, and subsequently undergo class switching and somatic mutation. Thus, using such a technique, it is possible to produce therapeutically useful IgG, IgA, IgM and IgE antibodies. For an overview of this technology for producing human antibodies, see Lonberg and Huszar (1995, *Int. Rev. Immunol.* 13:65-93). For a detailed discussion of this technology for producing human antibodies and human
25 monoclonal antibodies and protocols for producing such antibodies, *see, e.g.*, U.S. Patent 5,625,126; U.S. Patent 5,633,425; U.S. Patent 5,569,825; U.S. Patent 5,661,016; and U.S. Patent 5,545,806; each of which is incorporated herein by reference in its entirety. Other human antibodies can be obtained commercially from, for example, Abgenix, Inc. (Freemont, CA) and Genpharm (San Jose, CA).

30 Completely human antibodies that recognize a selected epitope can be generated using a technique referred to as "guided selection." In this approach a selected non-human monoclonal antibody, *e.g.*, a mouse antibody, is used to guide the selection of a completely human antibody recognizing the same epitope. (Jespers et al. (1994) *Biotechnology* 12:899-903).

In other embodiments, the Ligand is a fusion protein of an antibody, or a functionally active fragment thereof, for example in which the antibody is fused via a covalent bond (*e.g.*, a peptide bond), at either the N-terminus or the C-terminus to an amino acid sequence of another protein (or portion thereof, preferably at least 10, 20 or 50 amino acid portion of the protein) that is not the antibody. Preferably, the antibody or fragment thereof is covalently linked to the other protein at the N-terminus of the constant domain.

The Ligand antibodies include analogs and derivatives that are either modified, *i.e.*, by the covalent attachment of any type of molecule as long as such covalent attachment permits the antibody to retain its antigen binding immunospecificity. For example, but not by way of limitation, the derivatives and analogs of the antibodies include those that have been further modified, *e.g.*, by glycosylation, acetylation, pegylation, phosphorylation, amidation, derivatization by known protecting/blocking groups, proteolytic cleavage, linkage to a cellular Ligand unit or other protein, etc. Any of numerous chemical modifications can be carried out by known techniques, including, but not limited to specific chemical cleavage, acetylation, formylation, metabolic synthesis of tunicamycin, etc. Additionally, the analog or derivative can contain one or more unnatural amino acids.

The Ligand antibodies include antibodies having modifications (*e.g.*, substitutions, deletions or additions) in amino acid residues that interact with Fc receptors. In particular, the Ligand antibodies include antibodies having modifications in amino acid residues identified as involved in the interaction between the Fc domain and the FcRn receptor (see, *e.g.*, International Publication No. WO 97/34631, which is incorporated herein by reference in its entirety). Antibodies immunospecific for a cancer cell antigen can be obtained commercially, for example, from Genentech (San Francisco, CA) or produced by any method known to one of skill in the art such as, *e.g.*, chemical synthesis or recombinant expression techniques. The nucleotide sequence encoding antibodies immunospecific for a cancer cell antigen can be obtained, *e.g.*, from the GenBank database or a database like it, the literature publications, or by routine cloning and sequencing.

In a specific embodiment, known antibodies for the treatment or prevention of cancer are used in accordance with the compositions and methods of the invention. Antibodies immunospecific for a cancer cell antigen can be obtained commercially or produced by any method known to one of skill in the art such as, *e.g.*, chemical synthesis or recombinant expression techniques. The nucleotide sequence encoding antibodies immunospecific for a cancer cell antigen can be obtained, *e.g.*, from the GenBank database or a database like it, the literature publications, or by routine cloning and sequencing.

Examples of antibodies available for the treatment of cancer include, but are not limited to, HERCEPTIN (Trastuzumab; Genentech, CA) which is a humanized anti-HER2 monoclonal antibody for the treatment of patients with metastatic breast cancer (Stebbing, J., Copson, E., and O'Reilly, S. "Herceptin (trastuzumab) in advanced breast cancer" *Cancer Treat Rev.* 5 26, 287-90, 2000); RITUXAN (rituximab; Genentech) which is a chimeric anti-CD20 monoclonal antibody for the treatment of patients with non-Hodgkin's lymphoma; OvaRex (AltaRex Corporation, MA) which is a murine antibody for the treatment of ovarian cancer; Panorex (Glaxo Wellcome, NC) which is a murine IgG_{2a} antibody for the treatment of colorectal cancer; BEC2 (ImClone Systems Inc., NY) which is murine IgG antibody for the treatment of lung cancer; IMC-C225 (Imclone Systems Inc., NY) which is a chimeric IgG 10 antibody for the treatment of head and neck cancer; Vitaxin (MedImmune, Inc., MD) which is a humanized antibody for the treatment of sarcoma; Campath I/H (Leukosite, MA) which is a humanized IgG₁ antibody for the treatment of chronic lymphocytic leukemia (CLL); Smart MI95 (Protein Design Labs, Inc., CA) which is a humanized IgG antibody for the treatment of acute myeloid leukemia (AML); LymphoCide (Immunomedics, Inc., NJ) 15 which is a humanized IgG antibody for the treatment of non-Hodgkin's lymphoma; Smart ID10 (Protein Design Labs, Inc., CA) which is a humanized antibody for the treatment of non-Hodgkin's lymphoma; Oncolym (Techniclone, Inc., CA) which is a murine antibody for the treatment of non-Hodgkin's lymphoma; Allomune (BioTransplant, CA) which is a 20 humanized anti-CD2 mAb for the treatment of Hodgkin's Disease or non-Hodgkin's lymphoma; anti-VEGF (Genentech, Inc., CA) which is humanized antibody for the treatment of lung and colorectal cancers; CEAcide (Immunomedics, NJ) which is a humanized anti-CEA antibody for the treatment of colorectal cancer; IMC-1C11 (ImClone Systems, NJ) which is an anti-KDR chimeric antibody for the treatment of colorectal 25 cancer, lung cancers, and melanoma; and Cetuximab (ImClone, NJ) which is an anti-EGFR chimeric antibody for the treatment of epidermal growth factor positive cancers.

Other antibodies useful in the treatment of cancer include, but are not limited to, antibodies against the following antigens: CA125 (ovarian), CA15-3 (carcinomas), CA19-9 (carcinomas), L6 (carcinomas), Lewis Y (carcinomas), Lewis X (carcinomas), 30 alpha fetoprotein (carcinomas), CA 242 (colorectal), placental alkaline phosphatase (carcinomas), prostate specific antigen (prostate), prostatic acid phosphatase (prostate), epidermal growth factor (carcinomas), MAGE-1 (carcinomas), MAGE-2 (carcinomas), MAGE-3 (carcinomas), MAGE -4 (carcinomas), anti-transferrin receptor (carcinomas), p97 (melanoma), MUC1-KLH (breast cancer), CEA (colorectal), gp100 (melanoma),

MART1 (melanoma), PSA (prostate), IL-2 receptor (T-cell leukemia and lymphomas), CD20 (non-Hodgkin's lymphoma), CD52 (leukemia), CD33 (leukemia), CD22 (lymphoma), human chorionic gonadotropin (carcinoma), CD38 (multiple myeloma), CD40 (lymphoma), mucin (carcinomas), P21 (carcinomas), MPG (melanoma), and Neu oncogene product

5 (carcinomas). Some specific useful antibodies include, but are not limited to, BR96 mAb (Trail, P. A., Willner, D., Lasch, S. J., Henderson, A. J., Hofstead, S. J., Casazza, A. M., Firestone, R. A., Hellström, I., Hellström, K. E., "Cure of Xenografted Human Carcinomas by BR96-Doxorubicin Immunoconjugates" *Science* 1993, 261, 212-215), BR64 (Trail, P. A., Willner, D., Knipe, J., Henderson, A. J., Lasch, S. J., Zoeckler, M. E., Trailsmith, M. D.,

10 Doyle, T. W., King, H. D., Casazza, A. M., Braslawsky, G. R., Brown, J. P., Hofstead, S. J., (Greenfield, R. S., Firestone, R. A., Mosure, K., Kadow, D. F., Yang, M. B., Hellstrom, K. E., and Hellstrom, I. "Effect of Linker Variation on the Stability, Potency, and Efficacy of Carcinoma-reactive BR64-Doxorubicin Immunoconjugates" *Cancer Research* 1997, 57, 100-105, mAbs against the CD40 antigen, such as S2C6 mAb (Francisco, J. A., Donaldson,

15 K. L., Chace, D., Siegall, C. B., and Wahl, A. F. "Agonistic properties and in vivo antitumor activity of the anti-CD-40 antibody, SGN-14" *Cancer Res.* 2000, 60, 3225-3231), mAbs against the CD70 antigen, such as 1F6 mAb, and mAbs against the CD30 antigen, such as AC10 (Bowen, M. A., Olsen, K. J., Cheng, L., Avila, D., and Podack, E. R. "Functional effects of CD30 on a large granular lymphoma cell line YT" *J. Immunol.*, 151,

20 5896-5906, 1993). Many other internalizing antibodies that bind to tumor associated antigens can be used in this invention, and have been reviewed (Franke, A. E., Sievers, E. L., and Scheinberg, D. A., "Cell surface receptor-targeted therapy of acute myeloid leukemia: a review" *Cancer Biother Radiopharm.* 2000, 15, 459-76; Murray, J. L., "Monoclonal antibody treatment of solid tumors: a coming of age" *Semin Oncol.* 2000, 27,

25 64-70; Breitling, F., and Dubel, S., *Recombinant Antibodies*, John Wiley, and Sons, New York, 1998).

In another specific embodiment, known antibodies for the treatment or prevention of an autoimmune disease are used in accordance with the compositions and methods of the invention. Antibodies immunospecific for an antigen of a cell that is

30 responsible for producing autoimmune antibodies can be obtained from any organization (e.g., a university scientist or a company such as Genentech) or produced by any method known to one of skill in the art such as, e.g., chemical synthesis or recombinant expression techniques. In another embodiment, useful Ligand antibodies that are immunospecific for the treatment of autoimmune diseases include, but are not limited to, Anti-Nuclear

Antibody; Anti ds DNA; Anti ss DNA, Anti Cardiolipin Antibody IgM, IgG; Anti Phospholipid Antibody IgM, IgG; Anti SM Antibody; Anti Mitochondrial Antibody; Thyroid Antibody; Microsomal Antibody; Thyroglobulin Antibody; Anti SCL-70; Anti-Jo; Anti-U₁RNP; Anti-La/SSB; Anti SSA; Anti SSB; Anti Perital Cells Antibody; Anti
 5 Histones; Anti RNP; C-ANCA; P-ANCA; Anti centromere; Anti-Fibrillarin, and Anti GBM Antibody.

In certain preferred embodiments, antibodies useful in the present methods, can bind to both a receptor or a receptor complex expressed on an activated lymphocyte. The receptor or receptor complex can comprise an immunoglobulin gene superfamily
 10 member, a TNF receptor superfamily member, an integrin, a cytokine receptor, a chemokine receptor, a major histocompatibility protein, a lectin, or a complement control protein. Non-limiting examples of suitable immunoglobulin superfamily members are CD2, CD3, CD4, CD8, CD19, CD22, CD28, CD79, CD90, CD152/CTLA-4, PD-1, and ICOS. Non-limiting examples of suitable TNF receptor superfamily members are CD27, CD40,
 15 CD95/Fas, CD134/OX40, CD137/4-1BB, TNF-R1, TNFR-2, RANK, TACI, BCMA, osteoprotegerin, Apo2/TRAIL-R1, TRAIL-R2, TRAIL-R3, TRAIL-R4, and APO-3. Non-limiting examples of suitable integrins are CD11a, CD11b, CD11c, CD18, CD29, CD41, CD49a, CD49b, CD49c, CD49d, CD49e, CD49f, CD103, and CD104. Non-limiting examples of suitable lectins are C-type, S-type, and I-type lectin.

20 In one embodiment, the Ligand is an antibody that binds to an activated lymphocyte that is associated with an autoimmune disease.

In another specific embodiment, useful Ligand antibodies that are immunospecific for a viral or a microbial antigen are monoclonal antibodies. Preferably, Ligand antibodies that are immunospecific for a viral antigen or microbial antigen are
 25 humanized or human monoclonal antibodies. As used herein, the term "viral antigen" includes, but is not limited to, any viral peptide, polypeptide protein (*e.g.*, HIV gp120, HIV nef, RSV F glycoprotein, influenza virus neuraminidase, influenza virus hemagglutinin, HTLV tax, herpes simplex virus glycoprotein (*e.g.*, gB, gC, gD, and gE) and hepatitis B surface antigen) that is capable of eliciting an immune response. As used herein, the term
 30 "microbial antigen" includes, but is not limited to, any microbial peptide, polypeptide, protein, saccharide, polysaccharide, or lipid molecule (*e.g.*, a bacterial, fungi, pathogenic protozoa, or yeast polypeptide including, *e.g.*, LPS and capsular polysaccharide 5/8) that is capable of eliciting an immune response.

Antibodies immunospecific for a viral or microbial antigen can be obtained commercially, for example, from Genentech (San Francisco, CA) or produced by any method known to one of skill in the art such as, *e.g.*, chemical synthesis or recombinant expression techniques. The nucleotide sequence encoding antibodies that are

5 immunospecific for a viral or microbial antigen can be obtained, *e.g.*, from the GenBank database or a database like it, the literature publications, or by routine cloning and sequencing.

In a specific embodiment, useful Ligand antibodies are those that are useful for the treatment or prevention of viral or microbial infection in accordance with the

10 methods of the invention. Examples of antibodies available useful for the treatment of viral infection or microbial infection include, but are not limited to, SYNAGIS (MedImmune, Inc., MD) which is a humanized anti-respiratory syncytial virus (RSV) monoclonal antibody useful for the treatment of patients with RSV infection; PRO542 (Progenics) which is a CD4 fusion antibody useful for the treatment of HIV infection; OSTAVIR (Protein Design

15 Labs, Inc., CA) which is a human antibody useful for the treatment of hepatitis B virus; PROTOVIR (Protein Design Labs, Inc., CA) which is a humanized IgG₁ antibody useful for the treatment of cytomegalovirus (CMV); and anti-LPS antibodies.

Other antibodies useful in the treatment of infectious diseases include, but are not limited to, antibodies against the antigens from pathogenic strains of bacteria

20 (*Streptococcus pyogenes*, *Streptococcus pneumoniae*, *Neisseria gonorrhoeae*, *Neisseria meningitidis*, *Corynebacterium diphtheriae*, *Clostridium botulinum*, *Clostridium perfringens*, *Clostridium tetani*, *Hemophilus influenzae*, *Klebsiella pneumoniae*, *Klebsiella ozaenas*, *Klebsiella rhinoscleromatis*, *Staphylococcus aureus*, *Vibrio cholerae*, *Escherichia coli*, *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*, *Campylobacter (Vibrio) fetus*, *Aeromonas hydrophila*,

25 *Bacillus cereus*, *Edwardsiella tarda*, *Yersinia enterocolitica*, *Yersinia pestis*, *Yersinia pseudotuberculosis*, *Shigella dysenteriae*, *Shigella flexneri*, *Shigella sonnei*, *Salmonella typhimurium*, *Treponema pallidum*, *Treponema pertenue*, *Treponema carateneum*, *Borrelia vincentii*, *Borrelia burgdorferi*, *Leptospira icterohemorrhagiae*, *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*, *Pneumocystis carinii*, *Francisella tularensis*, *Brucella abortus*, *Brucella suis*,

30 *Brucella melitensis*, *Mycoplasma spp.*, *Rickettsia prowazeki*, *Rickettsia tsutsugumushi*, *Chlamydia spp.*); pathogenic fungi (*Coccidioides immitis*, *Aspergillus fumigatus*, *Candida albicans*, *Blastomyces dermatitidis*, *Cryptococcus neoformans*, *Histoplasma capsulatum*); protozoa (*Entamoeba histolytica*, *Toxoplasma gondii*, *Trichomonas tenax*, *Trichomonas hominis*, *Trichomonas vaginalis*, *Trypanosoma gambiense*, *Trypanosoma rhodesiense*,

Trypanosoma cruzi, Leishmania donovani, Leishmania tropica, Leishmania braziliensis, Pneumocystis pneumonia, Plasmodium vivax, Plasmodium falciparum, Plasmodium malaria); or Helminths (Enterobius vermicularis, Trichuris trichiura, Ascaris lumbricoides, Trichinella spiralis, Strongyloides stercoralis, Schistosoma japonicum, Schistosoma mansoni, Schistosoma haematobium, and hookworms).

Other antibodies useful in this invention for treatment of viral disease include, but are not limited to, antibodies against antigens of pathogenic viruses, including as examples and not by limitation: Poxviridae, Herpesviridae, Herpes Simplex virus 1, Herpes Simplex virus 2, Adenoviridae, Papovaviridae, Enteroviridae, Picornaviridae, Parvoviridae, Reoviridae, Retroviridae, influenza viruses, parainfluenza viruses, mumps, measles, respiratory syncytial virus, rubella, Arboviridae, Rhabdoviridae, Arenaviridae, Hepatitis A virus, Hepatitis B virus, Hepatitis C virus, Hepatitis E virus, Non-A/Non-B Hepatitis virus, Rhinoviridae, Coronaviridae, Rotoviridae, and Human Immunodeficiency Virus.

The antibodies suitable for use in the invention can be produced by any method known in the art for the synthesis of antibodies, in particular, by chemical synthesis or by recombinant expression, and are preferably produced by recombinant expression techniques.

5.6.1 PRODUCTION OF RECOMBINANT ANTIBODIES

Ligand antibodies of the invention can be produced using any method known in the art to be useful for the synthesis of antibodies, in particular, by chemical synthesis or by recombinant expression, and are preferably produced by recombinant expression techniques.

Recombinant expression of the Ligand antibodies, or fragment, derivative or analog thereof, requires construction of a nucleic acid that encodes the antibody. If the nucleotide sequence of the antibody is known, a nucleic acid encoding the antibody may be assembled from chemically synthesized oligonucleotides (*e.g.*, as described in Kutmeier et al., 1994, *BioTechniques* 17:242), which involves the synthesis of overlapping oligonucleotides containing portions of the sequence encoding the antibody, annealing and ligation of those oligonucleotides, and then amplification of the ligated oligonucleotides by PCR.

Alternatively, a nucleic acid molecule encoding an antibody can be generated from a suitable source. If a clone containing the nucleic acid encoding the

particular antibody is not available, but the sequence of the antibody is known, a nucleic acid encoding the antibody can be obtained from a suitable source (e.g., an antibody cDNA library, or cDNA library generated from any tissue or cells expressing the immunoglobulin) by PCR amplification using synthetic primers hybridizable to the 3' and 5' ends of the sequence or by cloning using an oligonucleotide probe specific for the particular gene sequence.

If an antibody that specifically recognizes a particular antigen is not commercially available (or a source for a cDNA library for cloning a nucleic acid encoding such an immunoglobulin), antibodies specific for a particular antigen can be generated by any method known in the art, for example, by immunizing an animal, such as a rabbit, to generate polyclonal antibodies or, more preferably, by generating monoclonal antibodies, e.g., as described by Kohler and Milstein (1975, *Nature* 256:495-497) or, as described by Kozbor et al. (1983, *Immunology Today* 4:72) or Cole et al. (1985 in *Monoclonal Antibodies and Cancer Therapy*, Alan R. Liss, Inc., pp. 77-96). Alternatively, a clone encoding at least the Fab portion of the antibody can be obtained by screening Fab expression libraries (e.g., as described in Huse et al., 1989, *Science* 246:1275-1281) for clones of Fab fragments that bind the specific antigen or by screening antibody libraries (See, e.g., Clackson et al., 1991, *Nature* 352:624; Hane et al., 1997 *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 94:4937).

Once a nucleic acid sequence encoding at least the variable domain of the antibody is obtained, it can be introduced into a vector containing the nucleotide sequence encoding the constant regions of the antibody (see, e.g., International Publication No. WO 86/05807; International Publication No. WO 89/01036; and U.S. Patent No. 5,122,464). Vectors containing the complete light or heavy chain that allow for the expression of a complete antibody molecule are available. Then, the nucleic acid encoding the antibody can be used to introduce the nucleotide substitutions or deletion necessary to substitute (or delete) the one or more variable region cysteine residues participating in an intrachain disulfide bond with an amino acid residue that does not contain a sulfhydryl group. Such modifications can be carried out by any method known in the art for the introduction of specific mutations or deletions in a nucleotide sequence, for example, but not limited to, chemical mutagenesis and *in vitro* site directed mutagenesis (Hutchinson et al., 1978, *J. Biol. Chem.* 253:6551).

In addition, techniques developed for the production of "chimeric antibodies" (Morrison et al., 1984, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci.* 81:851-855; Neuberger et al.,

1984, *Nature* 312:604-608; Takeda et al., 1985, *Nature* 314:452-454) by splicing genes from a mouse antibody molecule of appropriate antigen specificity together with genes from a human antibody molecule of appropriate biological activity can be used. A chimeric antibody is a molecule in which different portions are derived from different animal species, such as those having a variable region derived from a murine monoclonal antibody and a human immunoglobulin constant region, *e.g.*, humanized antibodies.

Alternatively, techniques described for the production of single chain antibodies (U.S. Patent 4,694,778; Bird, 1988, *Science* 242:423-42; Huston et al., 1988, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 85:5879-5883; and Ward et al., 1989, *Nature* 334:544-54) can be adapted to produce single chain antibodies. Single chain antibodies are formed by linking the heavy and light chain fragments of the Fv region via an amino acid bridge, resulting in a single chain polypeptide. Techniques for the assembly of functional Fv fragments in *E. coli* may also be used (Skerra et al., 1988, *Science* 242:1038-1041).

Antibody fragments that recognize specific epitopes can be generated by known techniques. For example, such fragments include, but are not limited to, the F(ab')₂ fragments that can be produced by pepsin digestion of the antibody molecule and the Fab fragments that can be generated by reducing the disulfide bridges of the F(ab')₂ fragments.

Once a nucleic acid sequence encoding a Ligand antibody has been obtained, the vector for the production of the antibody can be produced by recombinant DNA technology using techniques well known in the art. Methods that are well known to those skilled in the art can be used to construct expression vectors containing the antibody coding sequences and appropriate transcriptional and translational control signals. These methods include, for example, *in vitro* recombinant DNA techniques, synthetic techniques, and *in vivo* genetic recombination. See, for example, the techniques described in Sambrook et al. (1990, *Molecular Cloning*, A Laboratory Manual, 2nd Ed., Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory, Cold Spring Harbor, NY) and Ausubel et al. (eds., 1998, Current Protocols in Molecular Biology, John Wiley & Sons, NY).

An expression vector comprising the nucleotide sequence of an antibody or the nucleotide sequence of an antibody can be transferred to a host cell by conventional techniques (*e.g.*, electroporation, liposomal transfection, and calcium phosphate precipitation), and the transfected cells are then cultured by conventional techniques to produce the antibody. In specific embodiments, the expression of the antibody is regulated by a constitutive, an inducible or a tissue, specific promoter.

The host cells used to express the recombinant Ligand antibody can be either bacterial cells such as *Escherichia coli*, or, preferably, eukaryotic cells, especially for the expression of whole recombinant immunoglobulin molecule. In particular, mammalian cells such as Chinese hamster ovary cells (CHO), in conjunction with a vector such as the major intermediate early gene promoter element from human cytomegalovirus is an effective expression system for immunoglobulins (Foecking et al., 198, *Gene* 45:101; Cockett et al., 1990, *BioTechnology* 8:2).

A variety of host-expression vector systems can be utilized to express the immunoglobulin Ligands. Such host-expression systems represent vehicles by which the coding sequences of the antibody can be produced and subsequently purified, but also represent cells that can, when transformed or transfected with the appropriate nucleotide coding sequences, express a Ligand immunoglobulin molecule *in situ*. These include, but are not limited to, microorganisms such as bacteria (*e.g.*, *E. coli* and *B. subtilis*) transformed with recombinant bacteriophage DNA, plasmid DNA or cosmid DNA expression vectors containing immunoglobulin coding sequences; yeast (*e.g.*, *Saccharomyces Pichia*) transformed with recombinant yeast expression vectors containing immunoglobulin coding sequences; insect cell systems infected with recombinant virus expression vectors (*e.g.*, baculovirus) containing the immunoglobulin coding sequences; plant cell systems infected with recombinant virus expression vectors (*e.g.*, cauliflower mosaic virus (CaMV) and tobacco mosaic virus (TMV)) or transformed with recombinant plasmid expression vectors (*e.g.*, Ti plasmid) containing immunoglobulin coding sequences; or mammalian cell systems (*e.g.*, COS, CHO, BH, 293, 293T, 3T3 cells) harboring recombinant expression constructs containing promoters derived from the genome of mammalian cells (*e.g.*, metallothionein promoter) or from mammalian viruses (*e.g.*, the adenovirus late promoter; the vaccinia virus 7.5K promoter).

In bacterial systems, a number of expression vectors can be advantageously selected depending upon the use intended for the antibody being expressed. For example, when a large quantity of such a protein is to be produced, vectors that direct the expression of high levels of fusion protein products that are readily purified might be desirable. Such vectors include, but are not limited, to the *E. coli* expression vector pUR278 (Ruther et al., 1983, *EMBO J.* 2:1791), in which the antibody coding sequence may be ligated individually into the vector in frame with the *lac Z* coding region so that a fusion protein is produced; pIN vectors (Inouye & Inouye, 1985, *Nucleic Acids Res.* 13:3101-3109; Van Heeke & Schuster, 1989, *J. Biol. Chem.* 24:5503-5509); and the like. pGEX vectors can also be used

to express foreign polypeptides as fusion proteins with glutathione S-transferase (GST). In general, such fusion proteins are soluble and can easily be purified from lysed cells by adsorption and binding to a matrix glutathione-agarose beads followed by elution in the presence of free glutathione. The pGEX vectors are designed to include thrombin or factor
5 Xa protease cleavage sites so that the cloned target gene product can be released from the GST moiety.

In an insect system, *Autographa californica* nuclear polyhedrosis virus (AcNPV) or the analogous virus from *Drosophila Melanogaster* is used as a vector to express foreign genes. The virus grows in *Spodoptera frugiperda* cells. The antibody
10 coding sequence can be cloned individually into non-essential regions (for example the polyhedrin gene) of the virus and placed under control of an AcNPV promoter (for example the polyhedrin promoter).

In mammalian host cells, a number of viral-based expression systems can be utilized. In cases where an adenovirus is used as an expression vector, the antibody coding
15 sequence of interest can be ligated to an adenovirus transcription/translation control complex, e.g., the late promoter and tripartite leader sequence. This chimeric gene can then be inserted in the adenovirus genome by *in vitro* or *in vivo* recombination. Insertion in a non-essential region of the viral genome (e.g., region E1 or E3) results in a recombinant virus that is viable and capable of expressing the immunoglobulin molecule in infected
20 hosts. (e.g., see Logan & Shenk, 1984, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 81:355-359). Specific initiation signals can also be required for efficient translation of inserted antibody coding sequences. These signals include the ATG initiation codon and adjacent sequences. Furthermore, the initiation codon must be in phase with the reading frame of the desired coding sequence to ensure translation of the entire insert. These exogenous translational
25 control signals and initiation codons can be of a variety of origins, both natural and synthetic. The efficiency of expression can be enhanced by the inclusion of appropriate transcription enhancer elements, transcription terminators, etc. (see Bittner et al., 1987, *Methods in Enzymol.* 153:51-544).

In addition, a host cell strain can be chosen to modulate the expression of the
30 inserted sequences, or modifies and processes the gene product in the specific fashion desired. Such modifications (e.g., glycosylation) and processing (e.g., cleavage) of protein products can be important for the function of the protein. Different host cells have characteristic and specific mechanisms for the post-translational processing and modification of proteins and gene products. Appropriate cell lines or host systems can be

chosen to ensure the correct modification and processing of the foreign protein expressed. To this end, eukaryotic host cells that possess the cellular machinery for proper processing of the primary transcript, glycosylation, and phosphorylation of the gene product can be used. Such mammalian host cells include, but are not limited to, CHO, VERY, BH, HeLa,
5 COS, MDCK, 293, 293T, 3T3, WI38, BT483, Hs578T, HTB2, BT20 and T47D, CRL7030 and Hs578Bst.

For long-term, high-yield production of recombinant proteins, stable expression is preferred. For example, cell lines that stably express an antibody can be engineered. Rather than using expression vectors that contain viral origins of replication,
10 host cells can be transformed with DNA controlled by appropriate expression control elements (*e.g.*, promoter, enhancer, sequences, transcription terminators, polyadenylation sites, etc.), and a selectable marker. Following the introduction of the foreign DNA, engineered cells can be allowed to grow for 1-2 days in an enriched media, and then are switched to a selective media. The selectable marker in the recombinant plasmid confers
15 resistance to the selection and allows cells to stably integrate the plasmid into their chromosomes and grow to form foci that in turn can be cloned and expanded into cell lines. This method can advantageously be used to engineer cell lines which express the antibody. Such engineered cell lines can be particularly useful in screening and evaluation of tumor antigens that interact directly or indirectly with the antibody Ligand.

20 A number of selection systems can be used, including but not limited to the herpes simplex virus thymidine kinase (Wigler et al., 1977, *Cell* 11:223), hypoxanthine-guanine phosphoribosyltransferase (Szybalska & Szybalski, 1972, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 48:202), and adenine phosphoribosyltransferase (Lowy et al., 1980, *Cell* 22:817) genes can be employed in tk-, hgp^rt- or ap^rt- cells, respectively. Also, antimetabolite resistance
25 can be used as the basis of selection for the following genes: dhfr, which confers resistance to methotrexate (Wigler et al., 1980, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 77:357; O'Hare et al., 1981, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 78:1527); gpt, which confers resistance to mycophenolic acid (Mulligan & Berg, 1981, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 78:2072); neo, which confers resistance to the aminoglycoside G-418 (*Clinical Pharmacy* 12:488-505; Wu and Wu,
30 1991, *Biotherapy* 3:87-95; Tolstoshev, 1993, *Ann. Rev. Pharmacol. Toxicol.* 32:573-596; Mulligan, 1993, *Science* 260:926-932; and Morgan and Anderson, 1993, *Ann. Rev. Biochem.* 62:191-217; May, 1993, *TIB TECH* 11(5):155-215) and hyg^r, which confers resistance to hygromycin (Santerre et al., 1984, *Gene* 30:147). Methods commonly known in the art of recombinant DNA technology which can be used are described in Ausubel et

al. (eds., 1993, Current Protocols in Molecular Biology, John Wiley & Sons, NY; Krieger, 1990, *Gene Transfer and Expression, A Laboratory Manual*, Stockton Press, NY; and in Chapters 12 and 13, Dracopoli et al. (eds), 1994, Current Protocols in Human Genetics, John Wiley & Sons, NY.; Colberre-Garapin et al., 1981, *J. Mol. Biol.* 150:1).

5 The expression levels of an antibody can be increased by vector amplification (for a review, see Bebbington and Hentschel, *The use of vectors based on gene amplification for the expression of cloned genes in mammalian cells in DNA cloning*, Vol.3. (Academic Press, New York, 1987)). When a marker in the vector system expressing an antibody is amplifiable, an increase in the level of inhibitor present in culture
10 of host cell will increase the number of copies of the marker gene. Since the amplified region is associated with the nucleotide sequence of the antibody, production of the antibody will also increase (Crouse et al., 1983, *Mol. Cell. Biol.* 3:257).

 The host cell can be co-transfected with two expression vectors of the invention, the first vector encoding a heavy chain derived polypeptide and the second vector
15 encoding a light chain derived polypeptide. The two vectors can contain identical selectable markers that enable equal expression of heavy and light chain polypeptides. Alternatively, a single vector can be used to encode both heavy and light chain polypeptides. In such situations, the light chain should be placed before the heavy chain to avoid an excess of toxic free heavy chain (Proudfoot, 1986, *Nature* 322:52; Kohler, 1980,
20 *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 77:2197). The coding sequences for the heavy and light chains can comprise cDNA or genomic DNA.

 Once the antibody has been recombinantly expressed, it can be purified using any method known in the art for purification of an antibody, for example, by chromatography (e.g., ion exchange, affinity, particularly by affinity for the specific antigen
25 after Protein A, and sizing column chromatography), centrifugation, differential solubility, or by any other standard technique for the purification of proteins.

 In a preferred embodiment, the Ligand is an antibody.

 In a more preferred embodiment, the Ligand is a monoclonal antibody.

 In any case, the hybrid antibodies have a dual specificity, preferably with
30 one or more binding sites specific for the hapten of choice or one or more binding sites specific for a target antigen, for example, an antigen associated with a tumor, an autoimmune disease, an infectious organism, or other disease state.

5.7 SYNTHESIS OF THE COMPOUNDS OF THE INVENTION

As described in more detail below, the Compounds of the Invention are conveniently prepared using a Linker having two or more Reactive Sites for binding to the Drug and Ligand. In one aspect of the invention, a Linker has a Reactive site which has an electrophilic group that is reactive to a nucleophilic group present on a Ligand. Useful
5 nucleophilic groups on a Ligand include but are not limited to, sulfhydryl, hydroxyl and amino groups. The heteroatom of the nucleophilic group of a Ligand is reactive to an electrophilic group on a Linker and forms a covalent bond to a Linker unit. Useful electrophilic groups include, but are not limited to, maleimide and haloacetamide groups. The electrophilic group provides a convenient site for Ligand attachment.

10 In another embodiment, a Linker has a Reactive site which has a nucleophilic group that is reactive to an electrophilic group present on a Ligand. Useful electrophilic groups on a Ligand include, but are not limited to, aldehyde and ketone carbonyl groups. The heteroatom of a nucleophilic group of a Linker can react with an electrophilic group on a Ligand and form a covalent bond to a Ligand unit. Useful
15 nucleophilic groups on a Linker include, but are not limited to, hydrazide, oxime, amino, hydrazine, thiosemicarbazone, hydrazine carboxylate, and arylhydrazide. The electrophilic group on a Ligand provides a convenient site for attachment to a Linker.

Carboxylic acid functional groups and chloroformate functional groups are also useful reactive sites for a Linker because they can react with primary or secondary
20 amino groups of a Drug to form an amide linkage. Also useful as a reactive site is a carbonate functional group on a Linker which can react with an amino group or hydroxyl group of a Drug to form a carbamate linkage or carbonate linkage, respectively. Similarly, a Drug's phenol moiety can react with the Linker, existing as an alcohol, under Mitsunobu conditions.

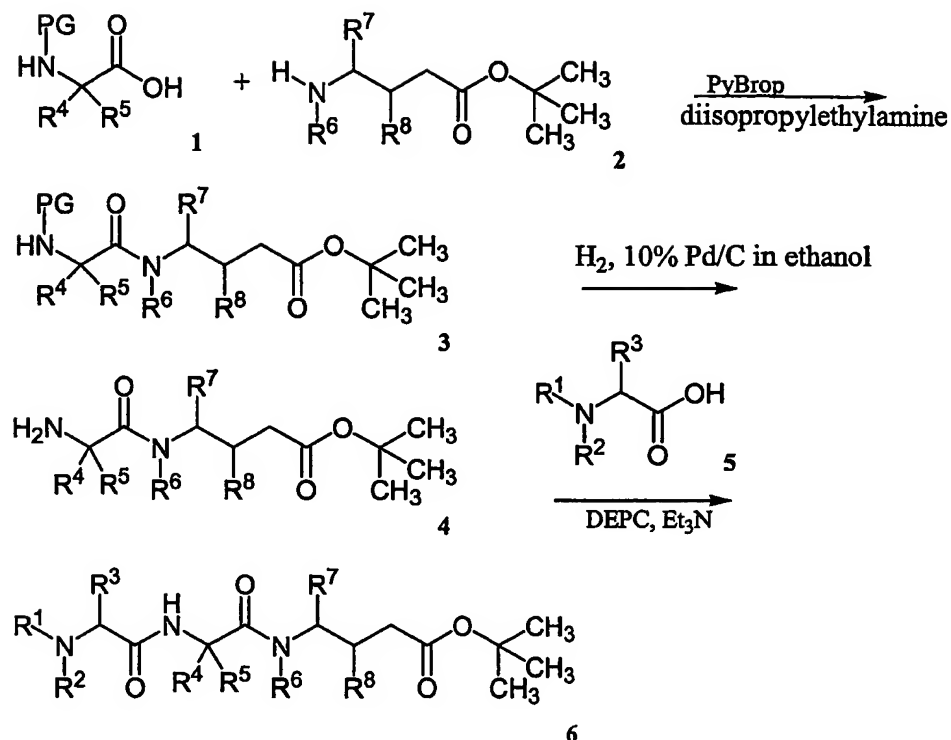
25 Typically, peptide-based Drugs can be prepared by forming a peptide bond between two or more amino acids and/or peptide fragments. Such peptide bonds can be prepared, for example, according to the liquid phase synthesis method (*see* E. Schröder and K. Lübke, "The Peptides", volume 1, pp 76-136, 1965, Academic Press) that is well known in the field of peptide chemistry.

30 In one embodiment, a Drug is prepared by combining about a stoichiometric equivalent of a dipeptide and a tripeptide, preferably in a one-pot reaction under suitable condensation conditions. This approach is illustrated in the following Schemes 5-7. Thus, the tripeptide 6 can be prepared as shown in Scheme 5, and the dipeptide 9 can be prepared

as shown in Scheme 6. The two fragments 6 and 9 can be condensed to provide a Drug 10 as shown in Scheme 7.

The synthesis of an illustrative Stretcher having an electrophilic maleimide group is illustrated in Schemes 8-9. General synthetic methods useful for the synthesis of a Linker are described in Scheme 10. Scheme 11 shows the construction of a Linker unit having a val-cit group, an electrophilic maleimide group and a PAB self-immolative Spacer group. Scheme 12 depicts the synthesis of a Linker having a phe-lys group, an electrophilic maleimide group, with and without the PAB self-immolative Spacer group. Scheme 13 presents a general outline for the synthesis of a Drug-Linker Compound, while Scheme 14 presents an alternate route for preparing a Drug-Linker Compound. Scheme 15 depicts the synthesis of a branched linker containing a BHMS group. Scheme 16 outlines the attachment of a Ligand to a Drug-Linker Compound to form a Drug-Linker-Ligand Conjugate, and Scheme 17 illustrates the synthesis of Drug-Linker-Ligand Conjugates having 2 or 4 drugs per Ligand.

Scheme 5



As illustrated in Scheme 5, a protected amino acid 1 (where PG represents an amine protecting group, R⁴ is selected from hydrogen, C₁-C₈ alkyl, C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, alkyl-aryl, alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), C₃-C₈ heterocycle, alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle) wherein R⁵ is selected from H and methyl; or R⁴ and R⁵ join, have the formula -(CR^aR^b)_n- wherein R^a and R^b are independently selected from hydrogen, C₁-C₈ alkyl and C₃-C₈ carbocycle and n is selected from 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6, and form a ring with the carbon atom to which they are attached) is coupled to *t*-butyl ester 2 (where R⁶ is selected from -H and -C₁-C₈ alkyl; and R⁷ is selected from hydrogen, C₁-C₈ alkyl, C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, alkyl-aryl, alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), C₃-C₈ heterocycle and alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle)) under suitable coupling conditions, *e.g.*, in the presence of PyBrop and diisopropylethylamine, or using DCC (see, for example, Miyazaki, K. *et. al. Chem. Pharm. Bull.* 1995, 43(10), 1706-1718).

Suitable protecting groups PG, and suitable synthetic methods to protect an amino group with a protecting group are well known in the art. See, *e.g.*, Greene, T.W. and Wuts, P.G.M., *Protective Groups in Organic Synthesis*, 2nd Edition, 1991, John Wiley & Sons. Preferred protected amino acids 1 are PG-Ile and, particularly, PG-Val, while other

suitable protected amino acids include, without limitation: PG-cyclohexylglycine, PG-cyclohexylalanine, PG-aminocyclopropane-1-carboxylic acid, PG-aminoisobutyric acid, PG-phenylalanine, PG-phenylglycine, and PG-*tert*-butylglycine. Z is a preferred protecting group. Fmoc is another preferred protecting group. A preferred *t*-butyl ester 2 is

5 dolaisoleuine *t*-butyl ester.

The dipeptide 3 can be purified, e.g., using chromatography, and subsequently deprotected, e.g., using H₂ and 10% Pd-C in ethanol when PG is benzyloxycarbonyl, or using diethylamine for removal of an Fmoc protecting group. The resulting amine 4 readily forms a peptide bond with an amino acid 5 (where R¹ is selected

10 from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl and -C₃-C₈ carbocycle; and R² is selected from -H and -C₁-C₈ alkyl; or R¹ and R² join, have the formula -(CR^aR^b)_n- wherein R^a and R^b are independently selected from -H, -C₁-C₈ alkyl and -C₃-C₈ carbocycle and n is selected from 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6, and form a ring with the nitrogen atom to which they are attached; and R³ is selected from

15 hydrogen, C₁-C₈ alkyl, C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, alkyl-aryl, alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), C₃-C₈ heterocycle and alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle)). *N,N*-Dialkyl amino acids are preferred amino acids 5, such as commercially available *N,N*-dimethyl valine. Other *N,N*-dialkyl amino acids can be prepared by reductive bis-alkylation using known procedures (see, e.g., Bowman, R.E, Stroud, H.H *J. Chem. Soc.*, 1950, 1342-1340). Fmoc-Me-L-Val and Fmoc-Me-L-glycine are two preferred amino acids 5 useful for the synthesis

20 of *N*-monoalkyl derivatives. The amine 4 and the amino acid 5 react to provide the tripeptide 6 using coupling reagent DEPC with triethylamine as the base.

Illustrative DEPC coupling methodology and the PyBrop coupling methodology shown in Scheme 5 are outlined below in General Procedure A and General Procedure B, respectively. Illustrative methodology for the deprotection of a Z-protected

25 amine via catalytic hydrogenation is outlined below in General Procedure C.

General Procedure A: Peptide synthesis using DEPC. The *N*-protected or *N,N*-disubstituted amino acid or peptide 4 (1.0 eq.) and an amine 5 (1.1 eq.) are diluted with an aprotic organic solvent, such as dichloromethane (0.1 to 0.5 M). An organic base such as triethylamine or diisopropylethylamine (1.5 eq.) is then added, followed by DEPC

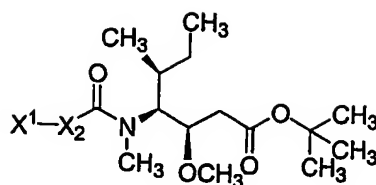
30 (1.1 eq.). The resulting solution is stirred, preferably under argon, for up to 12 hours while being monitored by HPLC or TLC. The solvent is removed *in vacuo* at room temperature, and the crude product is purified using, for example, HPLC or flash column chromatography (silica gel column). Relevant fractions are combined and concentrated *in vacuo* to afford tripeptide 6 which is dried under vacuum overnight.

General procedure B: Peptide synthesis using PyBrop. The amino acid 2 (1.0 eq.), optionally having a carboxyl protecting group, is diluted with an aprotic organic solvent such as dichloromethane or DME to provide a solution of a concentration between 0.5 and 1.0 mM, then diisopropylethylamine (1.5 eq.) is added. Fmoc-, or Z-protected amino acid 1 (1.1 eq.) is added as a solid in one portion, then PyBrop (1.2 eq.) is added to the resulting mixture. The reaction is monitored by TLC or HPLC, followed by a workup procedure similar to that described in General Procedure A.

General procedure C: Z-removal via catalytic hydrogenation. Z-protected amino acid or peptide 3 is diluted with ethanol to provide a solution of a concentration between 0.5 and 1.0 mM in a suitable vessel, such as a thick-walled round bottom flask. 10% palladium on carbon is added (5-10% w/w) and the reaction mixture is placed under a hydrogen atmosphere. Reaction progress is monitored using HPLC and is generally complete within 1-2 h. The reaction mixture is filtered through a pre-washed pad of celite and the celite is again washed with a polar organic solvent, such as methanol after filtration. The eluent solution is concentrated *in vacuo* to afford a residue which is diluted with an organic solvent, preferably toluene. The organic solvent is then removed *in vacuo* to afford the deprotected amine 4.

Table 1 lists representative examples of tripeptide intermediates (compounds 39-43) that were prepared according to Scheme 5.

Table 1



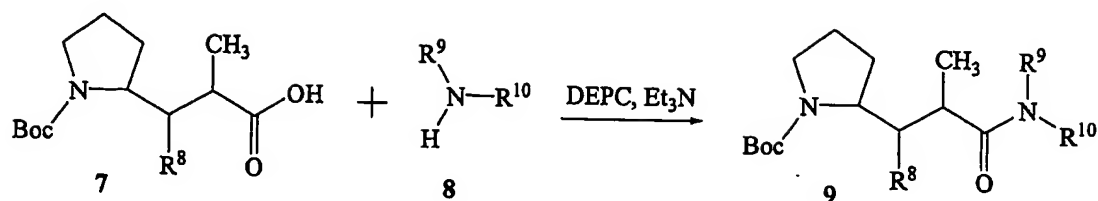
Compound	X ¹	X ²
39	Fmoc-N-Me-L-val	L-val
40	Fmoc-N-Me-L-val	L-ile
41	Fmoc-N-Me-gly	L-ile
42	dov	L-val
43	dov	L-ile

^adov=N,N-dimethyl-L-valine

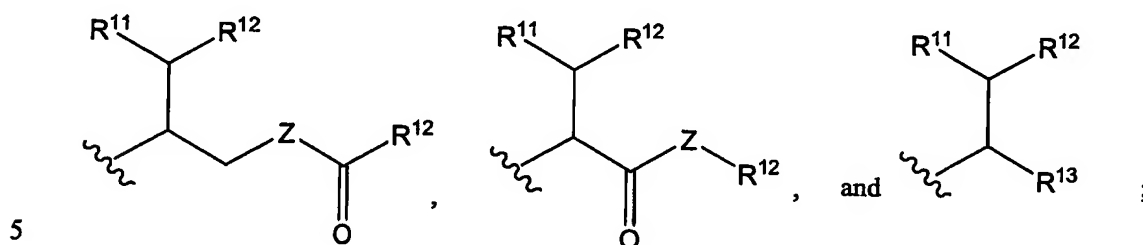
The dipeptide 9 can be readily prepared by condensation of the modified amino acid Boc-Dolaproine 7 (*see*, for example, Pettit, G.R., *et al. Synthesis*, 1996, 719-725), with (1*S*, 2*R*)-norephedrine, L- or D-phenylalaninol, or with synthetic *p*-acetylphenethylamine 8 (U.S. Patent 3,445,518 to Shavel et al.) using condensing agents well known for peptide chemistry, such as, for example, DEPC in the presence of triethylamine, as shown in Scheme 6. Compound 7 may also be condensed with commercially available compounds in this manner to form dipeptides of formula 9.

Examples of commercially available compounds useful for this purpose include, but are not limited to, norephedrine, ephedrine, and stereoisomers thereof (Sigma-Sigma-Aldrich), L- or D-phenylalaninol (Sigma-Aldrich), 2-phenylethylamine (Sigma-Aldrich), 2-(4-aminophenyl)ethylamine (Sigma-Aldrich), 1,2-ethanediamine-1,2-diphenyl (Sigma-Aldrich), or 4-(2-aminoethyl)phenol (Sigma-Aldrich), or with synthetically prepared *p*-acetylphenethylamine, aryl- and heterocyclo-amides of L-phenylalanine, 1-azidomethyl-2-phenylethylamine (prepared from phenylalaninol according to a general procedure described in *J. Chem. Research* (S), 1992, 391), and 1-(4-hydroxyphenyl)-2-phenylethylamine (European Patent Publication No. 0356035 A2) among others.

Scheme 6



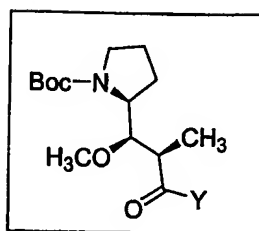
where R^8 is independently selected from -H, -OH, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle and -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl); R^9 is selected from -H and -C₁-C₈ alkyl; and R^{10} is selected from:



where Z is -O-, -S-, -NH- or -N(R¹⁴)-; R^{11} is selected from -H, -OH, -NH₂, -NHR¹⁴, -N(R¹⁴)₂, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle); or R^{11} is an oxygen atom which forms a carbonyl unit (C=O) with the carbon atom to which it is attached and a hydrogen atom on this carbon atom is replaced by one of the bonds in the (C=O) double bond; each R^{12} is independently selected from -aryl and -C₃-C₈ heterocycle; R^{13} is selected from -H, -OH, -NH₂, -NHR¹⁴, -N(R¹⁴)₂, -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -C₃-C₈ carbocycle, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-aryl, -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ carbocycle), -C₃-C₈ heterocycle and -C₁-C₈ alkyl-(C₃-C₈ heterocycle); and each R^{14} is independently -H or -C₁-C₈ alkyl.

Table 2 lists representative examples of dipeptides (Compounds 44-48) that were prepared according to Scheme 6.

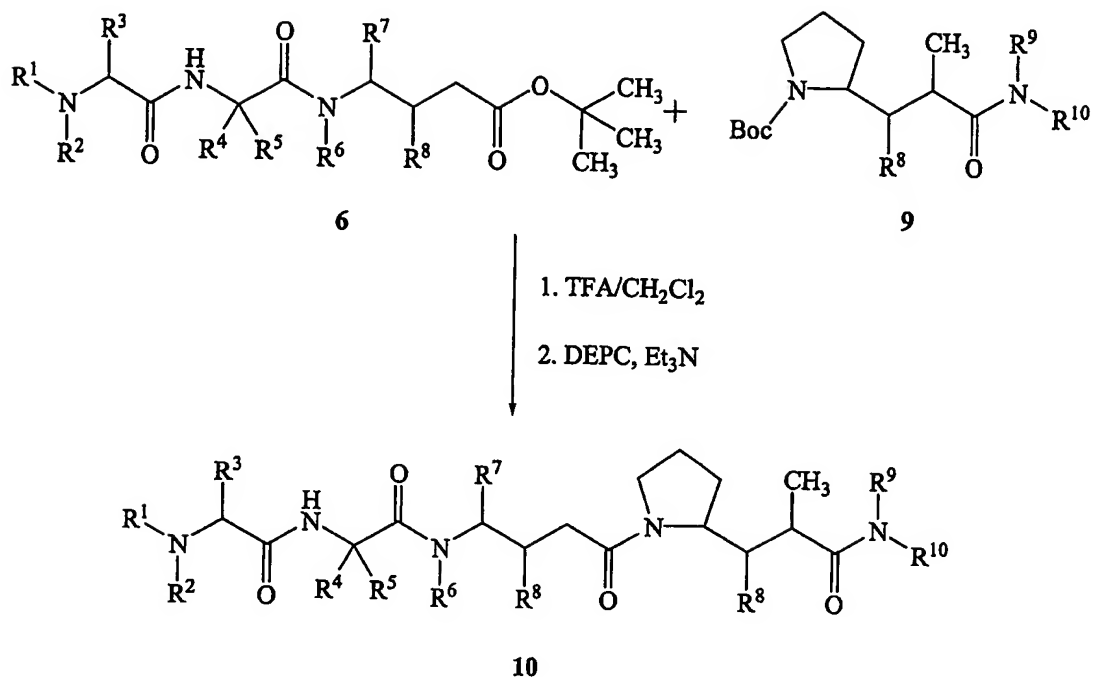
Table 2



Compound	Y	Compound	Y
44		47	
45		48	
46			

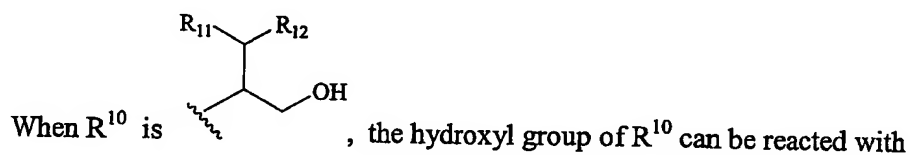
Scheme 7 illustrates a procedure useful for coupling tripeptide 6 and
 5 dipeptide 9 to form Drug 10. The coupling of 6 and 9 can be accomplished using a strong
 acid, *e.g.* TFA, to facilitate Boc and *t*-butyl ester cleavage, from dipeptide 9 and tripeptide
 6, respectively, followed by condensation conditions, *e.g.*, utilizing DEPC, or similar
 coupling reagent, in the presence of excess base (triethylamine or equivalent) to provide
 Drug 10.

Scheme 7



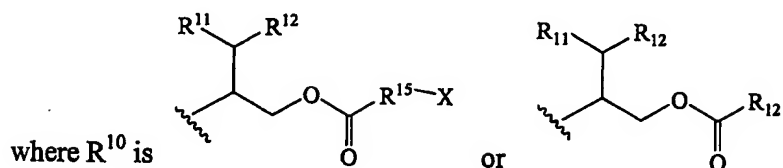
An illustrative procedure for the synthesis of Drug 10 as depicted in Scheme 7 is outlined below in General Procedure D.

- 5 The R^{10} group of a Drug of general formula 10 can be further modified, if desired, to include a functional group that allows the drug to be attached to a Linker. Examples of useful modifications to the R^{10} group of a Drug 10, include, but are not limited to the chemical transformations described below.



- 10 commercially available or synthetically derived carboxylic acids or carboxylic acid derivatives, including but not limited to, carboxylic esters, acid chlorides, anhydrides and carbonates to provide the corresponding esters according to well known methods in the art. Coupling reagents, including, but not limited to DCC/DMAP and EDCI/HOBt, can be
- 15 useful in such coupling reactions between alcohols and carboxylic acids or carboxylic acid derivatives. In a preferred embodiment carboxylic acids are substituted or unsubstituted aryl-carboxylic acids, for example, 4-aminobenzoic acid. Thus, condensation of a hydroxyl

group of the R^{10} group shown above with carboxylic acids provides drugs of the general structure 10



and where R^{11} , R^{12} , R^{14} and R^{15} are as previously described herein and X is selected from
 5 -OH, -NH₂ and -NHR¹⁴.

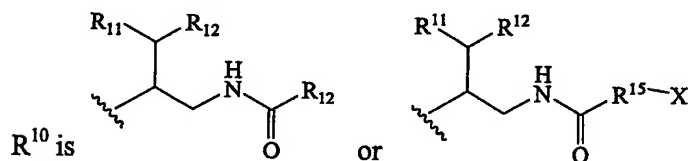
When R^{10} is

, the azido group of the drug can be reduced (for an example see J. Chem. Research (S), 1992, 391) to provide the corresponding amino derivative wherein

R^{10} is

, the amino group of which can be reacted with the carboxyl group of a carboxylic acid under general peptide coupling conditions to provide drugs of general structure 10, where

10



and where R^{11} , R^{12} , R^{14} and R^{15} are as previously described herein and X is selected from
 -OH, -NH₂ and -NHR¹⁴.

Carboxylic acids useful in the above regard include, but are not limited to,
 15 4-aminobenzoic acid, p-acetylbenzoic acid and 2-amino-4-thiazolecarboxylic acid (Tyger Scientific, Inc., Ewing, NJ).

An Fmoc-protected amino group may be present on an amine-containing R^{10} group of Drug 10 (e.g., as depicted in Table 2). The Fmoc group is removable from the protected amine using diethylamine (see General Procedure E as an illustrative example
 20 described below).

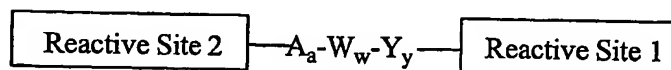
General procedure D: Drug synthesis. A mixture of dipeptide 9 (1.0 eq.) and tripeptide 6 (1 eq.) is diluted with an aprotic organic solvent, such as dichloromethane,

to form a 0.1M solution, then a strong acid, such as trifluoroacetic acid (1/2 v/v) is added and the resulting mixture is stirred under a nitrogen atmosphere for two hours at 0°C. The reaction can be monitored using TLC or, preferably, HPLC. The solvent is removed *in vacuo* and the resulting residue is azeotropically dried twice, preferably using toluene. The resulting residue is dried under high vacuum for 12 h and then diluted with an aprotic organic solvent, such as dichloromethane. An organic base such as triethylamine or diisopropylethylamine (1.5 eq.) is then added, followed by either PyBrop (1.2 eq.) or DEPC (1.2 eq.) depending on the chemical functionality on the residue. The reaction mixture is monitored by either TLC or HPLC and upon completion, the reaction is subjected to a workup procedure similar or identical to that described in General Procedure A.

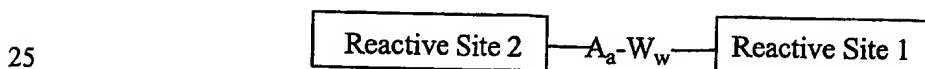
General procedure E: Fmoc-removal using diethylamine. An Fmoc-protected Drug 10 is diluted with an aprotic organic solvent such as dichloromethane and to the resulting solution is added diethylamine (½ v/v). Reaction progress is monitored by TLC or HPLC and is typically complete within 2 h. The reaction mixture is concentrated *in vacuo* and the resulting residue is azeotropically dried, preferably using toluene, then dried under high vacuum to afford Drug 10 having a deprotected amino group.

Thus, the above methods are useful for making Drugs that can be used in the present invention.

To prepare a Drug-Linker Compound of the present invention, the Drug is reacted with a reactive site on the Linker. In general, the Linker can have the structure:

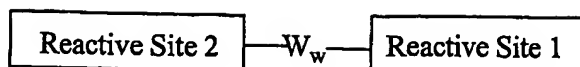


when both a Spacer unit (-Y-) and a Stretcher unit (-A-) are present. Alternately, the Linker can have the structure:



when the Spacer unit (-Y-) is absent.

The Linker can also have the structure:

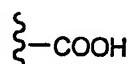


when both the Stretcher unit (-A-) and the Spacer unit (-Y-) are absent.

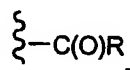
In general, a suitable Linker has an Amino Acid unit linked to an optional Stretcher Unit and an optional Spacer Unit. Reactive Site 1 is present at the terminus of the
 5 Spacer and Reactive site 2 is present at the terminus of the Stretcher. If a Spacer unit is not present, then Reactive site 1 is present at the C-terminus of the Amino Acid unit.

In one embodiment of the invention, Reactive Site No. 1 is reactive to a nitrogen atom of the Drug, and Reactive Site No. 2 is reactive to a sulfhydryl group on the Ligand. Reactive Sites 1 and 2 can be reactive to different functional groups.

10 In one aspect of the invention, Reactive Site No. 1 is

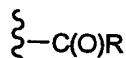


In another aspect of the invention, Reactive Site No. 1 is



wherein R is -Br, -Cl, -O-Su or -O-(4-nitrophenyl).

15 In one embodiment, Reactive Site No. 1 is



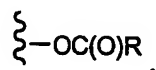
wherein R is -Br, -Cl, -O-Su or -O-(4-nitrophenyl), when a Spacer unit (-Y-) is absent.

Linkers having $\zeta - \text{C(O)R}$ at Reactive Site No. 1 where R is -Br or -Cl can be prepared from Linkers having $\zeta - \text{COOH}$ at Reactive Site No. 1 by reacting the -COOH
 20 group with PX_3 or PX_5 , where X is -Br or -Cl. Alternatively, linkers having $\zeta - \text{C(O)Cl}$ at Reactive Site No. 1 can be prepared from Linkers having $\zeta - \text{COOH}$ at Reactive Site No. 1 by reacting the -COOH group with thionyl chloride. For a general discussion of the conversion of carboxylic acids to acyl halides, see March, Advanced Organic Chemistry - Reactions, Mechanisms and Structure, 4th Ed., 1992, John Wiley and Sons, New York, p.
 25 437-438.

In another aspect of the invention, Reactive Site No. 1 is



In still another aspect of the invention, Reactive Site No. 1 is

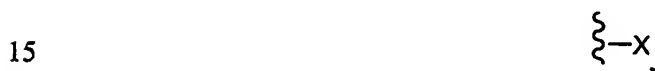


5 wherein R is -Cl, -O-CH(Cl)CCl₃ or -O-(4-nitrophenyl).

Linkers having $\xi-\text{OC(O)Cl}$ at Reactive Site No. 1 can be prepared from Linkers having $\xi-\text{OH}$ at Reactive Site No. 1 by reacting the -OH group with phosgene or triphosgene to form the corresponding chloroformate. Linkers having $\xi-\text{OC(O)R}$ at Reactive Site No. 1 where R is -O-CH(Cl)CCl₃ or -O-(4-nitrophenyl) can be prepared from

10 Linkers having $\xi-\text{OC(O)Cl}$ at Reactive Site No. 1 by reacting the -OC(O)Cl group with HO-CH(Cl)CCl₃ or HO-(4-nitrophenyl), respectively. For a discussion of this chemistry, see March, Advanced Organic Chemistry - Reactions, Mechanisms and Structure, 4th Ed., 1992, John Wiley and Sons, New York, p. 392.

In a further aspect of the invention, Reactive Site No. 1 is



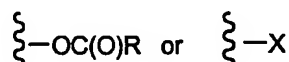
wherein X is -F, -Cl, -Br, -I, or a leaving group such as -O-mesyl, -O-tosyl or -O-triflate.

Linkers having $\xi-\text{X}$ at Reactive Site No. 1 where X is -O-mesyl, -O-tosyl and O-triflate can be prepared from Linkers having $\xi-\text{OH}$ at Reactive Site No. 1 by reacting the -OH group with various reagents, including HCl, SOCl₂, PCl₅, PCl₃ and POCl₃ (where X is Cl); HBr, PBr₃, PBr₅ and SOBr₂ (where X is Br); HI (where X is I); and CH₃CH₂NSF₃ (DAST), SF₄, SeF₄ and p-toluenesulfonyl fluoride (where X is F). For a general discussion on the conversion of alcohols to alkyl halides, see March, Advanced Organic Chemistry - Reactions, Mechanisms and Structure, 4th Ed., 1992, John Wiley and Sons, New York, p. 431-433.

20

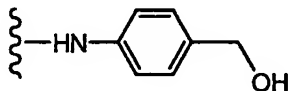
Linkers having $\zeta-X$ at Reactive Site No. 1 where X is -O-mesyl, -O-tosyl and -O-triflate, can be prepared from Linkers having $\zeta-OH$ at Reactive Site No. 1 by reacting the -OH group with various mesylating, tosylating and triflating reagents, respectively. Such reagents and methods for their use will be well known to one of ordinary skill in the art of organic synthesis. For a general discussion of mesyl, tosyl and triflates as leaving groups, see March, Advanced Organic Chemistry - Reactions, Mechanisms and Structure, 4th Ed., 1992, John Wiley and Sons, New York, p. 353-354.

In one embodiment, when a Spacer unit (-Y-) is present, Reactive Site No. 1 is

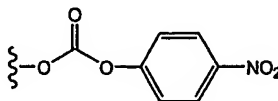


wherein R is -Cl, -O-CH(Cl)CCl₃ or -O-(4-nitrophenyl) and X is -F, -Cl, -Br, -I, or a leaving group such as -O-mesyl, -O-tosyl or -O-triflate.

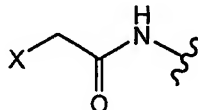
In another aspect of the invention, Reactive Site No. 1 is



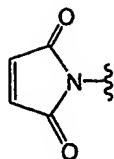
In still another aspect of the invention, Reactive Site No. 1 is a p-nitrophenyl carbonate having the formula



In one aspect of the invention, Reactive Site No. 2 is a thiol-accepting group. Suitable thiol-accepting groups include haloacetamide groups having the formula

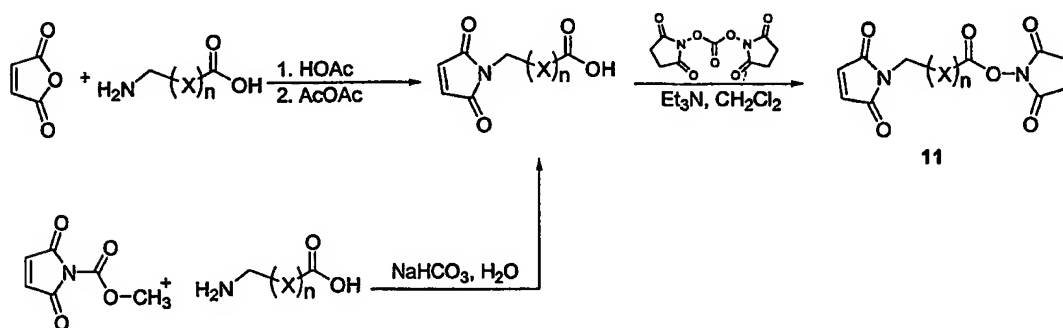


where X represents a leaving group, preferably O-mesyl, O-tosyl, -Cl, -Br, or -I; or a maleimide group having the formula



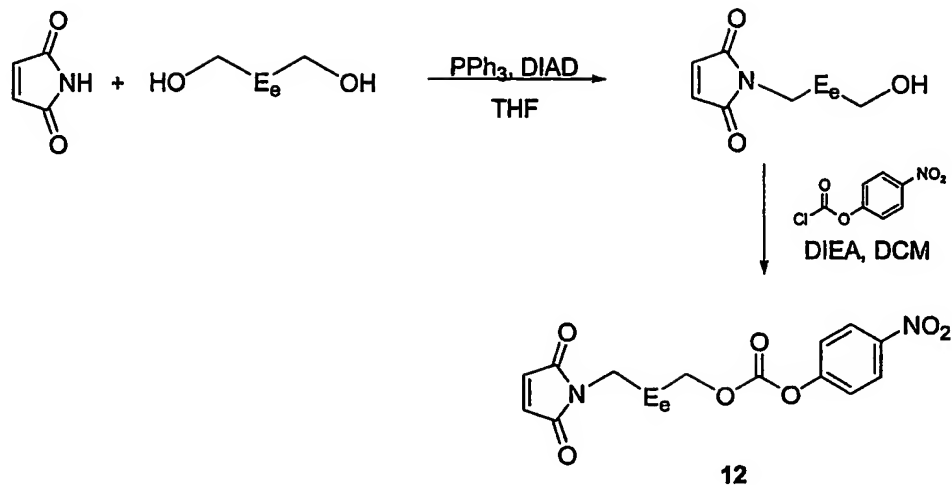
Useful Linkers can be obtained via commercial sources, such as Molecular Biosciences Inc. (Boulder, CO), or synthesized in accordance with procedures described in U.S. Patent No. 6,214,345 to Firestone et al., summarized in Schemes 8-10 below.

5

Scheme 8

where X is $-\text{CH}_2-$ or $-\text{CH}_2\text{OCH}_2-$; and n is an integer ranging either from 0-10 when X is $-\text{CH}_2-$; or 1-10 when X is $-\text{CH}_2\text{OCH}_2-$.

The method shown in Scheme 9 combines maleimide with a glycol under Mitsunobu conditions to make a polyethylene glycol maleimide Stretcher (see for example, Walker, M.A. *J. Org. Chem.* **1995**, *60*, 5352-5), followed by installation of a p-nitrophenyl carbonate Reactive Site group.

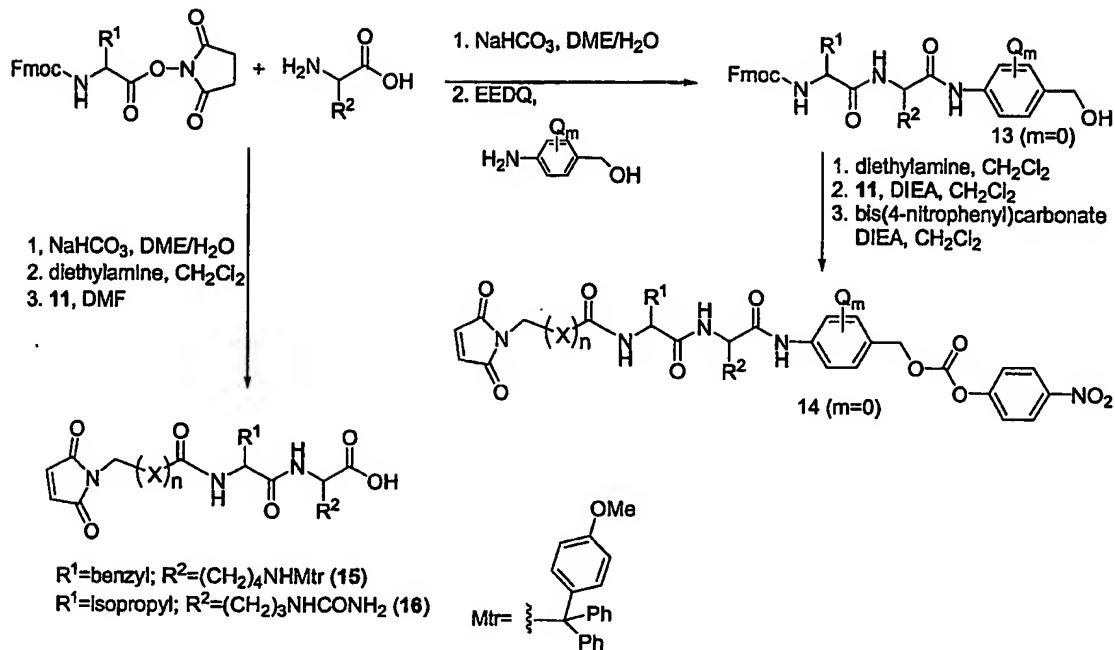
Scheme 9

where E is $-\text{CH}_2-$ or $-\text{CH}_2\text{OCH}_2-$; and e is an integer ranging from 0-8;

Alternatively, PEG-maleimide and PEG-haloacetamide stretchers can be
 5 prepared as described by Frisch, *et al.*, *Bioconjugate Chem.* 1996, 7, 180-186.

Scheme 10 illustrates a general synthesis of an illustrative Linker unit containing a maleimide Stretcher group and optionally a p-aminobenzyl ether self-immolative Spacer.

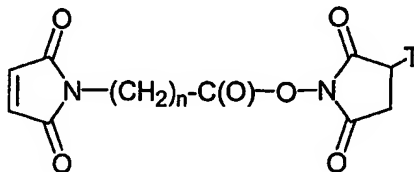
Scheme 10



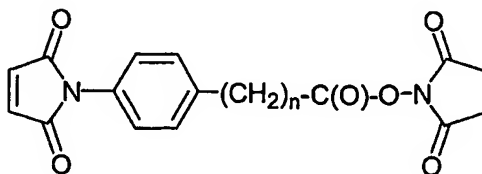
where Q is $-\text{C}_1-\text{C}_8$ alkyl, $-\text{O}-(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_8$ alkyl), -halogen, -nitro or -cyano; m is an integer ranging from 0-4; and n is an integer ranging from 0-10.

Useful Stretchers may be incorporated into a Linker using the commercially available intermediates from Molecular Biosciences (Boulder, CO) described below by utilizing known techniques of organic synthesis.

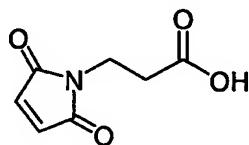
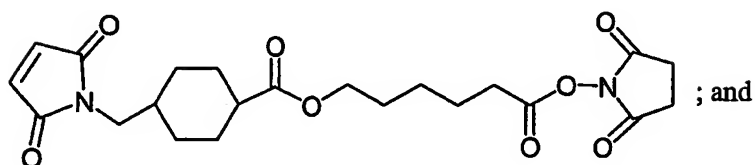
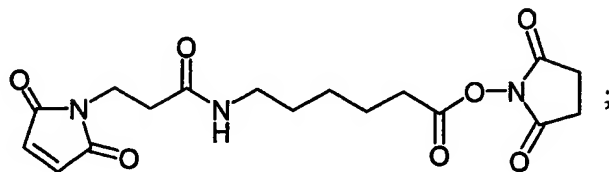
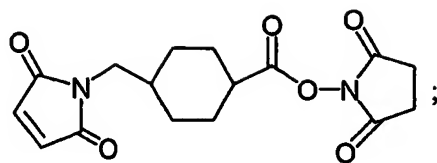
Stretchers of formula (IIIa) can be introduced into a Linker by reacting the following intermediates with the N-terminus of an Amino Acid unit as depicted in Schemes 11 and 12:



where n is an integer ranging from 1-10 and T is $-\text{H}$ or $-\text{SO}_3\text{Na}$;

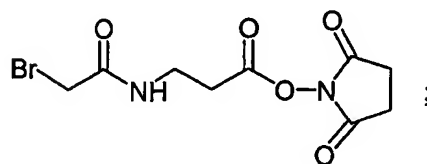
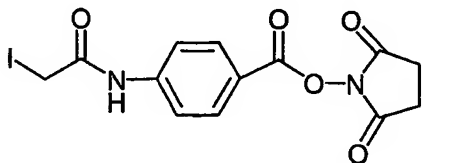
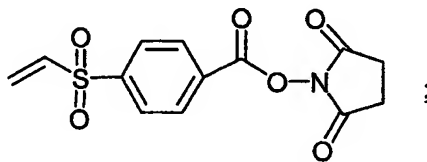


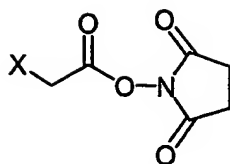
where n is an integer ranging from 0-3;



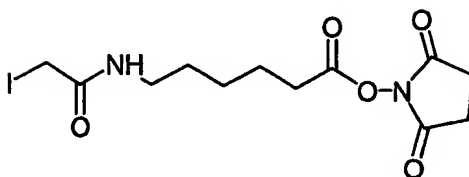
5

Stretcher units of formula (IIIb) can be introduced into a Linker by reacting the following intermediates with the N-terminus of an Amino Acid unit:

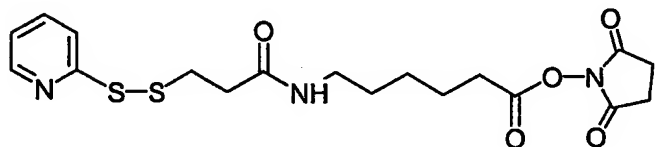
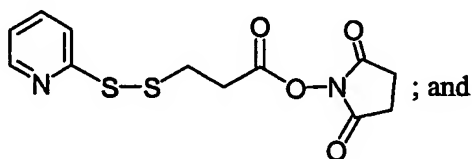




where X is -Br or -I; and

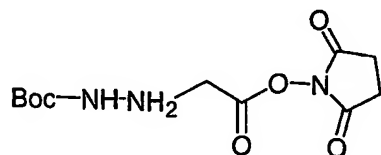
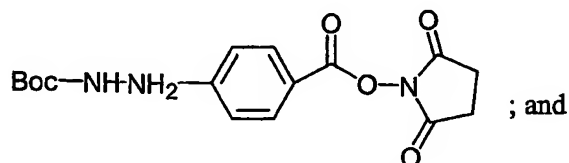


Stretcher units of formula (IV) can be introduced into a Linker by reacting the following intermediates with the N-terminus of an Amino Acid unit:



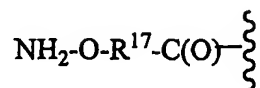
5

Stretcher units of formula (Va) can be introduced into a Linker by reacting the following intermediates with the N-terminus of an Amino Acid unit:



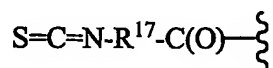
Other Stretches useful in the invention may be synthesized according to known procedures. Aminoxy Stretches of the formula shown below can be prepared by treating alkyl halides with N-Boc-hydroxylamine according to procedures described in

Jones, D.S. et al., *Tetrahedron Letters*, 2000, 41(10), 1531-1533; and Gilon, C. et al., *Tetrahedron*, 1967, 23(11), 4441-4447.



where -R^{17} - is selected from $\text{-C}_1\text{-C}_{10}$ alkylene-, $\text{-C}_3\text{-C}_8$ carbocyclo-, $\text{-O-(C}_1\text{-C}_8 \text{ alkyl)-}$,
 5 -arylene- , $\text{-C}_1\text{-C}_{10}$ alkylene-arylene-, $\text{-arylene-C}_1\text{-C}_{10}$ alkylene-, $\text{-C}_1\text{-C}_{10}$ alkylene-($\text{C}_3\text{-C}_8$
 carbocyclo)-, $\text{-(C}_3\text{-C}_8 \text{ carbocyclo)-C}_1\text{-C}_{10}$ alkylene-, $\text{-C}_3\text{-C}_8$ heterocyclo-, $\text{-C}_1\text{-C}_{10}$ alkylene-
 ($\text{C}_3\text{-C}_8$ heterocyclo)-, $\text{-(C}_3\text{-C}_8 \text{ heterocyclo)-C}_1\text{-C}_{10}$ alkylene-, $\text{-(CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{O)}_r\text{-}$, $\text{-(CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{O)}_r\text{-}$
 $\text{CH}_2\text{-}$; and r is an integer ranging from 1-10;

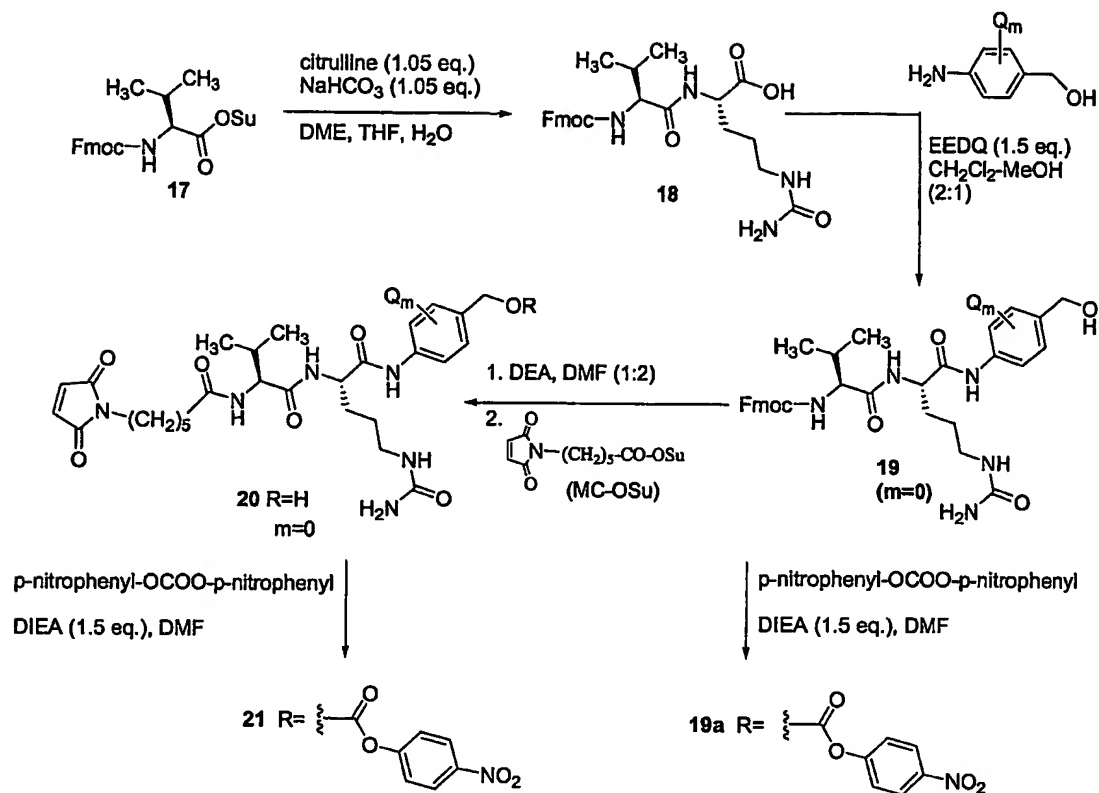
10 Isothiocyanate Stretchers of the formula shown below may be prepared from
 isothiocyanatocarboxylic acid chlorides as described in *Angew. Chem.*, 1975, 87(14), 517.



where -R^{17} - is as described herein.

Scheme 11 shows a method for obtaining of a val-cit dipeptide Linker
 having a maleimide Stretcher and optionally a p -aminobenzyl self-immolative Spacer.

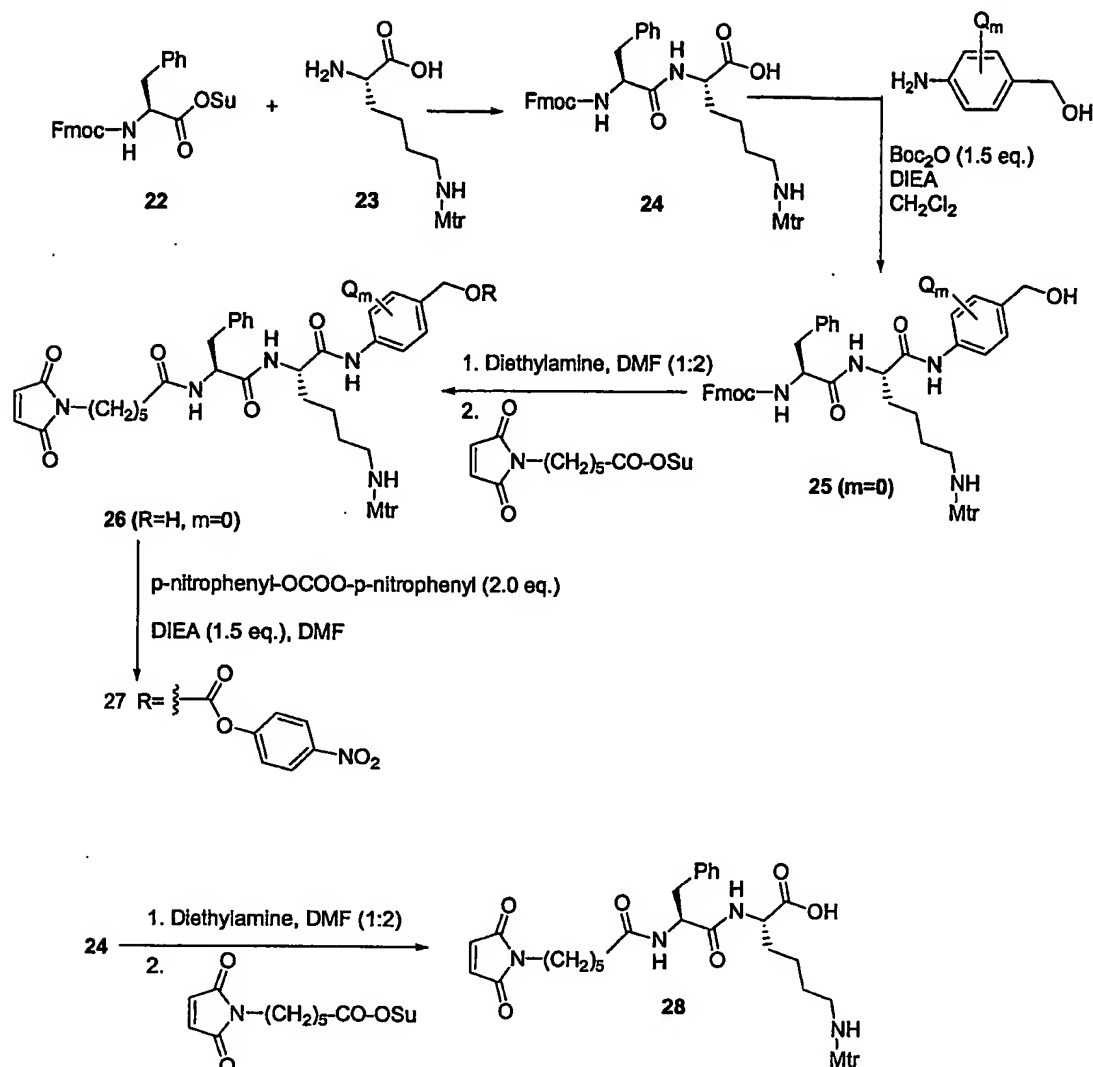
Scheme 11



where Q is -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -halogen, -nitro or -cyano; and m is an integer ranging from 0-4.

- 5 Scheme 12 illustrates the synthesis of a phe-lys(Mtr) dipeptide Linker unit having a maleimide Stretcher unit and a p-aminobenzyl self-immolative Spacer unit. Starting material 23 (lys(Mtr)) is commercially available (Bachem, Torrance, CA) or can be prepared according to Dubowchik, et al. *Tetrahedron Letters* 1997, 38, 5257-60.

Scheme 12



- 5 where Q is -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -halogen, -nitro or -cyano; and m is an integer ranging from 0-4.

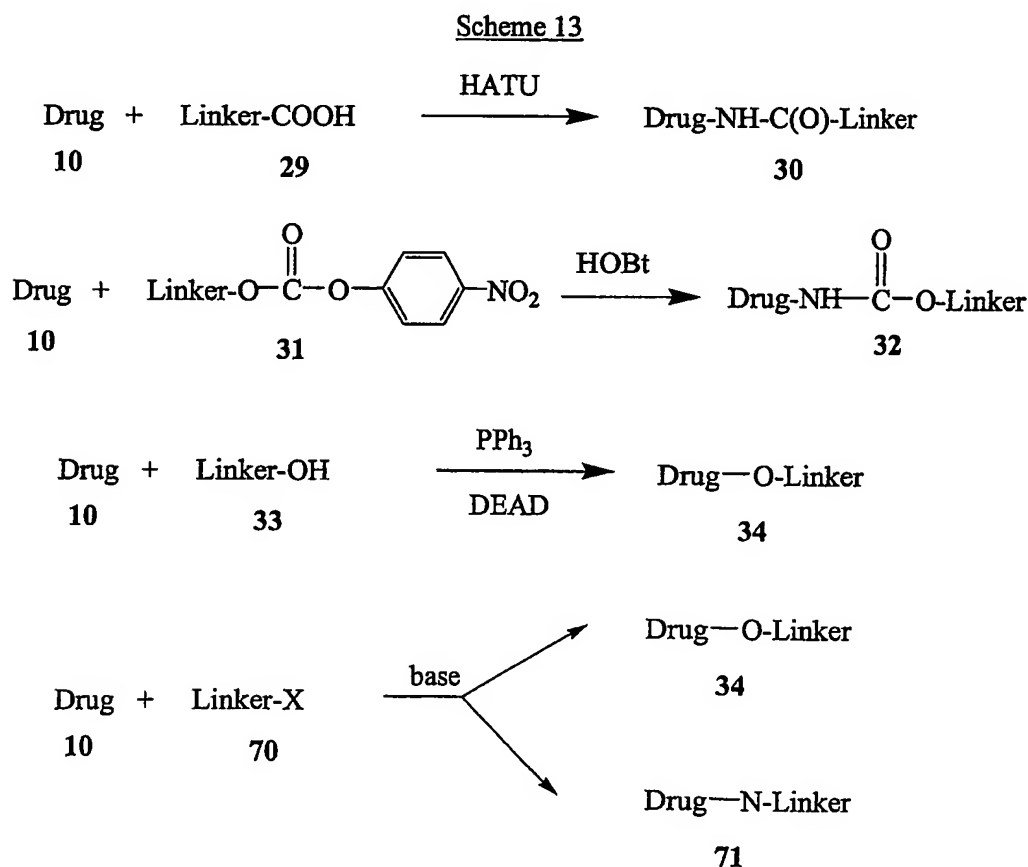
As shown in Scheme 13, a Linker can be reacted with an amino group of a Drug **10** to form a Drug-Linker Compound that contains an amide or carbamate group, linking the Drug unit to the Linker unit. When Reactive Site No. 1 is a carboxylic acid group, as in Linker **29**, the coupling reaction can be performed using HATU or PyBrop and an appropriate amine base, resulting in a Drug-Linker Compound **30**, containing a amide bond between the Drug unit and the Linker unit. When Reactive Site No. 1 is a carbonate, as in Linker **31**, the Linker can be coupled to the Drug using HOBt in a mixture of

DMF/pyridine to provide a Drug-Linker Compound **32**, containing a carbamate bond between the Drug unit and the Linker unit.

When Reactive Site No. 1 is an hydroxyl group, such as Linker **33**, the Linker can be coupled with a phenol group of a Drug using Mitsunobu chemistry to provide a Drug-Linker Compound **34** having an ether linkage between the Drug unit and the Linker unit.

Alternately, when Reactive Site No. 1 is a good leaving group, such as in Linker **70**, the Linker can be coupled with a hydroxyl group or an amine group of a Drug via a nucleophilic substitution process to provide a Drug-Linker Compound having an ether linkage (**34**) or an amine linkage (**71**) between the Drug unit and the Linker unit.

Illustrative methods useful for linking a Drug to a Ligand to form a Drug-Linker Compound are depicted in Scheme 13 and are outlined in General Procedures G-J.



General Procedure G: Amide formation using HATU. A Drug **10** (1.0 eq.) and an N-protected Linker containing a carboxylic acid Reactive site (1.0 eq.) are diluted with a suitable organic solvent, such as dichloromethane, and the resulting solution

is treated with HATU (1.5 eq.) and an organic base, preferably pyridine (1.5 eq.). The reaction mixture is allowed to stir under an inert atmosphere, preferably argon, for 6h, during which time the reaction mixture is monitored using HPLC. The reaction mixture is concentrated and the resulting residue is purified using HPLC to yield the amide 30.

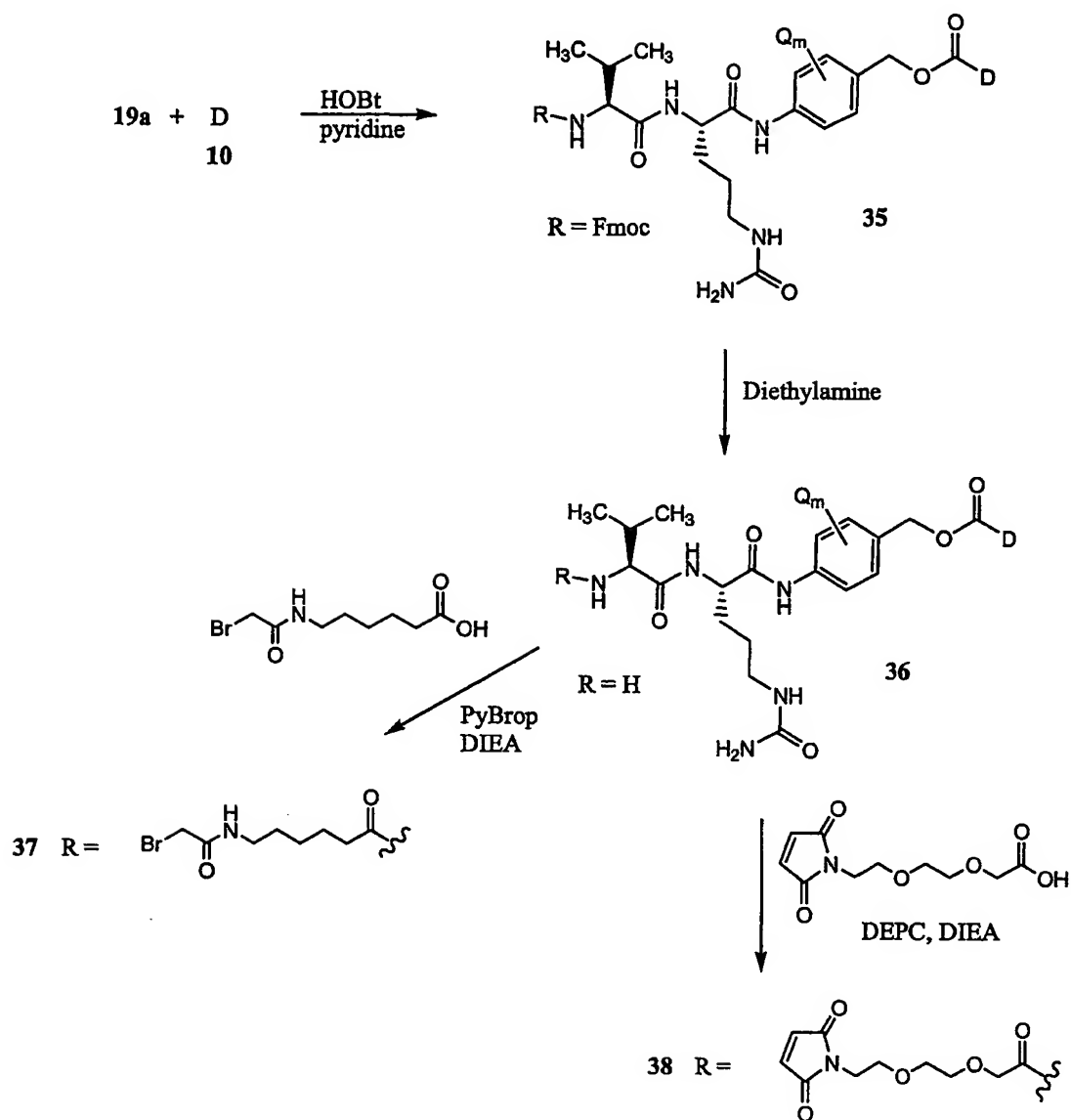
- 5 **General Procedure H: Carbamate formation using HOBt.** A mixture of a Linker 31 having a p-nitrophenyl carbonate Reactive site (1.1 eq.) and Drug 10 (1.0 eq.) are diluted with an aprotic organic solvent, such as DMF, to provide a solution having a concentration of 50-100mM, and the resulting solution is treated with HOBt (2.0 eq.) and placed under an inert atmosphere, preferably argon. The reaction mixture is allowed to stir
10 for 15 min, then an organic base, such as pyridine (1/4 v/v), is added and the reaction progress is monitored using HPLC. The Linker is typically consumed within 16 h. The reaction mixture is then concentrated *in vacuo* and the resulting residue is purified using, for example, HPLC to yield the carbamate 32.

- General Procedure I: Ether formation using Mitsunobu chemistry.** A
15 Drug of general formula 10, which contains a free hydroxyl group, is diluted with THF to make a 1.0 M solution and to this solution is added a Linker (1.0 eq) containing an hydroxy group at Reactive site No.1 (33), followed by triphenylphosphine (1.5 eq.). The reaction mixture is put under an argon atmosphere and cooled to 0 °C. DEAD (1.5 eq.) is then added dropwise via syringe and the reaction is allowed to stir at room temperature while
20 being monitored using HPLC. The reaction is typically complete in 0.5-12 h, depending on the substrates. The reaction mixture is diluted with water (in volume equal to that of the THF) and the reaction mixture is extracted into EtOAc. The EtOAc layer is washed sequentially with water and brine, then dried over MgSO₄ and concentrated. The resulting residue is purified via flash column chromatography using a suitable eluent to provide ether
25 34.

- General Procedure J: Ether/amine Formation via Nucleophilic Substitution.** A Drug of general formula 10, which contains a free hydroxyl group or a free amine group, is diluted with a polar aprotic solvent, such as THF, DMF or DMSO, to make a 1.0 M solution and to this solution is added a non-nucleophilic base (about 1.5 eq), such
30 as pyridine, diisopropylethylamine or triethylamine. The reaction mixture is allowed to stir for about 1 hour, and to the resulting solution is added an approximately 1.0M solution of Linker 70 in a polar aprotic solvent, such as THF, DMF or DMSO. The resulting reaction is stirred under an inert atmosphere while being monitored using TLC or HPLC. The reaction

is typically complete in 0.5-12 h, depending on the substrates. The reaction mixture is diluted with water (in volume equal to that of the reaction volume) and extracted into EtOAc. The EtOAc layer is washed sequentially with water, 1N HCl, water, and brine, then dried over MgSO₄ and concentrated. The resulting residue is purified via flash column chromatography using a suitable eluent to provide an ether of formula 34 or an amine of formula 71, depending on whether the drug 10 contained a free hydroxyl group or a free amine group.

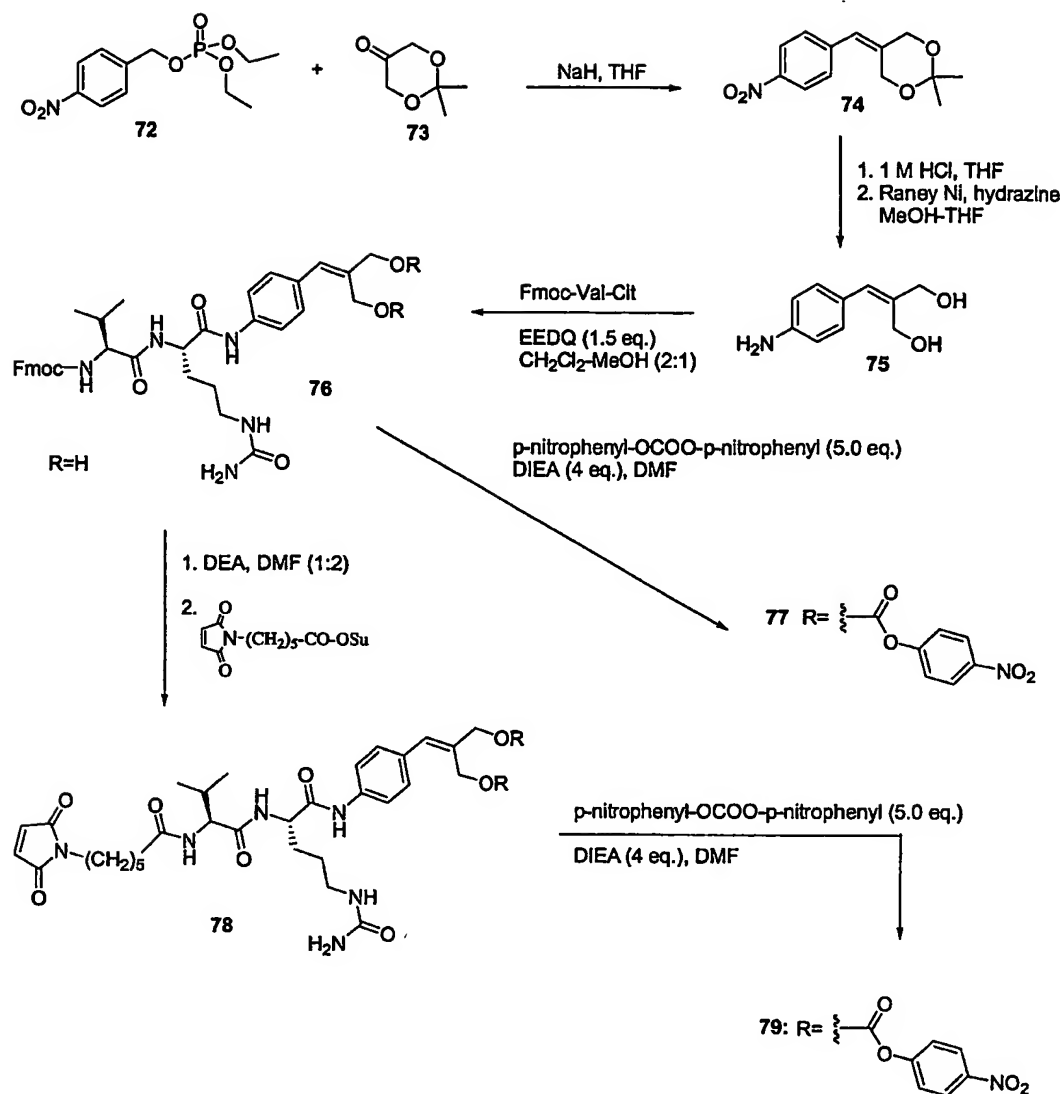
An alternate method of preparing Drug-Linker Compounds of the invention is outlined in Scheme 14. Using the method of Scheme 14, the Drug is attached to a partial Linker unit (19a, for example), which does not have a Stretcher unit attached. This provides intermediate 35, which has an Amino Acid unit having an Fmoc-protected N-terminus. The Fmoc group is then removed and the resulting amine intermediate 36 is then attached to a Stretcher unit via a coupling reaction catalyzed using PyBrop or DEPC. The construction of Drug-Linker Compounds containing either a bromoacetamide Stretcher 39 or a PEG maleimide Stretcher 38 is illustrated in Scheme 14.

Scheme 14

where Q is -C₁-C₈ alkyl, -O-(C₁-C₈ alkyl), -halogen, -nitro or -cyano; and m is an integer ranging from 0-4.

- 5 Methodology useful for the preparation of a Linker unit containing a branched spacer is shown in Scheme 15.

Scheme 15

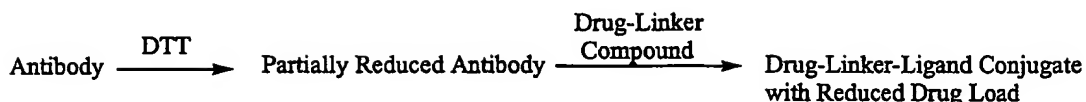


Scheme 15 illustrates the synthesis of a val-cit dipeptide linker having a maleimide Stretcher unit and a bis(4-hydroxymethyl)styrene (BHMS) unit. The synthesis of the BHMS intermediate (75) has been improved from previous literature procedures (see International Publication No, WO 9813059 to Firestone et al., and Crozet, M.P.; Archaimbault, G.; Vanelle, P.; Nougier, R. *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1985, 26, 5133-5134) and utilizes as starting materials, commercially available diethyl (4-nitrobenzyl)phosphonate (72) and commercially available 2,2-dimethyl-1,3-dioxan-5-one (73). Linkers 77 and 79 can be prepared from intermediate 75 using the methodology described in Scheme 11.

10

Scheme 16 illustrates methodology useful for making Drug-Linker-Ligand conjugates of the invention having about 2 to about 4 drugs per antibody.

Scheme 16



General Procedure K: Preparation of Conjugates having about 2 to about 4 drugs per antibody.

5

Partial Reduction of the Antibody

In general, to prepare conjugates having 2 drugs per antibody, the relevant antibody is reduced using a reducing agent such as dithiothreitol (DTT) or tricarboxyl ethylphosphine (TCEP) (about 1.8 equivalents) in PBS with 1mM DTPA, adjusted to pH 8 with 50mM borate. The solution is incubated at 37°C for 1 hour, purified using a 50ml G25 desalting column equilibrated in PBS/1mM DTPA at 4°C. The thiol concentration can be determined according to General Procedure M, the protein concentration can be determined by dividing the A280 value by 1.58 extinction coefficient (mg/ml), and the ratio of thiol to antibody can be determined according to General Procedure N.

15

Conjugates having 4 drugs per antibody can be made using the same methodology, using about 4.2 equivalents of a suitable reducing agent to partially reduce the antibody.

Conjugation of Drug-Linker to Partially Reduced Antibody

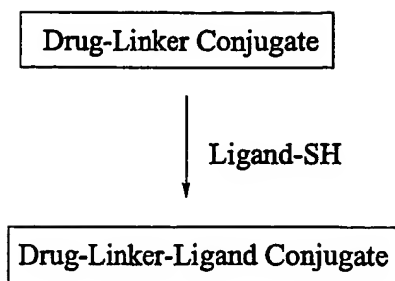
20

The partially reduced antibody samples can be conjugated to a corresponding Drug-Linker compound using about 2.4 and about 4.6 molar equivalents of Drug-Linker compound per antibody to prepare the 2 and 4 drug per antibody conjugates, respectively. The conjugation reactions are incubated on ice for 1 hour, quenched with about 20-fold excess of cysteine to drug, and purified by elution over a G25 desalting column at about 4°C. The resulting Drug-Linker-Ligand conjugates are concentrated to about 3 mg/ml, sterile filtered, aliquoted and stored frozen.

25

Scheme 17 depicts the construction of a Drug-Linker-Ligand Conjugate by reacting the sulfhydryl group of a Ligand with a thiol-acceptor group on the Linker group of a Drug-Linker Compound.

30

Scheme 17

Illustrative methods for attaching a Ligand antibody to a Drug-Linker Compound are outlined below in General Procedures L-R.

- 5 **General Procedure L: Attachment of an Antibody Ligand to a Drug-Linker Compound.** All reaction steps are typically carried out at 4 °C. Where the Ligand is a monoclonal antibody having one or more disulfide bonds, solutions of the monoclonal antibody (5-20 mg/mL) in phosphate buffered saline, pH 7.2, are reduced with dithiothreitol (10 mM final) at 37 °C for 30 minutes (See General Procedure M) and separation of low
10 molecular weight agents is achieved by size exclusion chromatography on Sephadex G25 columns in PBS containing 1 mM diethylenetriaminepentaacetic acid.

- The sulfhydryl content in the Ligand can be determined using 5,5'-dithiobis(2-nitrobenzoic acid) (DTNB) as described in General Procedure M (see Riddles, P. W., Blakeley, R. L., and Zerner, B. (1979) Anal. Biochem. 94, 75-81). To a PBS
15 solution of Ligand reduced according to General Procedure L, a Drug-Linker Compound in MeCN is added so that the solution is 20% MeCN/PBS (vol/vol). The amount of Drug-Linker Compound is approximately 10% more than the total number of sulfhydryl groups on a Ligand. After 60 min at 4 °C, cysteine is added (20-fold excess over concentration of the Drug-Linker Compound), the solution is concentrated by ultrafiltration, and any low
20 molecular weight agents are removed by gel filtration. The number of Drug-Linker Compounds per antibody is determined by uv/vis spectroscopy using formulas derived from the relative extinction coefficients of the Ligands and Drug-Linker Compounds as described in General Procedure O. The amount of quenched Drug-Linker Compound is then determined as described in General Procedure P using reverse-phase HPLC. The
25 aggregation state of the Ligand Antibodies of the Drug-Linker-Ligand Conjugates can be determined using size-exclusion HPLC as described in General Procedure R. The Drug-Linker-Ligand Conjugates can be used without further purification.

General Procedure M: Reduction of the interchain disulfide bonds of an Antibody. To a solution of 24 mg of an antibody (2.4 mL of 10 mg/mL solution) in suitable buffer is added 300 μ L of Borate buffer (500 mM sodium borate/500 mM sodium chloride, pH 8.0) followed by 300 μ L of Dithiothreitol (DTT, 100 mM solution in H₂O).

- 5 The reaction mixture is stirred using a vortex instrument and incubated at 37 °C for 30 min. Three PD10 columns are equilibrated with PBS containing 1 mM DTPA (in PBS) and the reduced antibody is eluted through the three PD10 columns and collected in 4.2 mL PBS/DTPA solution (1.4 mL per column). The reduced antibody is then stored on ice. The number of thiols per antibody and the antibody concentration are determined according to
- 10 General Procedure N.

General Procedure N: Determination of number of thiols per Ligand.

A reference sample of a Ligand or a sample of an antibody reduced according to General Procedure L is diluted to about 1:40 (w/w) in PBS, and the uv absorbance of the solution is measured at 280 nm using standard uv spectroscopic methods.

- 15 Preferably, the ratio of Ligand:PBS in the solution is such that the uv absorbance ranges from about 0.13 - 0.2 AU (absorbance units).

- A test sample of a Ligand or a test sample of an antibody reduced according to General Procedure L is diluted to about 1:20 with a PBS solution containing about 15 μ L DTNB stock solution/mL PBS. A blank sample containing DTNB at the same
- 20 concentration as the test solution (i.e., 15 μ L DTNB stock/mL PBS) is then prepared. The spectrophotometer is referenced at zero nm with the blank sample, then the absorbance of the test sample is measured at 412 nm.

The molar concentration of the antibody is then determined using the formula: $[\text{Ligand}] = (\text{OD}_{280}/2.24\text{e}^5) \times \text{dilution factor}$.

- 25 The molar concentration of thiol is then determined using the formula: $[-\text{SH}] = (\text{OD}_{412}/1.415\text{e}^4) \times \text{dilution factor}$.

- The $[\text{SH}]/[\text{Ligand}]$ ratio is then calculated. A reduced monoclonal antibody Ligand can have from 1 to about 20 sulfhydryl groups, but typically has between about 6 to about 9 sulfhydryl groups. In a preferred embodiment, the $[\text{SH}]/[\text{Ligand}]$ ratio range is
- 30 from about 7 to about 9.

It is understood that the $[\text{SH}]/[\text{Ligand}]$ ratio is the average number of -A_a-W_w-Y_y-D units per Ligand unit.

General Procedure O: Determination of the number of Drug molecules per Antibody in a Drug-Linker-Antibody Conjugate. The Drug:Antibody ratio for a Drug-Linker-Antibody Conjugate is determined by measuring the number of Dithiothreitol (DTT) reducible thiols that remain after conjugation, using the following method: A 200
5 mL sample of a Drug-Linker-Antibody conjugate is treated with DTT (100 mM solution in water) to bring the concentration to 10 mM DTT. The resulting solution is incubated at 37 °C for 30 min, then eluted through a PD10 column using PBS/DTPA as the eluent. The OD₂₈₀ of the reduced conjugate is then measured and the molar concentration is measured according to General Procedure Q.

10 The molar concentration of thiol is determined using DTNB as described in General Procedure M. The ratio of thiol concentration to antibody concentration is then calculated and the Drug:Ligand ratio is the difference between the Thiol:Antibody ratio (determined using General Procedure N) and the Drug:Antibody ratio as determined in the previous paragraph.

15 **General Procedure P: Determination of the amount of quenched Drug-Linker compound in a Drug-Linker-Antibody Conjugate.** This assay provides a quantitative determination of the Drug-Linker in the Drug-Linker-Antibody conjugate that is not covalently bound to Antibody. Assuming that all maleimide groups of Drug-Linker in the reaction mixture have been quenched with Cysteine, the unbound drug is the Cysteine
20 quenched adduct of the Drug-Linker Compound, i.e. Drug-Linker-Cys. The proteinaceous Drug-Linker-Antibody Conjugate is denatured, precipitated, and isolated by centrifugation under conditions in which the Drug-Linker-Cys is soluble. The unbound Drug-Linker-Cys is detected quantitatively by HPLC, and the resulting chromatogram is compared to a standard curve to determine the concentration of unbound Drug-Linker-Cys in the sample.
25 This concentration is divided by the total concentration of Drug in the conjugate as determined using General Procedure O and General Procedure Q.

Specifically, 100 mL of a 100 µM Drug-Linker-Cys adduct "working solution" is prepared by adding 1 µL of 100 mM Cysteine in PBS/DTPA and an appropriate volume of stock solution of a Drug-Linker compound to 98 µL of 50 % methanol/PBS.
30 The "appropriate volume" in liters is calculated using the formula: $V = 1e-8/[Drug-Linker]$. Six tubes are then labelled as follows: "0", "0.5", "1", "2", "3", and "5", and appropriate amounts of working solution are placed in each tube and diluted with 50 % methanol/PBS

to give a total volume of 100 mL in each tube. The labels indicate the μM concentration of the standards.

A 50 μL solution of a Drug-Linker-Antibody Conjugate and a 50 μL solution of the Cysteine quenched reaction mixture ("qrm") are collected in separate test tubes and are each diluted with 50 μL of methanol that has been cooled to -20°C . The samples are then cooled to -20°C over 10 min.

The samples are then centrifuged at 13000 rpm in a desktop centrifuge for 10 min. The supernatants are transferred to HPLC vials, and 90 μL aliquots of each sample are separately analyzed using HPLC (C12 RP column (Phenomenex); monitored at the absorbance maximum of the Drug-Linker Compound using a flow rate of 1.0 mL/min. The eluent used is a linear gradient of MeCN ranging from 10 to 90 % in aqueous 5 mM ammonium phosphate, pH 7.4, over 10 min; then 90 % MeCN over 5 min.; then returning to initial conditions). The Drug-Linker-Cys adduct typically elutes between about 7 and about 10 minutes.

A standard curve is then prepared by plotting the Peak Area of the standards vs. their concentration (in μM). Linear regression analysis is performed to determine the equation and correlation coefficient of the standard curve. R^2 values are typically >0.99 . From the regression equation is determined the concentration of the Drug-Linker-Cys adduct in the HPLC sample and in the conjugate, using the formulas:

$$\begin{aligned} [\text{Drug-Linker-Cys}]_{(\text{HPLC sp})} &= (\text{Peak area} - \text{intercept})/\text{slope}; \\ [\text{Drug-Linker-Cys}]_{(\text{conjugate})} &= 2 \times [\text{Drug-Linker-Cys}]_{(\text{HPLC sp})} \end{aligned}$$

The percent of Drug-Linker-Cys adduct present can be determined using the formula:

$$\% \text{ Drug-Linker-Cys} = 100 \times [\text{Drug-Linker-Cys}]_{(\text{conjugate})} / [\text{drug}]$$

where $[\text{drug}] = [\text{Conjugate}] \times \text{drug/Ab}$, $[\text{Conjugate}]$ is determined using the conjugate concentration assay, and the Drug: Antibody ratio is determined using the Drug: Antibody ratio assay.

General Procedure Q: Determination of Drug-Linker-Antibody Conjugate concentration for drug linkers with minimal uv absorbance at 280 nm.

The concentration of Drug-Linker-Antibody conjugate can be determined in the same

manner for the concentration of the parent antibody, by measuring the absorbance at 280 nm of an appropriate dilution, using the following formula:

$$[\text{Conjugate}] \text{ (mg/mL)} = (\text{OD}_{280} \times \text{dilution factor}/1.4) \times 0.9$$

Determination of Drug-Linker-Antibody Conjugate concentration for drug linkers with substantial uv absorbance at 280 nm (e.g. Compounds 68 and 69). Because the absorbances of Compounds 68 and 69 overlap with the absorbances of an antibody, spectrophotometric determination of the conjugate concentration is most useful when the measurement is performed using the absorbances at both 270 nm and 280 nm. Using this data, the molar concentration of Drug-Linker-Ligand conjugate is given by the following formula:

$$[\text{Conjugate}] = (\text{OD}_{280} \times 1.23 \times 10^{-5} - \text{OD}_{270} \times 9.35 \times 10^{-6}) \times \text{dilution factor}$$

where the values 1.23×10^{-5} and 9.35×10^{-6} are calculated from the molar extinction coefficients of the drug and the antibody, which are estimated as:

$$\begin{array}{ll} \epsilon_{270} \text{ Drug} = 2.06 \times 10^4 & \epsilon_{270} \text{ Antibody} = 1.87 \times 10^5 \\ \epsilon_{280} \text{ Drug} = 1.57 \times 10^4 & \epsilon_{280} \text{ Antibody} = 2.24 \times 10^5 \end{array}$$

General Procedure R: Determination of the aggregation state of The Antibody in a Drug-Linker-Antibody Conjugate. A suitable quantity (~10 µg) of a Drug-Linker-Antibody Conjugate is eluted through a size-exclusion chromatography (SEC) column (Tosoh Biosep SW3000 4.6 mm x 30 cm eluted at 0.35 mL/min. with PBS) under standard conditions. Chromatograms are obtained at 220 nm and 280 nm and the $\text{OD}_{280}/\text{OD}_{220}$ ratio is calculated. The corresponding aggregate typically has a retention time of between about 5.5 and about 7 min, and has about the same $\text{OD}_{280}/\text{OD}_{220}$ ratio as the monomeric Drug-Linker-Antibody Conjugate.

5.8 COMPOSITIONS

In other aspects, the present invention provides a composition comprising an effective amount of a Compound of the Invention and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier or vehicle. For convenience, the Drug units, Drug-Linker Compounds and Drug-Linker-

Ligand Conjugates of the invention can simply be referred to as compounds of the invention. The compositions are suitable for veterinary or human administration.

The compositions of the present invention can be in any form that allows for the composition to be administered to an animal. For example, the composition can be in the form of a solid, liquid or gas (aerosol). Typical routes of administration include, without limitation, oral, topical, parenteral, sublingual, rectal, vaginal, ocular, and intranasal. Parenteral administration includes subcutaneous injections, intravenous, intramuscular, intrasternal injection or infusion techniques. Preferably, the compositions are administered parenterally. Pharmaceutical compositions of the invention can be formulated so as to allow a Compound of the Invention to be bioavailable upon administration of the composition to an animal. Compositions can take the form of one or more dosage units, where for example, a tablet can be a single dosage unit, and a container of a Compound of the Invention in aerosol form can hold a plurality of dosage units.

Materials used in preparing the pharmaceutical compositions can be non-toxic in the amounts used. It will be evident to those of ordinary skill in the art that the optimal dosage of the active ingredient(s) in the pharmaceutical composition will depend on a variety of factors. Relevant factors include, without limitation, the type of animal (*e.g.*, human), the particular form of the Compound of the Invention, the manner of administration, and the composition employed.

The pharmaceutically acceptable carrier or vehicle can be particulate, so that the compositions are, for example, in tablet or powder form. The carrier(s) can be liquid, with the compositions being, for example, an oral syrup or injectable liquid. In addition, the carrier(s) can be gaseous, so as to provide an aerosol composition useful in, *e.g.*, inhalatory administration.

When intended for oral administration, the composition is preferably in solid or liquid form, where semi-solid, semi-liquid, suspension and gel forms are included within the forms considered herein as either solid or liquid.

As a solid composition for oral administration, the composition can be formulated into a powder, granule, compressed tablet, pill, capsule, chewing gum, wafer or the like form. Such a solid composition typically contains one or more inert diluents. In addition, one or more of the following can be present: binders such as carboxymethylcellulose, ethyl cellulose, microcrystalline cellulose, or gelatin; excipients such as starch, lactose or dextrins, disintegrating agents such as alginic acid, sodium

alginate, Primogel, corn starch and the like; lubricants such as magnesium stearate or Sterotex; glidants such as colloidal silicon dioxide; sweetening agents such as sucrose or saccharin, a flavoring agent such as peppermint, methyl salicylate or orange flavoring, and a coloring agent.

5 When the composition is in the form of a capsule, *e.g.*, a gelatin capsule, it can contain, in addition to materials of the above type, a liquid carrier such as polyethylene glycol, cyclodextrin or a fatty oil.

 The composition can be in the form of a liquid, *e.g.*, an elixir, syrup, solution, emulsion or suspension. The liquid can be useful for oral administration or for
10 delivery by injection. When intended for oral administration, a composition can comprise one or more of a sweetening agent, preservatives, dye/colorant and flavor enhancer. In a composition for administration by injection, one or more of a surfactant, preservative, wetting agent, dispersing agent, suspending agent, buffer, stabilizer and isotonic agent can also be included.

15 The liquid compositions of the invention, whether they are solutions, suspensions or other like form, can also include one or more of the following: sterile diluents such as water for injection, saline solution, preferably physiological saline, Ringer's solution, isotonic sodium chloride, fixed oils such as synthetic mono or diglycerides which can serve as the solvent or suspending medium, polyethylene glycols,
20 glycerin, cyclodextrin, propylene glycol or other solvents; antibacterial agents such as benzyl alcohol or methyl paraben; antioxidants such as ascorbic acid or sodium bisulfite; chelating agents such as ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid; buffers such as acetates, citrates or phosphates and agents for the adjustment of tonicity such as sodium chloride or dextrose. A parenteral composition can be enclosed in ampoule, a disposable syringe or a multiple-dose
25 vial made of glass, plastic or other material. Physiological saline is a preferred adjuvant. An injectable composition is preferably sterile.

 The amount of the Compound of the Invention that is effective in the treatment of a particular disorder or condition will depend on the nature of the disorder or condition, and can be determined by standard clinical techniques. In addition, *in vitro* or *in*
30 *vivo* assays can optionally be employed to help identify optimal dosage ranges. The precise dose to be employed in the compositions will also depend on the route of administration, and the seriousness of the disease or disorder, and should be decided according to the judgment of the practitioner and each patient's circumstances.

The compositions comprise an effective amount of a Compound of the Invention such that a suitable dosage will be obtained. Typically, this amount is at least about 0.01% of a Compound of the Invention by weight of the composition. When intended for oral administration, this amount can be varied to range from about 0.1% to about 80% by weight of the composition. Preferred oral compositions can comprise from about 4% to about 50% of the Compound of the Invention by weight of the composition. Preferred compositions of the present invention are prepared so that a parenteral dosage unit contains from about 0.01% to about 2% by weight of the Compound of the Invention.

For intravenous administration, the composition can comprise from about 1 to about 250 mg of a Compound of the Invention per kg of the animal's body weight. Preferably, the amount administered will be in the range from about 4 to about 25 mg/kg of body weight of the Compound of the Invention.

Generally, the dosage of Compound of the Invention administered to an animal is typically about 0.1 mg/kg to about 250 mg/kg of the animal's body weight. Preferably, the dosage administered to an animal is between about 0.1 mg/kg and about 20 mg/kg of the animal's body weight, more preferably about 1 mg/kg to about 10 mg/kg of the animal's body weight.

The Compounds of the Invention or compositions can be administered by any convenient route, for example by infusion or bolus injection, by absorption through epithelial or mucocutaneous linings (*e.g.*, oral mucosa, rectal and intestinal mucosa, etc.). Administration can be systemic or local. Various delivery systems are known, *e.g.*, encapsulation in liposomes, microparticles, microcapsules, capsules, etc., and can be used to administer a Compound of the Invention or composition. In certain embodiments, more than one Compound of the Invention or composition is administered to an animal. Methods of administration include, but are not limited to, oral administration and parenteral administration; parenteral administration including, but not limited to, intradermal, intramuscular, intraperitoneal, intravenous, subcutaneous; intranasal, epidural, sublingual, intranasal, intracerebral, intraventricular, intrathecal, intravaginal, transdermal, rectally, by inhalation, or topically to the ears, nose, eyes, or skin. The preferred mode of administration is left to the discretion of the practitioner, and will depend in-part upon the site of the medical condition (such as the site of cancer or autoimmune disease).

In a preferred embodiment, the present Compounds of the Invention or compositions are administered parenterally.

In a more preferred embodiment, the present Compounds of the Invention or compositions are administered intravenously.

In specific embodiments, it can be desirable to administer one or more Compounds of the Invention or compositions locally to the area in need of treatment. This can be achieved, for example, and not by way of limitation, by local infusion during surgery; topical application, *e.g.*, in conjunction with a wound dressing after surgery; by injection; by means of a catheter; by means of a suppository; or by means of an implant, the implant being of a porous, non-porous, or gelatinous material, including membranes, such as sialastic membranes, or fibers. In one embodiment, administration can be by direct injection at the site (or former site) of a cancer, tumor or neoplastic or pre-neoplastic tissue. In another embodiment, administration can be by direct injection at the site (or former site) of a manifestation of an autoimmune disease.

In certain embodiments, it can be desirable to introduce one or more Compounds of the Invention or compositions into the central nervous system by any suitable route, including intraventricular and intrathecal injection. Intraventricular injection can be facilitated by an intraventricular catheter, for example, attached to a reservoir, such as an Ommaya reservoir.

Pulmonary administration can also be employed, *e.g.*, by use of an inhaler or nebulizer, and formulation with an aerosolizing agent, or via perfusion in a fluorocarbon or synthetic pulmonary surfactant. In certain embodiments, the Compounds of the Invention or compositions can be formulated as a suppository, with traditional binders and carriers such as triglycerides.

In another embodiment, the Compounds of the invention can be delivered in a vesicle, in particular a liposome (*see* Langer, *Science* 249:1527-1533 (1990); Treat et al., in *Liposomes in the Therapy of Infectious Disease and Cancer*, Lopez-Berestein and Fidler (eds.), Liss, New York, pp. 353-365 (1989); Lopez-Berestein, *ibid.*, pp. 317-327; *see* generally *ibid.*)

In yet another embodiment, the Compounds of the Invention or compositions can be delivered in a controlled release system. In one embodiment, a pump can be used (*see* Langer, *supra*; Sefton, *CRC Crit. Ref. Biomed. Eng.* 14:201 (1987); Buchwald et al., *Surgery* 88:507 (1980); Saudek et al., *N. Engl. J. Med.* 321:574 (1989)). In another embodiment, polymeric materials can be used (*see* *Medical Applications of Controlled Release*, Langer and Wise (eds.), CRC Pres., Boca Raton, Florida (1974); *Controlled Drug*

Bioavailability, Drug Product Design and Performance, Smolen and Ball (eds.), Wiley, New York (1984); Ranger and Peppas, J. Macromol. Sci. Rev. Macromol. Chem. 23:61 (1983); *see also* Levy et al., Science 228:190 (1985); During et al., Ann. Neurol. 25:351 (1989); Howard et al., J. Neurosurg. 71:105 (1989)). In yet another embodiment, a

5 controlled-release system can be placed in proximity of the target of the Compounds of the Invention or compositions, *e.g.*, the brain, thus requiring only a fraction of the systemic dose (*see, e.g.*, Goodson, in Medical Applications of Controlled Release, *supra*, vol. 2, pp. 115-138 (1984)). Other controlled-release systems discussed in the review by Langer (Science 249:1527-1533 (1990)) can be used.

10 The term "carrier" refers to a diluent, adjuvant or excipient, with which a Compound of the Invention is administered. Such pharmaceutical carriers can be liquids, such as water and oils, including those of petroleum, animal, vegetable or synthetic origin, such as peanut oil, soybean oil, mineral oil, sesame oil and the like. The carriers can be saline, gum acacia, gelatin, starch paste, talc, keratin, colloidal silica, urea, and the like. In
15 addition, auxiliary, stabilizing, thickening, lubricating and coloring agents can be used. In one embodiment, when administered to an animal, the Compounds of the Invention or compositions and pharmaceutically acceptable carriers are sterile. Water is a preferred carrier when the Compounds of the Invention are administered intravenously. Saline solutions and aqueous dextrose and glycerol solutions can also be employed as liquid
20 carriers, particularly for injectable solutions. Suitable pharmaceutical carriers also include excipients such as starch, glucose, lactose, sucrose, gelatin, malt, rice, flour, chalk, silica gel, sodium stearate, glycerol monostearate, talc, sodium chloride, dried skim milk, glycerol, propylene, glycol, water, ethanol and the like. The present compositions, if desired, can also contain minor amounts of wetting or emulsifying agents, or pH buffering
25 agents.

The present compositions can take the form of solutions, suspensions, emulsion, tablets, pills, pellets, capsules, capsules containing liquids, powders, sustained-release formulations, suppositories, emulsions, aerosols, sprays, suspensions, or any other form suitable for use. In one embodiment, the pharmaceutically acceptable carrier is a
30 capsule (*see e.g.*, U.S. Patent No. 5,698,155). Other examples of suitable pharmaceutical carriers are described in "Remington's Pharmaceutical Sciences" by E.W. Martin.

In a preferred embodiment, the Compounds of the Invention are formulated in accordance with routine procedures as a pharmaceutical composition adapted for

intravenous administration to animals, particularly human beings. Typically, the carriers or vehicles for intravenous administration are sterile isotonic aqueous buffer solutions. Where necessary, the compositions can also include a solubilizing agent. Compositions for intravenous administration can optionally comprise a local anesthetic such as lignocaine to
5 ease pain at the site of the injection. Generally, the ingredients are supplied either separately or mixed together in unit dosage form, for example, as a dry lyophilized powder or water free concentrate in a hermetically sealed container such as an ampoule or sachette indicating the quantity of active agent. Where a Compound of the Invention is to be administered by infusion, it can be dispensed, for example, with an infusion bottle
10 containing sterile pharmaceutical grade water or saline. Where the Compound of the Invention is administered by injection, an ampoule of sterile water for injection or saline can be provided so that the ingredients can be mixed prior to administration.

Compositions for oral delivery can be in the form of tablets, lozenges, aqueous or oily suspensions, granules, powders, emulsions, capsules, syrups, or elixirs, for
15 example. Orally administered compositions can contain one or more optionally agents, for example, sweetening agents such as fructose, aspartame or saccharin; flavoring agents such as peppermint, oil of wintergreen, or cherry; coloring agents; and preserving agents, to provide a pharmaceutically palatable preparation. Moreover, where in tablet or pill form, the compositions can be coated to delay disintegration and absorption in the gastrointestinal
20 tract thereby providing a sustained action over an extended period of time. Selectively permeable membranes surrounding an osmotically active driving compound are also suitable for orally administered compounds. In these later platforms, fluid from the environment surrounding the capsule is imbibed by the driving compound, which swells to displace the agent or agent composition through an aperture. These delivery platforms can
25 provide an essentially zero order delivery profile as opposed to the spiked profiles of immediate release formulations. A time-delay material such as glycerol monostearate or glycerol stearate can also be used. Oral compositions can include standard carriers such as mannitol, lactose, starch, magnesium stearate, sodium saccharine, cellulose, magnesium carbonate, etc. Such carriers are preferably of pharmaceutical grade.

30 The compositions can be intended for topical administration, in which case the carrier may be in the form of a solution, emulsion, ointment or gel base. The base, for example, can comprise one or more of the following: petrolatum, lanolin, polyethylene glycols, beeswax, mineral oil, diluents such as water and alcohol, and emulsifiers and

stabilizers. Thickening agents can be present in a composition for topical administration. If intended for transdermal administration, the composition can be in the form of a transdermal patch or an iontophoresis device. Topical formulations can comprise a concentration of a Compound of the Invention of from about 0.1% to about 10% w/v
5 (weight per unit volume of composition).

The composition can be intended for rectal administration, in the form, *e.g.*, of a suppository which will melt in the rectum and release the Compound of the Invention. The composition for rectal administration can contain an oleaginous base as a suitable nonirritating excipient. Such bases include, without limitation, lanolin, cocoa butter and
10 polyethylene glycol.

The composition can include various materials that modify the physical form of a solid or liquid dosage unit. For example, the composition can include materials that form a coating shell around the active ingredients. The materials that form the coating shell are typically inert, and can be selected from, for example, sugar, shellac, and other enteric
15 coating agents. Alternatively, the active ingredients can be encased in a gelatin capsule.

The compositions can consist of gaseous dosage units, *e.g.*, it can be in the form of an aerosol. The term aerosol is used to denote a variety of systems ranging from those of colloidal nature to systems consisting of pressurized packages. Delivery can be by a liquefied or compressed gas or by a suitable pump system that dispenses the active
20 ingredients. Aerosols of Compounds of the Invention can be delivered in single phase, bi-phasic, or tri-phasic systems in order to deliver the Compound(s) of the Invention. Delivery of the aerosol includes the necessary container, activators, valves, subcontainers, Spacers and the like, which together can form a kit. Preferred aerosols can be determined by one skilled in the art, without undue experimentation.

25 Whether in solid, liquid or gaseous form, the compositions of the present invention can comprise a pharmacological agent used in the treatment of cancer, an autoimmune disease or an infectious disease.

The pharmaceutical compositions can be prepared using methodology well known in the pharmaceutical art. For example, a composition intended to be administered
30 by injection can be prepared by combining a Compound of the Invention with water so as to form a solution. A surfactant can be added to facilitate the formation of a homogeneous solution or suspension. Surfactants are compounds that non-covalently interact with a

Compound of the Invention so as to facilitate dissolution or homogeneous suspension of the active compound in the aqueous delivery system.

5.9 THERAPEUTIC USES OF THE COMPOUNDS OF THE INVENTION

The Compounds of the Invention are useful for treating cancer, an
5 autoimmune disease or an infectious disease in an animal.

5.10 TREATMENT OF CANCER

The Compounds of the Invention are useful for inhibiting the multiplication of a tumor cell or cancer cell, or for treating cancer in an animal. The Compounds of the Invention can be used accordingly in a variety of settings for the treatment of animal
10 cancers. The Drug-Linker-Ligand Conjugates can be used to deliver a Drug or Drug unit to a tumor cell or cancer cell. Without being bound by theory, in one embodiment, the Ligand unit of a Compound of the Invention binds to or associates with a cancer-cell or a tumor-cell-associated antigen, and the Compound of the Invention can be taken up inside a tumor cell or cancer cell through receptor-mediated endocytosis. The antigen can be
15 attached to a tumor cell or cancer cell or can be an extracellular matrix protein associated with the tumor cell or cancer cell. Once inside the cell, one or more specific peptide sequences within the Linker unit are hydrolytically cleaved by one or more tumor-cell or cancer-cell-associated proteases, resulting in release of a Drug or a Drug-Linker Compound. The released Drug or Drug-Linker Compound is then free to migrate in the
20 cytosol and induce cytotoxic activities. In an alternative embodiment, the Drug or Drug unit is cleaved from the Compound of the Invention outside the tumor cell or cancer cell, and the Drug or Drug-Linker Compound subsequently penetrates the cell.

In one embodiment, the Ligand unit binds to the tumor cell or cancer cell.

In another embodiment, the Ligand unit binds to a tumor cell or cancer cell
25 antigen which is on the surface of the tumor cell or cancer cell.

In another embodiment, the Ligand unit binds to a tumor cell or cancer cell antigen which is an extracellular matrix protein associated with the tumor cell or cancer cell.

In one embodiment, the tumor cell or cancer cell is of the type of tumor or
30 cancer that the animal needs treatment or prevention of.

The specificity of the Ligand unit for a particular tumor cell or cancer cell can be important for determining those tumors or cancers that are most effectively treated. For example, Compounds of the Invention having a BR96 Ligand unit can be useful for

treating antigen positive carcinomas including those of the lung, breast, colon, ovaries, and pancreas. Compounds of the Invention having an Anti-CD30 or an anti-CD40 Ligand unit can be useful for treating hematologic malignancies.

Other particular types of cancers that can be treated with Compounds of the Invention include, but are not limited to, those disclosed in Table 3.

TABLE 3

Solid tumors, including but not limited to:

	fibrosarcoma
	myxosarcoma
10	liposarcoma
	chondrosarcoma
	osteogenic sarcoma
	chordoma
	angiosarcoma
15	endotheliosarcoma
	lymphangiosarcoma
	lymphangioendotheliosarcoma
	synovioma
	mesothelioma
20	Ewing's tumor
	leiomyosarcoma
	rhabdomyosarcoma
	colon cancer
	colorectal cancer
25	kidney cancer
	pancreatic cancer
	bone cancer
	breast cancer
	ovarian cancer
30	prostate cancer
	esophageal cancer
	stomach cancer
	oral cancer
	nasal cancer
35	throat cancer
	squamous cell carcinoma
	basal cell carcinoma
	adenocarcinoma
	sweat gland carcinoma
40	sebaceous gland carcinoma
	papillary carcinoma
	papillary adenocarcinomas
	cystadenocarcinoma
	medullary carcinoma
45	bronchogenic carcinoma
	renal cell carcinoma

- hepatoma
- bile duct carcinoma
- choriocarcinoma
- seminoma
- 5 embryonal carcinoma
- Wilms' tumor
- cervical cancer
- uterine cancer
- testicular cancer
- 10 small cell lung carcinoma
- bladder carcinoma
- lung cancer
- epithelial carcinoma
- glioma
- 15 glioblastoma multiforme
- astrocytoma
- medulloblastoma
- craniopharyngioma
- ependymoma
- 20 pinealoma
- hemangioblastoma
- acoustic neuroma
- oligodendroglioma
- meningioma
- 25 skin cancer
- melanoma
- neuroblastoma
- retinoblastoma

blood-borne cancers, including but not limited to:

- 30 acute lymphoblastic leukemia "ALL"
- acute lymphoblastic B-cell leukemia
- acute lymphoblastic T-cell leukemia
- acute myeloblastic leukemia "AML"
- acute promyelocytic leukemia "APL"
- 35 acute monoblastic leukemia
- acute erythroleukemic leukemia
- acute megakaryoblastic leukemia
- acute myelomonocytic leukemia
- acute nonlymphocytic leukemia
- 40 acute undifferentiated leukemia
- chronic myelocytic leukemia "CML"
- chronic lymphocytic leukemia "CLL"
- hairy cell leukemia
- multiple myeloma

45 acute and chronic leukemias:

- lymphoblastic
- myelogenous
- lymphocytic

myelocytic leukemias

Lymphomas:

Hodgkin's disease
non-Hodgkin's Lymphoma

5 Multiple myeloma
Waldenström's macroglobulinemia
Heavy chain disease
Polycythemia vera

10 The Compounds of the Invention can also be used as chemotherapeutics in the untargeted form. For example, the Drugs themselves, or the Drug-Linker Compounds are useful for treating ovarian, CNS, renal, lung, colon, melanoma, or hematologic cancers or tumors.

15 The Compounds of the Invention provide Conjugation specific tumor or cancer targeting, thus reducing general toxicity of these compounds. The Linker units stabilize the Compounds of the Invention in blood, yet are cleavable by tumor-specific proteases within the cell, liberating a Drug.

5.10.1 MULTI-MODALITY THERAPY FOR CANCER

20 Cancer, including, but not limited to, a tumor, metastasis, or any disease or disorder characterized by uncontrolled cell growth, can be treated or prevented by administration of a Compound of the Invention.

25 In other embodiments, the invention provides methods for treating or preventing cancer, comprising administering to an animal in need thereof an effective amount of a Compound of the Invention and a chemotherapeutic agent. In one embodiment the chemotherapeutic agent is that with which treatment of the cancer has not been found to be refractory. In another embodiment, the chemotherapeutic agent is that with which the treatment of cancer has been found to be refractory. The Compounds of the Invention can be administered to an animal that has also undergone surgery as treatment for the cancer.

In one embodiment, the additional method of treatment is radiation therapy.

30 In a specific embodiment, the Compound of the Invention is administered concurrently with the chemotherapeutic agent or with radiation therapy. In another specific embodiment, the chemotherapeutic agent or radiation therapy is administered prior or subsequent to administration of a Compound of the Invention, preferably at least an hour, five hours, 12 hours, a day, a week, a month, more preferably several months (e.g., up to three months), prior or subsequent to administration of a Compound of the Invention.

A chemotherapeutic agent can be administered over a series of sessions, any one or a combination of the chemotherapeutic agents listed in Table 4 can be administered. With respect to radiation, any radiation therapy protocol can be used depending upon the type of cancer to be treated. For example, but not by way of limitation, x-ray radiation can be administered; in particular, high-energy megavoltage (radiation of greater than 1 MeV energy) can be used for deep tumors, and electron beam and orthovoltage x-ray radiation can be used for skin cancers. Gamma-ray emitting radioisotopes, such as radioactive isotopes of radium, cobalt and other elements, can also be administered.

Additionally, the invention provides methods of treatment of cancer with a Compound of the Invention as an alternative to chemotherapy or radiation therapy where the chemotherapy or the radiation therapy has proven or can prove too toxic, *e.g.*, results in unacceptable or unbearable side effects, for the subject being treated. The animal being treated can, optionally, be treated with another cancer treatment such as surgery, radiation therapy or chemotherapy, depending on which treatment is found to be acceptable or bearable.

The Compounds of the Invention can also be used in an *in vitro* or *ex vivo* fashion, such as for the treatment of certain cancers, including, but not limited to leukemias and lymphomas, such treatment involving autologous stem cell transplants. This can involve a multi-step process in which the animal's autologous hematopoietic stem cells are harvested and purged of all cancer cells, the patient's remaining bone-marrow cell population is then eradicated via the administration of a high dose of a Compound of the Invention with or without accompanying high dose radiation therapy, and the stem cell graft is infused back into the animal. Supportive care is then provided while bone marrow function is restored and the animal recovers.

25 5.10.2 MULTI-DRUG THERAPY FOR CANCER

The present invention includes methods for treating cancer, comprising administering to an animal in need thereof an effective amount of a Compound of the Invention and another therapeutic agent that is an anti-cancer agent. Suitable anticancer agents include, but are not limited to, methotrexate, taxol, L-asparaginase, mercaptopurine, thioguanine, hydroxyurea, cytarabine, cyclophosphamide, ifosfamide, nitrosoureas, cisplatin, carboplatin, mitomycin, dacarbazine, procarbazine, topotecan, nitrogen mustards, cytoxan, etoposide, 5-fluorouracil, BCNU, irinotecan, camptothecins, bleomycin, doxorubicin, idarubicin, daunorubicin, dactinomycin, plicamycin, mitoxantrone,

asparaginase, vinblastine, vincristine, vinorelbine, paclitaxel, and docetaxel. In a preferred embodiment, the anti-cancer agent includes, but is not limited to, a drug listed in Table 4.

TABLE 4

Alkylating agents	
Nitrogen mustards:	cyclophosphamide
	Ifosfamide
	trofosfamide
	Chlorambucil
Nitrosoureas:	carmustine (BCNU)
	Lomustine (CCNU)
Alkylsulphonates	busulfan
	Treosulfan
Triazenes:	Dacarbazine
Platinum containing compounds:	Cisplatin
	carboplatin
Plant Alkaloids	
Vinca alkaloids:	vincristine
	Vinblastine
	Vindesine
	Vinorelbine
Taxoids:	paclitaxel
	Docetaxol
DNA Topoisomerase Inhibitors	
Epipodophyllins:	etoposide
	Teniposide
	Topotecan
	9-aminocamptothecin
	camptothecin
	crisnatol
mitomycins:	Mitomycin C
Anti-metabolites	
Anti-folates:	
DHFR inhibitors:	methotrexate

	Trimetrexate
IMP dehydrogenase Inhibitors:	mycophenolic acid
	Tiazofurin
	Ribavirin
	EICAR
Ribonucleotide reductase Inhibitors:	hydroxyurea
	deferroxamine
Pyrimidine analogs:	
Uracil analogs	5-Fluorouracil
	Floxuridine
	Doxifluridine
	Ratitrexed
Cytosine analogs	cytarabine (ara C)
	Cytosine arabinoside
	fludarabine
Purine analogs:	mercaptopurine
	Thioguanine
Hormonal therapies:	
Receptor antagonists:	
Anti-estrogen	Tamoxifen
	Raloxifene
	megestrol
LHRH agonists:	goserelin
	Leuprolide acetate
Anti-androgens:	flutamide
	bicalutamide
Retinoids/Retinoids	
Vitamin D3 analogs:	EB 1089
	CB 1093
	KH 1060
Photodynamic therapies:	verteporfin (BPD-MA)
	Phthalocyanine
	photosensitizer Pc4

	Demethoxy-hypocrellin A (2BA-2-DMHA)
Cytokines:	Interferon- α Interferon- γ Tumor necrosis factor
Others:	
Isoprenylation inhibitors:	Lovastatin
Dopaminergic neurotoxins:	1-methyl-4-phenylpyridinium ion
Cell cycle inhibitors:	staurosporine
Actinomycins:	Actinomycin D Dactinomycin
Bleomycins:	bleomycin A2 Bleomycin B2 Peplomycin
Anthracyclines:	daunorubicin Doxorubicin (adriamycin) Idarubicin Epirubicin Pirarubicin Zorubicin Mitoxantrone
MDR inhibitors:	verapamil
Ca ²⁺ ATPase inhibitors:	thapsigargin

5.11 TREATMENT OF AUTOIMMUNE DISEASES

The Compounds of the Invention are useful for killing or inhibiting the replication of a cell that produces an autoimmune disease or for treating an autoimmune disease. The Compounds of the Invention can be used accordingly in a variety of settings for the treatment of an autoimmune disease in an animal. The Drug-Linker-Ligand Conjugates can be used to deliver a Drug to a target cell. Without being bound by theory, in one embodiment, the Drug-Linker-Ligand Conjugate associates with an antigen on the surface of a target cell, and the Compound of the Invention is then taken up inside a target-
 10 cell through receptor-mediated endocytosis. Once inside the cell, one or more specific

peptide sequences within the Linker unit are enzymatically or hydrolytically cleaved, resulting in release of a Drug. The released Drug is then free to migrate in the cytosol and induce cytotoxic activities. In an alternative embodiment, the Drug is cleaved from the Compound of the Invention outside the target cell, and the Drug subsequently penetrates the
 5 cell.

In one embodiment, the Ligand unit binds to an autoimmune antigen.

In another embodiment, the Ligand unit binds to an autoimmune antigen which is on the surface of a cell.

In another embodiment, the target cell is of the type of cell that produces the autoimmune antigen which causes the disease the animal needs treatment or prevention of.
 10

In a preferred embodiment, the Ligand binds to activated lymphocytes that are associated with the autoimmune disease state.

In a further embodiment, the Compounds of the Invention kill or inhibit the multiplication of cells that produce an auto-immune antibody associated with a particular autoimmune disease.
 15

Particular types of autoimmune diseases that can be treated with the Compounds of the Invention include, but are not limited to, Th2-lymphocyte related disorders (*e.g.*, atopic dermatitis, atopic asthma, rhinoconjunctivitis, allergic rhinitis, Omenn's syndrome, systemic sclerosis, and graft versus host disease); Th1
 20 lymphocyte-related disorders (*e.g.*, rheumatoid arthritis, multiple sclerosis, psoriasis, Sjorgren's syndrome, Hashimoto's thyroiditis, Grave's disease, primary biliary cirrhosis, Wegener's granulomatosis, and tuberculosis); activated B lymphocyte-related disorders (*e.g.*, systemic lupus erythematosus, Goodpasture's syndrome, rheumatoid arthritis, and type I diabetes); and those disclosed in Table 5.

25

TABLE 5

Active Chronic Hepatitis
 Addison's Disease
 Allergic Alveolitis
 Allergic Reaction
 30 Allergic Rhinitis
 Alport's Syndrome
 Anaphlaxis
 Ankylosing Spondylitis
 Anti-phospholipid Syndrome
 35 Arthritis
 Ascariasis
 Aspergillosis

	Atopic Allergy
	Atopic Dermatitis
	Atopic Rhinitis
5	Behcet's Disease
	Bird-Fancier's Lung
	Bronchial Asthma
	Caplan's Syndrome
	Cardiomyopathy
10	Celiac Disease
	Chagas' Disease
	Chronic Glomerulonephritis
	Cogan's Syndrome
	Cold Agglutinin Disease
15	Congenital Rubella Infection
	CREST Syndrome
	Crohn's Disease
	Cryoglobulinemia
	Cushing's Syndrome
20	Dermatomyositis
	Discoid Lupus
	Dressler's Syndrome
	Eaton-Lambert Syndrome
	Echovirus Infection
25	Encephalomyelitis
	Endocrine ophthalmopathy
	Epstein-Barr Virus Infection
	Equine Heaves
	Erythematosis
30	Evan's Syndrome
	Felty's Syndrome
	Fibromyalgia
	Fuch's Cyclitis
	Gastric Atrophy
35	Gastrointestinal Allergy
	Giant Cell Arteritis
	Glomerulonephritis
	Goodpasture's Syndrome
	Graft v. Host Disease
40	Graves' Disease
	Guillain-Barre Disease
	Hashimoto's Thyroiditis
	Hemolytic Anemia
	Henoch-Schonlein Purpura
45	Idiopathic Adrenal Atrophy
	Idiopathic Pulmonary Fibrilis
	IgA Nephropathy
	Inflammatory Bowel Diseases
	Insulin-dependent Diabetes Mellitus
50	Juvenile Arthritis
	Juvenile Diabetes Mellitus (Type I)
	Lambert-Eaton Syndrome

	Laminitis
	Lichen Planus
	Lupoid Hepatitis
	Lupus
5	Lymphopenia
	Meniere's Disease
	Mixed Connective Tissue Disease
	Multiple Sclerosis
	Myasthenia Gravis
10	Pernicious Anemia
	Polyglandular Syndromes
	Presenile Dementia
	Primary Agammaglobulinemia
	Primary Biliary Cirrhosis
15	Psoriasis
	Psoriatic Arthritis
	Raynauds Phenomenon
	Recurrent Abortion
	Reiter's Syndrome
20	Rheumatic Fever
	Rheumatoid Arthritis
	Sampter's Syndrome
	Schistosomiasis
	Schmidt's Syndrome
25	Scleroderma
	Shulman's Syndrome
	Sjorgen's Syndrome
	Stiff-Man Syndrome
	Sympathetic Ophthalmia
30	Systemic Lupus Erythematosus
	Takayasu's Arteritis
	Temporal Arteritis
	Thyroiditis
	Thrombocytopenia
35	Thyrotoxicosis
	Toxic Epidermal Necrolysis
	Type B Insulin Resistance
	Type I Diabetes Mellitus
	Ulcerative Colitis
40	Uveitis
	Vitiligo
	Waldenstrom's Macroglobulemia
	Wegener's Granulomatosis

5.11.1 MULTI-DRUG THERAPY OF AUTOIMMUNE DISEASES

45 The present invention also provides methods for treating an autoimmune disease, comprising administering to an animal in need thereof an effective amount of a Compound of the Invention and another therapeutic agent that known for the treatment of

an autoimmune disease. In one embodiment, the anti-autoimmune disease agent includes, but is not limited to, agents listed in Table 6.

Table 6

5	cyclosporine
	cyclosporine A
	mycophenylate mofetil
	sirolimus
	tacrolimus
	enanercept
10	prednisone
	azathioprine
	methotrexate cyclophosphamide
	prednisone
	aminocaproic acid
15	chloroquine
	hydroxychloroquine
	hydrocortisone
	dexamethasone
	chlorambucil
20	DHEA
	danazol
	bromocriptine
	meloxicam
	infliximab

25 **5.12 TREATMENT OF INFECTIOUS DISEASES**

The Compounds of the Invention are useful for killing or inhibiting the multiplication of a cell that produces an infectious disease or for treating an infectious disease. The Compounds of the Invention can be used accordingly in a variety of settings for the treatment of an infectious disease in an animal. The Drug-Linker-Ligand

30 Conjugates can be used to deliver a Drug to a target cell. Without being bound by theory, in one embodiment, the Drug-Linker-Ligand Conjugate associates with an antigen on the surface of a target cell, and the Compound of the Invention is then taken up inside a target-cell through receptor-mediated endocytosis. Once inside the cell, one or more specific peptide sequences within the Linker unit are enzymatically or hydrolytically cleaved,

35 resulting in release of a Drug. The released Drug is then free to migrate in the cytosol and induce cytotoxic activities. In an alternative embodiment, the Drug is cleaved from the Compound of the Invention outside the target cell, and the Drug subsequently penetrates the cell.

In one embodiment, the Ligand unit binds to the infectious disease cell.

In one embodiment, the infectious disease type of infectious disease that the animal needs treatment or prevention of.

In one embodiment, the Compounds of the Invention kill or inhibit the multiplication of cells that produce a particular infectious disease.

- 5 Particular types of infectious diseases that can be treated with the Compounds of the Invention include, but are not limited to, those disclosed in Table 7.

TABLE 7

Bacterial Diseases:

10	Diphtheria
	Pertussis
	Occult Bacteremia
	Urinary Tract Infection
	Gastroenteritis
15	Cellulitis
	Epiglottitis
	Tracheitis
	Adenoid Hypertrophy
	Retropharyngeal Abscess
20	Impetigo
	Ecthyma
	Pneumonia
	Endocarditis
	Septic Arthritis
25	Pneumococcal
	Peritonitis
	Bacteremia
	Meningitis
	Acute Purulent Meningitis
30	Urethritis
	Cervicitis
	Proctitis
	Pharyngitis
	Salpingitis
35	Epididymitis
	Gonorrhea
	Syphilis
	Listeriosis
	Anthrax
40	Nocardiosis
	Salmonella
	Typhoid Fever
	Dysentery
	Conjunctivitis
45	Sinusitis
	Brucellosis

	Tularemia
	Cholera
	Bubonic Plague
	Tetanus
5	Necrotizing Enteritis
	Actinomycosis
	Mixed Anaerobic Infections
	Syphilis
	Relapsing Fever
10	Leptospirosis
	Lyme Disease
	Rat Bite Fever
	Tuberculosis
	Lymphadenitis
15	Leprosy
	Chlamydia
	Chlamydial Pneumonia
	Trachoma
	Inclusion Conjunctivitis
20	Systemic Fungal Diseases:
	Histoplasmosis
	Coccidioidomycosis
	Blastomycosis
	Sporotrichosis
25	Cryptococcosis
	Systemic Candidiasis
	Aspergillosis
	Mucormycosis
	Mycetoma
30	Chromomycosis
	Rickettsial Diseases:
	Typhus
	Rocky Mountain Spotted Fever
	Ehrlichiosis
35	Eastern Tick-Borne Rickettsioses
	Rickettsialpox
	Q Fever
	Bartonellosis
	Parasitic Diseases:
40	Malaria
	Babesiosis
	African Sleeping Sickness
	Chagas' Disease
	Leishmaniasis
45	Dum-Dum Fever
	Toxoplasmosis

	Meningoencephalitis
	Keratitis
	Entamebiasis
	Giardiasis
5	Cryptosporidiasis
	Isosporiasis
	Cyclosporiasis
	Microsporidiosis
	Ascariasis
10	Whipworm Infection
	Hookworm Infection
	Threadworm Infection
	Ocular Larva Migrans
	Trichinosis
15	Guinea Worm Disease
	Lymphatic Filariasis
	Loiasis
	River Blindness
	Canine Heartworm Infection
20	Schistosomiasis
	Swimmer's Itch
	Oriental Lung Fluke
	Oriental Liver Fluke
	Fascioliasis
25	Fasciolopsiasis
	Opisthorchiasis
	Tapeworm Infections
	Hydatid Disease
	Alveolar Hydatid Disease
30	Viral Diseases:
	Measles
	Subacute sclerosing panencephalitis
	Common Cold
	Mumps
35	Rubella
	Roseola
	Fifth Disease
	Chickenpox
	Respiratory syncytial virus infection
40	Croup
	Bronchiolitis
	Infectious Mononucleosis
	Poliomyelitis
	Herpangina
45	Hand-Foot-and-Mouth Disease
	Bornholm Disease
	Genital Herpes
	Genital Warts
	Aseptic Meningitis

	Myocarditis
	Pericarditis
	Gastroenteritis
	Acquired Immunodeficiency Syndrome (AIDS)
5	Reye's Syndrome
	Kawasaki Syndrome
	Influenza
	Bronchitis
	Viral "Walking" Pneumonia
10	Acute Febrile Respiratory Disease
	Acute pharyngoconjunctival fever
	Epidemic keratoconjunctivitis
	Herpes Simplex Virus 1 (HSV-1)
	Herpes Simplex Virus 2 (HSV-2)
15	Shingles
	Cytomegalic Inclusion Disease
	Rabies
	Progressive Multifocal Leukoencephalopathy
	Kuru
20	Fatal Familial Insomnia
	Creutzfeldt-Jakob Disease
	Gerstmann-Straussler-Scheinker Disease
	Tropical Spastic Paraparesis
	Western Equine Encephalitis
25	California Encephalitis
	St. Louis Encephalitis
	Yellow Fever
	Dengue
	Lymphocytic choriomeningitis
30	Lassa Fever
	Hemorrhagic Fever
	Hantavirus Pulmonary Syndrome
	Marburg Virus Infections
	Ebola Virus Infections
35	Smallpox

5.12.1 MULTI-DRUG THERAPY OF INFECTIOUS DISEASES

The present invention also provides methods for treating an infectious disease, comprising administering to an animal in need thereof a Compound of the Invention and another therapeutic agent that is an anti-infectious disease agent. In one
 40 embodiment, the anti-infectious disease agent is, but not limited to, agents listed in Table 8.

TABLE 8 Antibacterial Agents:

β -Lactam Antibiotics:

	Penicillin G
	Penicillin V
45	Cloxacillin

	Dicloxacillin
	Methicillin
	Nafcillin
	Oxacillin
5	Ampicillin
	Amoxicillin
	Bacampicillin
	Azlocillin
	Carbenicillin
10	Mezlocillin
	Piperacillin
	Ticarcillin
	Aminoglycosides:
	Amikacin
15	Gentamicin
	Kanamycin
	Neomycin
	Netilmicin
	Streptomycin
20	Tobramycin
	Macrolides:
	Azithromycin
	Clarithromycin
	Erythromycin
25	Lincomycin
	Clindamycin
	Tetracyclines:
	Demeclocycline
	Doxycycline
30	Minocycline
	Oxytetracycline
	Tetracycline
	Quinolones:
	Cinoxacin
35	Nalidixic Acid
	Fluoroquinolones:
	Ciprofloxacin
	Enoxacin
	Grepafloxacin
40	Levofloxacin
	Lomefloxacin
	Norfloxacin

Ofloxacin
Sparfloxacin
Trovaflouxin

Polypeptides:

5 Bacitracin
 Colistin
 Polymyxin B

Sulfonamides:

10 Sulfisoxazole
 Sulfamethoxazole
 Sulfadiazine
 Sulfamethizole
 Sulfacetamide

Miscellaneous Antibacterial Agents:

15 Trimethoprim
 Sulfamethazole
 Chloramphenicol
 Vancomycin
 Metronidazole
20 Quinupristin
 Dalfopristin
 Rifampin
 Spectinomycin
 Nitrofurantoin

25 Antiviral Agents:

General Antiviral Agents:

 Idoxuradine
 Vidarabine
 Trifluridine
30 Acyclovir
 Famciclovir
 Penciclovir
 Valacyclovir
 Ganciclovir
35 Foscarnet
 Ribavirin
 Amantadine
 Rimantadine
 Cidofovir
40 Antisense Oligonucleotides
 Immunoglobulins
 Inteferons

Drugs for HIV infection:

5 Zidovudine
 Didanosine
 Zalcitabine
 Stavudine
 Lamivudine
 Nevirapine
 Delavirdine
 Saquinavir
10 Ritonavir
 Indinavir
 Nelfinavir

5.13 OTHER THERAPEUTIC AGENTS

 The present methods can further comprise the administration of a Compound of the Invention and an additional therapeutic agent or pharmaceutically acceptable salts or solvates thereof. The Compound of the Invention and the other therapeutic agent can act additively or, more preferably, synergistically. In a preferred embodiment, a composition comprising a Compound of the Invention is administered concurrently with the administration of one or more additional therapeutic agent(s), which can be part of the same composition or in a different composition from that comprising the Compound of the Invention. In another embodiment, a Compound of the Invention is administered prior to or subsequent to administration of another therapeutic agent(s).

 In the present methods for treating cancer, an autoimmune disease or an infectious disease, the other therapeutic agent can be an antiemetic agent. Suitable antiemetic agents include, but are not limited to, metoclopramide, domperidone, prochlorperazine, promethazine, chlorpromazine, trimethobenzamide, ondansetron, granisetron, hydroxyzine, acetylleucine monoethanolamine, alizapride, azasetron, benzquinamide, bietanautine, bromopride, buclizine, clebopride, cyclizine, dimenhydrinate, diphenidol, dolasetron, meclizine, methallatal, metopimazine, nabilone, oxypendyl, pipamazine, scopolamine, sulpiride, tetrahydrocannabinols, thiethylperazine, thioproperazine and tropisetron.

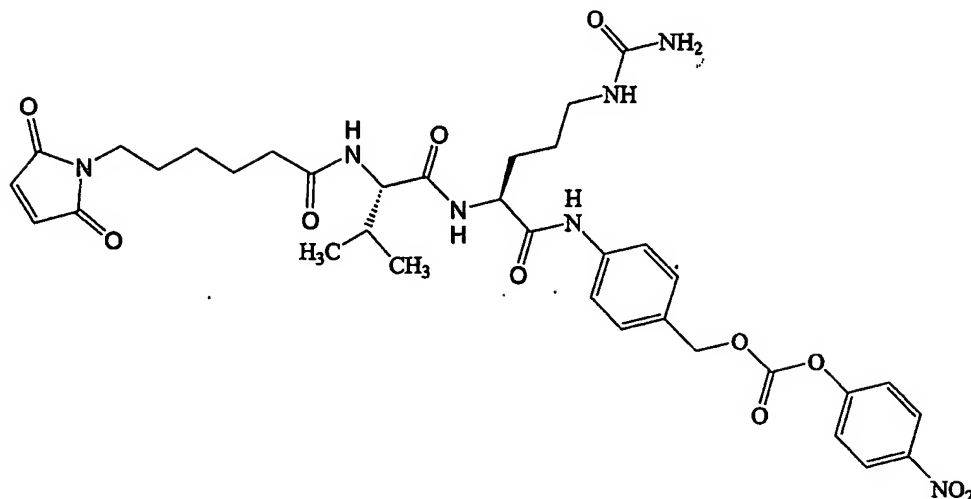
 In another embodiment, the other therapeutic agent can be an hematopoietic colony stimulating factor. Suitable hematopoietic colony stimulating factors include, but are not limited to, filgrastim, sargramostim, molgramostim and erythropoietin alfa.

 In still another embodiment, the other therapeutic agent can be an opioid or non-opioid analgesic agent. Suitable opioid analgesic agents include, but are not limited to, morphine, heroin, hydromorphone, hydrocodone, oxymorphone, oxycodone, metopon, apomorphine, normorphine, etorphine, buprenorphine, meperidine, lopermide, anileridine,

NOT FURNISHED UPON FILING

EXAMPLE 1

PREPARATION OF COMPOUND 21



21

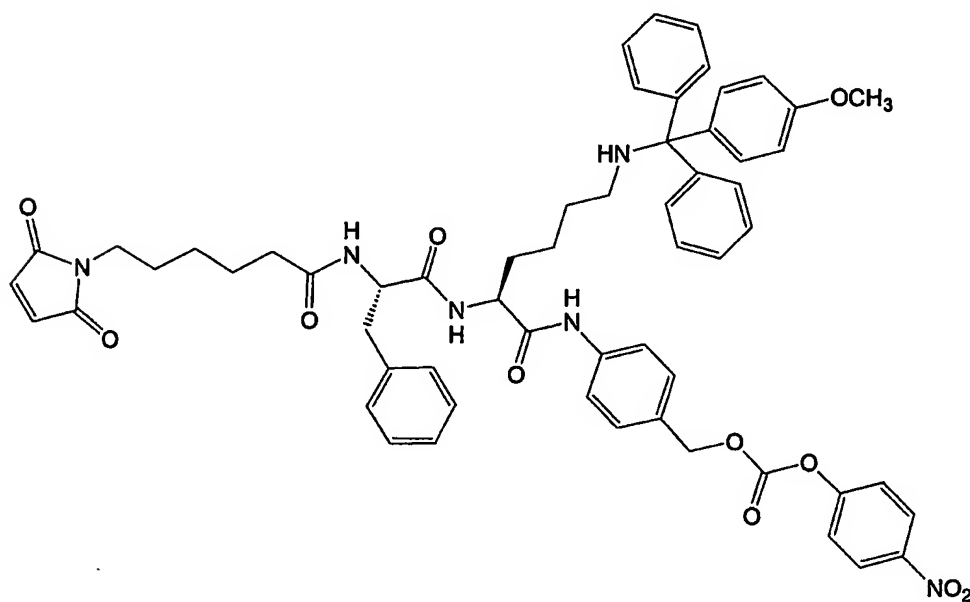
5 Fmoc-(L)-val-(L)-cit-PAB-OH (19) (14.61 g, 24.3 mmol, 1.0 eq., U.S. Pat. No. 6,214,345 to Firestone et al.) was diluted with DMF (120 mL, 0.2 M) and to this solution was added a diethylamine (60 mL). The reaction was monitored by HPLC and found to be complete in 2 h. The reaction mixture was concentrated and the resulting residue was precipitated using ethyl acetate (about 100 mL) under sonication over for 10 min. Ether (200 mL) was added and the precipitate was further sonicated for 5 min. The solution was allowed to stand for 30 min. without stirring and was then filtered and dried under high vacuum to provide Val-cit-PAB-OH, which was used in the next step without further purification. Yield: 8.84 g (96%). Val-cit-PAB-OH (8.0 g, 21 mmol) was diluted with DMF (110 mL) and the resulting solution was treated with MC-OSu (Willner et al., 15 *Bioconjugate Chem.* 4, 521, 1993, 6.5 g, 21 mmol, 1.0 eq.). Reaction was complete according to HPLC after 2 h. The reaction mixture was concentrated and the resulting oil was precipitated using ethyl acetate (50 mL). After sonicating for 15 min, ether (400 mL) was added and the mixture was sonicated further until all large particles were broken up. The solution was then filtered and the solid dried to provide Compound 20 as an off-white 20 solid. Yield: 11.63 g (96%); ES-MS m/z 757.9 [M-H]⁻

Compound 20 (8.0 g, 14.0 mmol) was diluted with DMF (120 mL, 0.12 M) and to the resulting solution was added bis(4-nitrophenyl)carbonate (8.5 g, 28.0 mmol, 2.0 eq.) and diisopropylethylamine (3.66 mL, 21.0 mmol, 1.5 eq.). The reaction was complete

in 1 h according to HPLC. The reaction mixture was concentrated to provide an oil that was precipitated with EtOAc, and then triturated using EtOAc (about 25 mL). The solute was further precipitated with ether (about 200 mL) and triturated for 15 min. The solid was filtered and dried under high vacuum to provide Compound 21 which was 93% pure according to HPLC and used in the next step without further purification. Yield: 9.7 g (94%).

EXAMPLE 2

PREPARATION OF COMPOUND 27



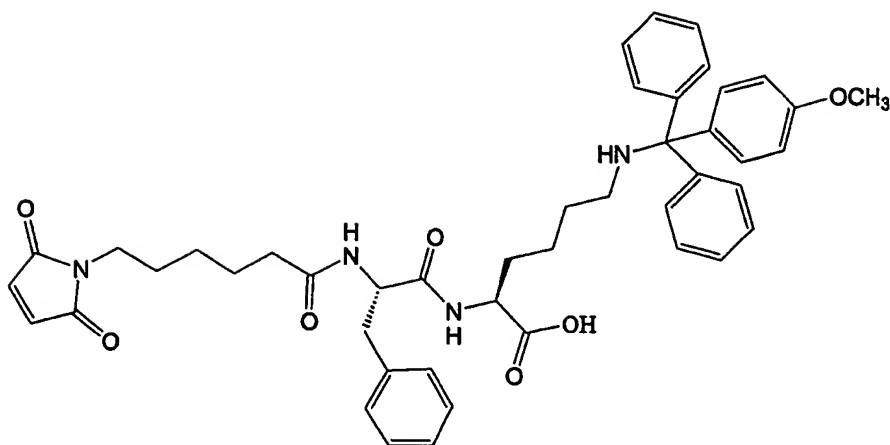
27

Compound 26 (2.0 g, 2.31 mmol, 1.0 eq.) was diluted with dichloromethane (30 mL), and to the resulting solution was added bis(4-nitrophenyl)carbonate (2.72 g, 8.94 mmol, 3.8 eq.) followed by diisopropylethylamine (1.04 mL, 5.97 mmol, 2.6 eq.). The reaction was complete in 3 d, according to HPLC. The reaction mixture was concentrated and the resulting residue was triturated using ether, then filtered and dried under high vacuum to provide Compound 27 as a yellow solid (2.37 g, 97%).

15

EXAMPLE 3

PREPARATION OF COMPOUND 28

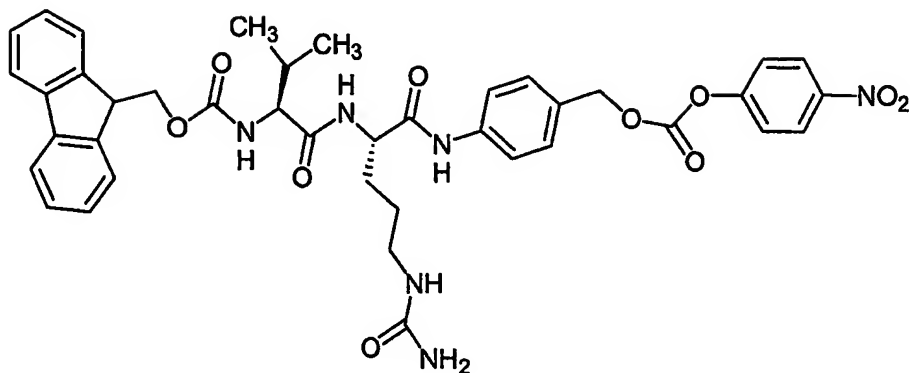


28

- 5 Fmoc-phe-lys(Mtr)-OH (24) (0.5 g, 0.63 mmol, U.S. Pat. No. 6,214,345 to Firestone et al.) was diluted with dichloromethane to a concentration of 0.5 M and to this solution was added diethylamine in an amount that was approximately one-third of the volume of the Compound 24/dichloromethane solution. The reaction was allowed to stir and was monitored using HPLC. It was shown to be complete by HPLC in 3 h. The
- 10 reaction mixture was concentrated *in vacuo*, and the resulting residue was diluted with ethyl acetate and then reconcentrated. The resulting residue was triturated using ether and filtered. The residual solid was diluted with dichloromethane to a concentration of 0.2M, and to the resulting solution was added MC-OSu (0.20 g, 0.63 mmol, 1.0 eq.) and diisopropylethylamine (0.12 mL, 0.70 mmol, 1.1 eq.). The reaction mixture was allowed to
- 15 stir under a nitrogen atmosphere for 16 h, after which time HPLC showed very little starting material. The reaction mixture was then concentrated and the resulting residue was triturated using ether to provide Compound 28 as a colored solid. Yield: 100 mg (21%); ES-MS m/z 757.9 [M-H]⁻.

EXAMPLE 4

PREPARATION OF COMPOUND 19A



5

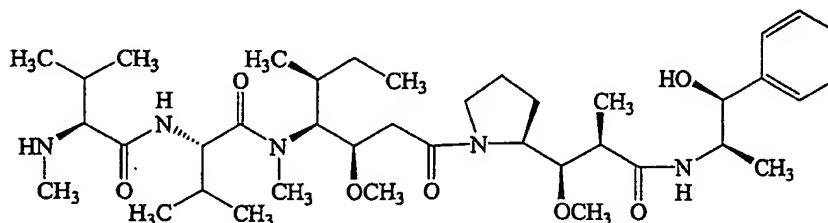
19A

Compound 19 (1.0 g, 1.66 mmol) was diluted with DMF (10 mL) and to the resulting solution was added bis(4-nitrophenyl)carbonate (1.0 g, 3.3 mmol, 2.0 eq.).

The reaction mixture was immediately treated with diisopropylethylamine (0.43 mL, 2.5 mmol, 1.5 eq.) and the reaction was allowed to stir under an argon atmosphere. The reaction was complete in 2.5 h according to HPLC. The reaction mixture was concentrated to provide a light brown oil that was precipitated using ethyl acetate (5 mL), then precipitated again using ether (about 100 mL). The resulting precipitate was allowed to stand for 30 min, and was then filtered and dried under high vacuum to provide Compound 19a as an off-white powder. Yield: 1.05 g (83%); ES-MS m/z 767.2 $[M+H]^+$;
 15 UV λ_{max} 215, 256 nm.

EXAMPLE 5

PREPARATION OF COMPOUND 49



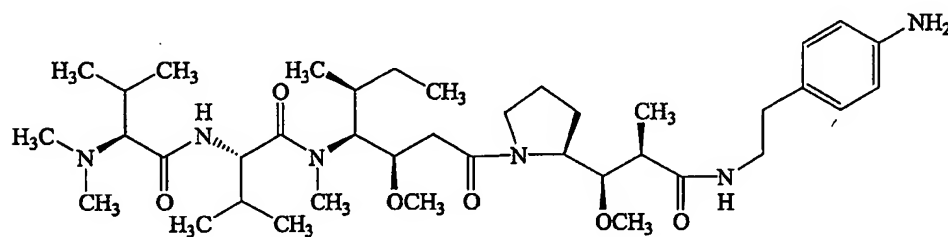
20

49

Compound 49 was made according to General Procedure D using Fmoc-Me-val-val-dil-*O*-*t*-Bu 39 (0.40 g, 0.57 mmol) as the tripeptide and Boc-dap-nor 44 (0.26 g, 0.62 mmol, 1.1 eq.) as the dipeptide. The reaction mixture was purified using flash column chromatography (silica gel column, eluant - 100% EtOAc). Two Fmoc-containing products
 5 eluted: the Fmoc derivative of Compound 49 (R_f 0.17 in 100% EtOAc) and what was believed to be the Fmoc derivative of the TFA acetate of Compound 49 (R_f 0.37). The products were combined to provide a white foam that was subjected to General Procedure E. Reaction was complete after 2 h. Solvents were removed to provide an oil that was purified using flash column chromatography (eluant - 9:1 Dichloromethane-methanol) to
 10 provide Compound 49.

EXAMPLE 6

PREPARATION OF COMPOUND 50

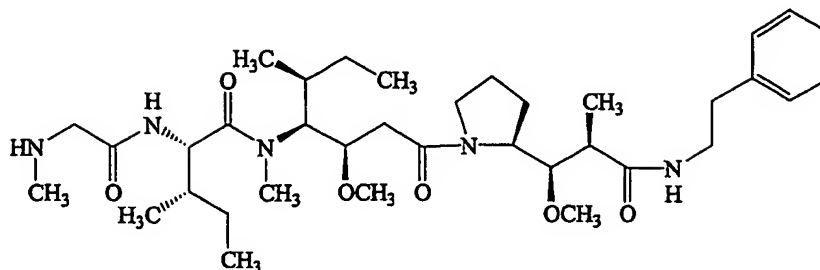


50

Compound 50 was prepared by reacting tripeptide 42 and dipeptide 48
 15 according to General Procedure D using triethylamine (5.0 eq.) as the base. After concentration of the reaction mixture, the resulting residue was directly injected onto a reverse phase preparative-HPLC column (Varian Dynamax column 21.4 mm x 25 cm, 5 μ , 100 \AA , using a gradient run of MeCN and 0.1M TEA/ CO_2 at 20 mL/min from 10% to 100%
 20 over 40 min followed by 100% MeCN for 20 min). The relevant fractions were pooled and concentrated, and the resulting residue was diluted with 10 mL of dichloromethane-ether (1:1). The solution was cooled to 0°C and 1.0M ethereal HCl was added dropwise (approx. 10 eq.). The precipitate, Compound 50, was filtered and dried and was substantially pure by HPLC. Yield: 71 mg (43%); ES-MS m/z 731.6 $[\text{M}+\text{H}]^+$; UV λ_{max} 215, 238, 290 nm.
 25 Anal. Calc. $\text{C}_{40}\text{H}_{70}\text{N}_6\text{O}_6 \cdot 4\text{H}_2\text{O} \cdot 2\text{HCl}$: C, 54.84; H, 9.20; N, 9.59. Found: C, 55.12; H, 9.41; N, 9.82.

EXAMPLE 7

PREPARATION OF COMPOUND 51



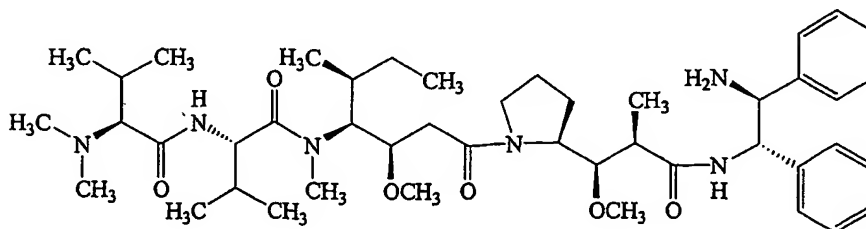
51

Compound **51** was prepared by reacting Fmoc-tripeptide **41** and dipeptide **46** according to General Procedure D using triethylamine as the base. After concentration of the reaction mixture, the residue was directly injected onto a reverse phase preparative-HPLC column (Varian Dynamax column 21.4 mm x 25 cm, 5 μ , 100 Å, using a gradient run of MeCN and 0.1M TEA/CO₂ at 20 mL/min from 10% to 100% over 40 min followed by 100% MeCN for 20 min). The relevant fractions were pooled and concentrated to provide a white solid intermediate that was used in the next step without further purification. ES-MS *m/z* 882.9 [M+NH₄]⁺, 899.9 [M+Na]⁺; UV λ_{max} 215, 256 nm.

Deprotection of the white solid intermediate was performed according to General Procedure E. The crude product was purified using preparative-HPLC (Varian 15 Dynamax column 21.4 mm x 25 cm, 5 μ , 100 Å, using a gradient run of MeCN and 0.1M TEA/CO₂ at 20 mL/min from 10% to 100% over 40 min followed by 100% MeCN for 20 min). The relevant fractions were pooled and concentrated to provide Compound 51 as a sticky solid. ES-MS m/z 660.1 [M+H]⁺, 682.5 [M+Na]⁺; UV λ_{max} 215 nm.

EXAMPLE 8

PREPARATION OF COMPOUND 52



52

Boc-dolaproine (0.33 g, 1.14 mmol) and (1*S*,2*S*)-(-)-1,2-diphenylethylenediamine (0.5 g, 2.28 mmol, 2.0 eq.) were diluted with dichloromethane, (10 mL) and to the resulting solution was added triethylamine (0.32 mL, 2.28 mmol, 2.0 eq.), then DEPC (0.39 mL, 2.28 mmol, 2.0 eq.). After 4 h, additional DEPC (0.39 mL) was added and the reaction was allowed to stir overnight. The reaction mixture was concentrated and the resulting residue was purified using preparative-HPLC (Varian Dynamax C₁₈ column 21.4 mm x 25 cm, 5 μ , 100 Å, using a gradient run of MeCN and water at 20 mL/min from 10% to 100% over 40 min followed by 100% MeCN for 20 min). The relevant fractions were pooled and concentrated to provide a yellow gummy solid peptide intermediate that was used without further purification. *R*_f 0.15 (100% EtOAc); ES-MS *m/z* 482.4 [M+H]⁺; UV λ_{max} 215, 256 nm.

The yellow gummy peptide intermediate (0.24 g, 0.50 mmol) was diluted with dichloromethane, and to the resulting solution was added diisopropylethylamine (0.18 mL, 1.0 mmol, 2.0 eq.) and Fmoc-Cl (0.15 g, 0.55 mmol, 1.1 eq.). The reaction was allowed to stir for 3 h, after which time HPLC showed a complete reaction. The reaction mixture was concentrated to an oil, and the oil was diluted with EtOAc and extracted successively with 10% aqueous citric acid, water, saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate, and brine. The EtOAc layer was dried, filtered, and concentrated, and the resulting residue was purified using flash column chromatography (silica gel 230-400 mesh; eluant gradient 4:1 hexanes-EtOAc to 1:1 hexanes-EtOAc) to provide Compound 45 as a white solid. Yield: 0.37 g (46% overall); *R*_f 0.47 (1:1 hexanes-EtOAc); ES-MS *m/z* 704.5 [M+H]⁺, 721.4 [M+NH₄]⁺; UV λ_{max} 215, 256 nm.

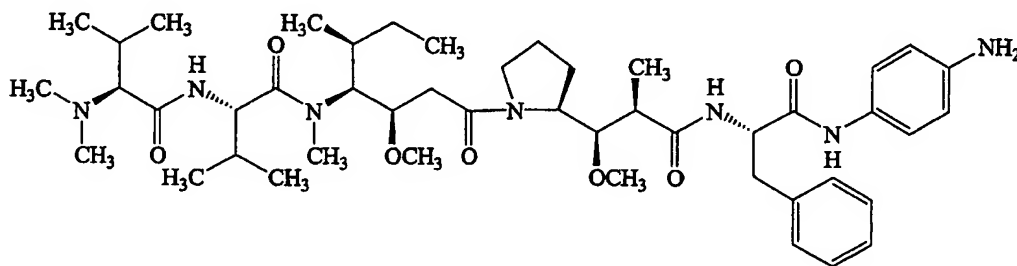
Compound 52 was prepared by reacting tripeptide 42 (94 mg, 0.13 mmol) and dipeptide compound 45 (65 mg, 0.13 mmol) according to General Procedure D (using 3.6 eq. of diisopropylethylamine as the base). After concentration of the reaction mixture, the resulting residue was diluted with EtOAc and washed successively with 10% aqueous citric acid, water, saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate, and brine. The organic phase was dried, filtered and concentrated to provide a white solid residue which was diluted with dichloromethane and deprotected according to General Procedure E. According to HPLC, reaction was complete after 2 h. The reaction mixture was concentrated to an oil. The oil was diluted with DMSO, and the resulting solution was purified using a reverse phase preparative-HPLC (Varian Dynamax column 21.4 mm x 25 cm, 5 μ , 100 Å, using a gradient run of MeCN and 0.1% TFA at 20 mL/min from 10% to 100% over 40 min

followed by 100% MeCN for 20 min). Two products having similar UV spectra were isolated. The major product, Compound 52, was provided as an off-white solid. Overall yield: 24 mg (23%); ES-MS m/z 793.5 $[M+H]^+$; UV λ_{\max} 215 nm.

EXAMPLE 9

5

PREPARATION OF COMPOUND 53



53

Boc-phenylalanine (1.0 g, 3.8 mmol) was added to a suspension of 1,4-diaminobenzene·HCl (3.5 g, 19.0 mmol, 5.0 eq.) in triethylamine (10.7 mL, 76.0 mmol, 20 eq.) and dichloromethane (50 mL). To the resulting solution was added DEPC (3.2 mL, 19.0 mmol, 5.0 eq.) via syringe. HPLC showed no remaining Boc-phe after 24 h. The reaction mixture was filtered, and the filtrate was concentrated to provide a dark solid. The dark solid residue was partitioned between 1:1 EtOAc-water, and the EtOAc layer was washed sequentially with water and brine. The EtOAc layer was dried and concentrated to provide a dark brown/red residue that was purified using HPLC (Varian Dynamax column 41.4mm x 25 cm, 5 μ , 100 Å, using a gradient run of MeCN and water at 45 mL/min from 10% to 100% over 40 min followed by 100% MeCN for 20 min). The relevant fractions were combined and concentrated to provide a red-tan solid intermediate. Yield: 1.4 g (100%); ES-MS m/z 355.9 $[M+H]^+$; UV λ_{\max} 215, 265 nm; ^1H NMR (CDCl_3) δ 7.48 (1 H, br s), 7.22-7.37 (5 H, m), 7.12 (2 H, d, $J=8.7$ Hz), 7.61 (2 H, d, $J=8.7$ Hz), 5.19 (1 H, br s), 4.39-4.48 (1 H, m), 3.49 (2 H, s), 3.13 (2 H, d, $J=5.7$ Hz), 1.43 (9 H, s).

The red-tan solid intermediate (0.5 g, 1.41 mmol) and diisopropylethylamine (0.37 mL, 2.11 mmol, 1.5 eq.) were diluted with dichloromethane (10 mL), and to the resulting solution was added Fmoc-Cl (0.38 g, 1.41 mmol). The reaction was allowed to stir, and a white solid precipitate formed after a few minutes. Reaction was complete according to HPLC after 1 h. The reaction mixture was filtered, and the filtrate was concentrated to provide an oil. The oil was precipitated with EtOAc, resulting in a reddish-

white intermediate product, which was collected by filtration and dried under vacuum.

Yield: 0.75 g (93%); ES-MS m/z 578.1 $[M+H]^+$, 595.6 $[M+NH_4]^+$.

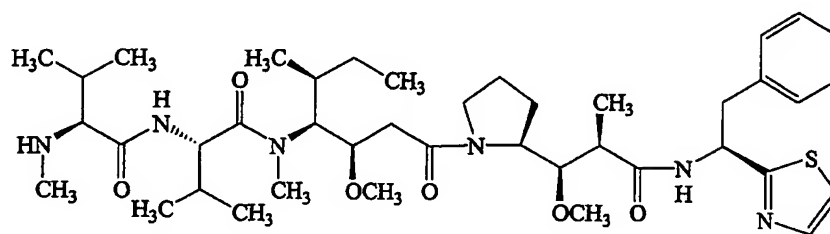
The reddish-white intermediate (0.49 g, 0.85 mmol), was diluted with 10 mL of dichloromethane, and then treated with 5 mL of trifluoroacetic acid. Reaction was
5 complete in 30 min according to reverse-phase HPLC. The reaction mixture was concentrated and the resulting residue was precipitated with ether to provide an off-white solid. The off-white solid was filtered and dried to provide an amorphous powder, which was added to a solution of Boc-dap (0.24 g, 0.85 mmol) in dichloromethane (10 mL). To this solution was added triethylamine (0.36 mL, 2.5 mmol, 3.0 eq.) and PyBrop (0.59 g, 1.3
10 mmol, 1.5 eq.). The reaction mixture was monitored using reverse-phase HPLC. Upon completion, the reaction mixture was concentrated, and the resulting residue was diluted with EtOAc, and sequentially washed with 10% aqueous citric acid, water, saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate, water, and brine. The EtOAc layer was dried ($MgSO_4$), filtered, and concentrated. The resulting residue was purified using flash column
15 chromatography (silica gel) to provide Compound 47 as an off-white powder. Yield: 0.57 g (88%); ES-MS m/z 764.7 $[M+NH_4]^+$; UV λ_{max} 215, 265 nm; 1H NMR ($DMSO-d_6$) δ 10.0-10.15 (1 H, m), 9.63 (1 H, br s), 8.42 (1/2 H, d, $J=8.4$ Hz), 8.22 (1/2 H, d, $J=8.4$ Hz), 7.89 (2 H, d, $J=7.2$ Hz), 7.73 (2 H, d, $J=7.6$ Hz), 7.11-7.55 (13 H, m), 4.69-4.75 (1 H, m), 4.46 (2 H, d, $J=6.8$ Hz), 4.29 (1 H, t, $J=6.4$ Hz), 3.29 (3 H, s), 2.77-3.47 (7 H, m), 2.48-2.50 (3 H,
20 m), 2.25 (2/3 H, dd, $J=9.6, 7.2$ Hz), 1.41-1.96 (4 H, m), 1.36 (9 H, s), 1.07 (1 H, d, $J=6.4$ Hz, rotational isomer), 1.00 (1 H, d, $J=6.4$ Hz, rotational isomer).

Tripeptide compound 42 (55 mg, 0.11 mmol) and dipeptide compound 47 (85 mg, 0.11 mmol) were reacted according to General Procedure D (using 3.0 eq. of diisopropylethylamine). After concentration of the reaction mixture, the resulting residue
25 was diluted with EtOAc, and washed sequentially with 10% aqueous citric acid, water, saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate, and brine. The EtOAc layer was dried, filtered and concentrated to provide a yellow oil. The yellow oil was diluted with dichloromethane (10 mL) and deprotected according to General Procedure E. According to HPLC, reaction was complete after 2 h. The reaction mixture was concentrated to provide an oil. The oil was
30 diluted with DMSO, and the DMSO solution was purified using reverse phase preparative-HPLC (Varian Dynamax column 21.4 mm x 25 cm, 5 μ , 100 Å, using a gradient run of MeCN and 0.1% TFA at 20 mL/min from 10% to 100% over 40 min followed by 100% MeCN for 20 min). The relevant fractions were combined and concentrated to provide

Compound **53** as an off-white solid. Overall yield: 42 mg (44% overall); ES-MS m/z 837.8 $[M+H]^+$, 858.5 $[M+Na]^+$; UV λ_{\max} 215, 248 nm.

EXAMPLE 10

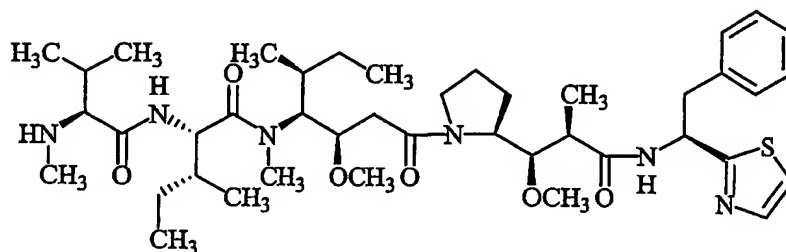
5

PREPARATION OF COMPOUND **54****54**

Compound **54** was prepared according to K. Miyazaki, et al. *Chem. Pharm. Bull.* 1995, 43(10), 1706-18.

10

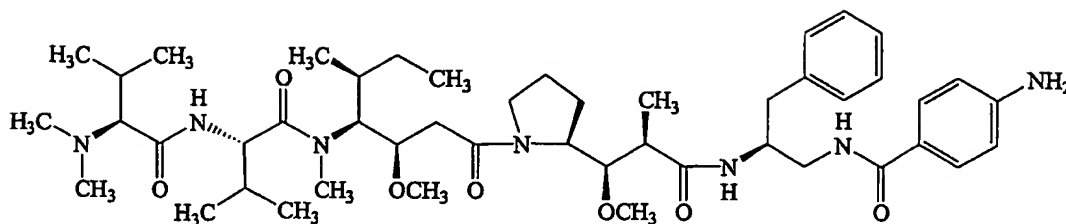
EXAMPLE 11

PREPARATION OF COMPOUND **55****55**

Compound **55** was synthesized in the same manner as Compound **54**, but by substituting FmocMeVal-Ile-Dil-tBu (**40**) for FmocMeVal-Val-Dil-tBu (**39**) as the starting material.

EXAMPLE 12

PREPARATION OF COMPOUND 56



56

5 Carbamic acid [(1S)-1-(azidomethyl)-2-phenylethyl]-1,1-dimethylethyl ester (0.56 g, 2 mmol, prepared as described in *J. Chem. Research (S)*, 1992, 391), was diluted with a 4 M solution of HCl in dioxane (10 mL) and the resulting solution allowed to stir for 2 hr at room temperature. Toluene (10 mL) was then added to the reaction, the reaction mixture was concentrated and the resulting residue was azeotropically dried under vacuum using toluene (3 x 15 mL), to provide a white solid intermediate. ES-MS m/z 177.1 $[M+H]^+$.

The white solid intermediate was diluted with dichloromethane (5 mL) and to the resulting solution was added sequentially *N*-Boc-Dolaproine (0.58 g, 1 eq.), triethylamine (780 μ L, 3 eq.) and DEPC (406 μ L, 1.2 eq.), and the reaction mixture was allowed to stir for 2 h at room temperature. Reaction progress was monitored using reverse-phase HPLC. Upon completion of reaction as determined by HPLC, the reaction mixture was diluted with dichloromethane (30 mL), the dichloromethane layer was washed successively with 10 % aqueous citric acid (20 mL), saturated aqueous NaHCO_3 (20 mL), and water (20 mL). The dichloromethane layer was concentrated and the resulting residue was purified via flash column chromatography using a step gradient of 0-5% methanol in dichloromethane. The relevant fractions were combined and concentrated to provide a solid intermediate, 0.78 g (88 %). ES-MS m/z 446.1 $[M+H]^+$, 468.3 $[M+Na]^+$.

The solid intermediate (450 mg, 1 mmol) and Tripeptide 42 (534 mg, 1.1 eq.) were diluted with a 50 % solution of TFA in dichloromethane (10 mL), and the resulting reaction was allowed to stir for 2 h at room temperature. Toluene (10 mL) was added to the reaction and the reaction mixture was concentrated. The resulting amine intermediate was azeotropically dried using toluene (3 x 20 mL) and dried under vacuum overnight.

The resulting amine intermediate was diluted with dichloromethane (2 mL) and to the resulting solution was added triethylamine (557 μ L, 4 eq.), followed by DEPC (203 μ L, 1.4 eq.). The reaction mixture was allowed to stir for 4 h at room temperature and reaction progress was monitored using HPLC. Upon completion of reaction, the reaction mixture was diluted with dichloromethane (30 mL) and the dichloromethane layer was washed sequentially using saturated aqueous NaHCO_3 (20 mL) and saturated aqueous NaCl (20 mL). The dichloromethane layer was concentrated and the resulting residue was purified using flash column chromatography in a step gradient of 0-5% methanol in dichloromethane. The relevant fractions were combined and concentrated and the resulting residue was dried using a dichloromethane:hexane (1:1) to provide a white solid intermediate, 0.64 g (84 %). ES-MS m/z 757.5 $[\text{M}+\text{H}]^+$.

The white solid intermediate (536 mg, 0.73 mmol) was diluted with methanol and to the resulting solution was added 10 % Pd/C (100 mg). The reaction was placed under a hydrogen atmosphere and was allowed to stir at atmospheric pressure and room temperature for 2 h. Reaction progress was monitored by HPLC and was complete in 2 h. The reaction flask was purged with argon and the reaction mixture was filtered through a pad of Celite. The Celite pad was subsequently washed with methanol (30 mL) and the combined filtrates were concentrated to yield a gray solid intermediate which was used without further purification. Yield = 490 mg (91 %). ES-MS m/z 731.6 $[\text{M}+\text{H}]^+$, 366.6 $[\text{M}+2\text{H}]^{2+}/2$.

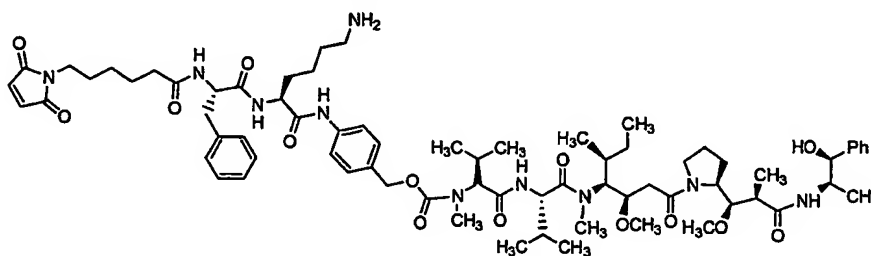
The gray solid intermediate (100 mg, 0.136 mmol), *N*-Boc-4-aminobenzoic acid (39 mg, 1.2 eq.) and triethylamine (90 μ L, 4 eq.) were diluted with dichloromethane (2 mL) and to the resulting solution was added DEPC (28 μ L, 1.2 eq.). The reaction mixture was allowed to stir at room temperature for 2 h, then the reaction mixture was diluted with dichloromethane (30 mL). The dichloromethane layer was sequentially washed with saturated aqueous NaHCO_3 (20 mL) and saturated aqueous NaCl (20 mL). The dichloromethane layer was then concentrated and the resulting residue was purified via flash column chromatography using a step gradient of 0-5% in dichloromethane. The relevant fractions were combined and concentrated and the resulting residue was dried using dichloromethane:hexane (1:1) to provide a white solid intermediate. ES-MS m/z 950.7 $[\text{M}+\text{H}]^+$.

The white solid intermediate was diluted with a 50 % solution of TFA in dichloromethane and allowed to stir for 2 h at room temperature. Toluene (10 mL) was

added to the reaction and the reaction mixture was concentrated. The resulting residue was azeotropically dried using toluene (3 x 15 mL), to provide a yellow oil which was purified using preparative HPLC (C₁₈-RP Varian Dynamax column, 5 μ , 100 Å, linear gradient of MeCN from 10 to 95 % in 0.05 M Triethylammonium carbonate buffer, pH 7.0, in 30 min at a flow rate of 10 mL/min). The relevant fractions were combined and concentrated and the resulting residue was azeotropically dried using MeCN (3 x 20 mL), to provide Compound **56** as white solid: 101 mg (87 % over 2 steps). ES-MS *m/z* 850.6 [M+H]⁺, 872.6 [M+Na]⁺.

EXAMPLE 13

PREPARATION OF COMPOUND 57



57

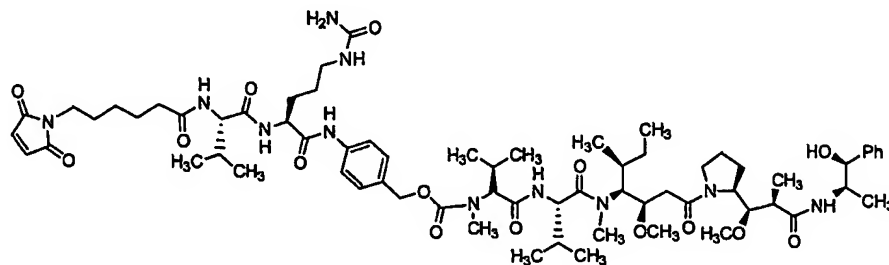
Compound **49** (100 mg, 0.14 mmol), Compound **27** (160 mg, 0.15 mmol, 1.1 eq.), and HOBT (19 mg, 0.14 mmol, 1.0 eq.) were diluted with DMF (2 mL). After 2 min, pyridine (0.5 mL) was added and the reaction mixture was monitored using reverse-phase HPLC. Neither Compound **49** nor Compound **27** was detected after 24 h. The reaction mixture was concentrated, and the resulting residue was purified using reverse phase preparative-HPLC (Varian Dynamax column 21.4 mm x 25 cm, 5 μ , 100 Å, using a gradient run of MeCN and Et₃N-CO₂ (pH 7) at 20 mL/min from 10% to 100% over 40 min followed by 100% MeCN for 20 min). The relevant fractions were pooled and concentrated to provide an off-white solid intermediate. ES-MS *m/z* 1608.7 [M+H]⁺

The off-white solid intermediate was diluted with MeCN/water/TFA in an 85:5:10 ratio, respectively. The reaction mixture was monitored using HPLC and was complete in 3 h. The reaction mixture was directly concentrated and the resulting residue was purified using reverse phase preparative-HPLC (Varian Dynamax column 21.4 mm x 25 cm, 5 μ , 100 Å, using a gradient run of MeCN and 0.1% TFA at 20 mL/min from 10% to 100% over 40 min followed by 100% MeCN for 20 min). The relevant fractions were

combined and concentrated to provide Compound **57** as an off-white powder. Yield: 46 mg (32% overall); ES-MS m/z 1334.8 $[M+H]^+$; UV λ_{\max} 215, 256 nm.

EXAMPLE 14
PREPARATION OF COMPOUND **58**

5

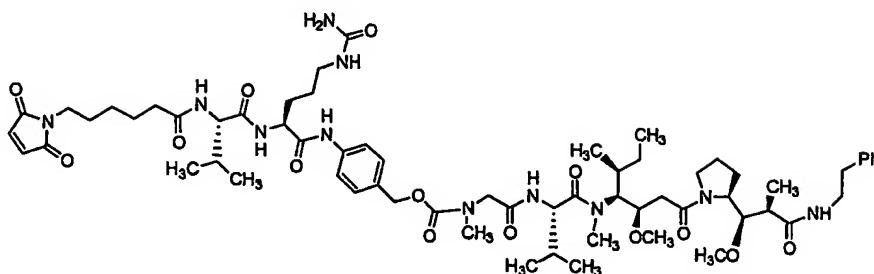


58

Compound **49** (1.69 g, 2.35 mmol), Compound **21** (2.6 g, 3.52 mmol, 1.5 eq.), and HOBt (64 mg, 0.45 mmol, 0.2 eq.) were diluted with DMF (25 mL). After 2 min, pyridine (5 mL) was added and the reaction was monitored using reverse-phase HPLC. The reaction was shown to be complete in 24 h. The reaction mixture was concentrated to provide a dark oil, which was diluted with 3 mL of DMF. The DMF solution was purified using flash column chromatography (silica gel, eluant gradient: 100% dichloromethane to 4:1 dichloromethane-methanol). The relevant fractions were combined and concentrated to provide an oil that solidified under high vacuum to provide a mixture of Compound **58** and unreacted Compound **49** as a dirty yellow solid (R_f 0.40 in 9:1 dichloromethane-methanol). The dirty yellow solid was diluted with DMF and purified using reverse-phase preparative-HPLC (Varian Dynamax C_{18} column 41.4 mm x 25 cm, 8 m, 100 Å, using a gradient run of MeCN and 0.1% aqueous TFA at 45 mL/min from 10% to 100% over 40 min followed by 100% MeCN for 20 min) to provide Compound **58** as an amorphous white powder (R_f 0.40 in 9:1 dichloromethane-methanol) which was >95% pure by HPLC and which contained less than 1% of Compound **49**. Yield: 1.78 g (57%); ES-MS m/z 1316.7 $[M+H]^+$; UV λ_{\max} 215, 248 nm.

EXAMPLE 15

PREPARATION OF COMPOUND 59

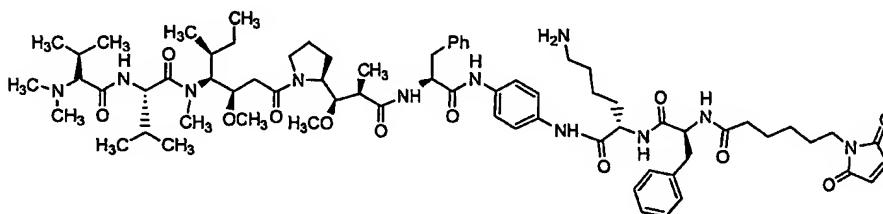


59

- 5 The hydrochloride salt of Compound 51 (11 mg, 15.2 mmol) and Compound 21 (11 mg, 15.2 mmol) were diluted with 1-methyl-2-pyrrolidinone (1 mL) and to the resulting solution was added diisopropylethylamine (5.3 mL, 30.3 mmol, 2.0 eq.). The mixture was allowed to stir under argon atmosphere for 3 d while being monitored using HPLC. After this time, much unreacted starting material still remained, HOBt (1.0 eq.) was
- 10 added and the reaction mixture was allowed to stir for 24 h, after which time no starting material remained according to HPLC. The reaction mixture was concentrated and the resulting residue was purified using preparative-HPLC (Varian Dynamax C₁₈ column 21.4 mm x 25 cm, 5 m, 100 Å, using a gradient run of MeCN and water at 20 mL/min from 10% to 100% over 30 min followed by 100% MeCN for 20 min). The relevant fractions were
- 15 combined and concentrated to provide Compound 59 as a white solid. Yield: 13 mg (67%); ES-MS *m/z* 1287.2 [M+H]⁺, 1304.3 [M+NH₄]⁺; UV λ_{max} 215, 248 nm

EXAMPLE 16

PREPARATION OF COMPOUND 60



60

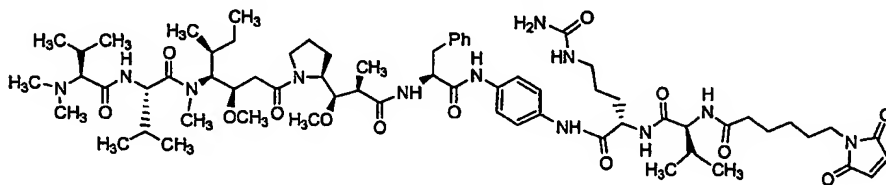
20

Compound 53 (9 mg, 10.8 μ mol) and Compound 28 (5.2 mg, 10.8 μ mol) were diluted with dichloromethane (1 mL) and to the resulting solution was added HATU (6.3 mg, 16.1 μ mol, 1.5 eq.), followed by pyridine (1.3 μ L, 16.1 μ mol, 1.5 eq.). The reaction mixture was allowed to stir under argon atmosphere while being monitored using HPLC. The reaction was complete after 6 h. The reaction mixture was concentrated and the resulting residue was diluted with DMSO. The DMSO solution was purified using reverse phase preparative-HPLC (Varian Dynamax column 21.4 mm x 25 cm, 5 μ , 100 Å, using a gradient run of MeCN and 0.1% TFA at 20 mL/min from 10% to 100% over 40 min followed by 100% MeCN for 20 min) and the relevant fractions were combined and concentrated to provide an off-white solid intermediate which was >95% pure according to HPLC.

The off-white solid intermediate was diluted with dichloromethane (2 mL) and the resulting solution was treated with TFA (0.5 mL). The reaction was monitored using HPLC, and was complete in 2 h. The reaction mixture was concentrated, and the resulting residue was diluted with DMSO and purified under the same conditions as described in Example 13. The relevant fractions were combined and concentrated to provide Compound 60 as an off-white powder. Yield: 14.9 mg (90%); ES-MS m/z 1304.6 $[M+H]^+$; UV λ_{max} 215, 275 nm.

EXAMPLE 17

PREPARATION OF COMPOUND 61



61

The trifluoroacetate salt of Compound 53 (0.37 g, 0.39 mmol, 1.0 eq.) and Compound 18 (0.30 g, 0.58 mmol, 1.5 eq.) were diluted with DMF (5 mL, 0.1 M), and to the resulting solution was added pyridine (95 μ L, 1.2 mmol, 3.0 eq.). HATU (0.23 g, 0.58 mmol, 1.5 eq.) was then added as a solid and the reaction mixture was allowed to stir under argon atmosphere while being monitored using HPLC. The reaction progressed slowly, and 4 h later, 1.0 eq. of diisopropylethylamine was added. Reaction was complete in 1 h. The reaction mixture was concentrated *in vacuo* and the resulting residue was purified using

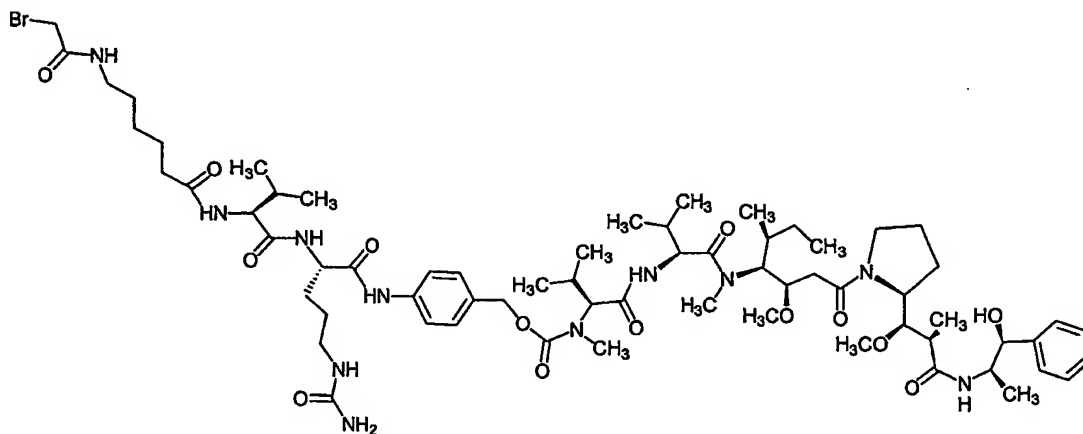
preparative-HPLC (Varian Dynamax C18 column 41.4 mm x 25 cm, 5 μ , 100 Å, using a gradient run of MeCN and 0.1% aqueous TFA at 45 mL/min from 10% to 100% over 40 min followed by 100% MeCN for 20 min) to provide a faint pink solid intermediate.

The pink solid intermediate was diluted with DMF (30 mL) and to the
5 resulting solution was added diethylamine (15 mL). Reaction was complete by HPLC in 2 h. The reaction mixture was concentrated and the resulting residue was washed twice with ether. The solid intermediate was dried under high vacuum and then used directly in the next step.

The solid intermediate was diluted with DMF (20 mL) and to the resulting
10 solution was added MC-OSu (0.12 g, 0.39 mmol, 1.0 eq.). After 4 d, the reaction mixture was concentrated to provide an oil which was purified using preparative-HPLC (Varian Dynamax C18 column 41.4 mm x 25 cm, 5 μ , 100 Å, using a gradient run of MeCN and 0.1% aqueous TFA at 45 mL/min from 10% to 100% over 40 min followed by 100% MeCN for 20 min). Compound 61 was isolated as a white flaky solid. Yield: 0.21 g (38%
15 overall); ES-MS m/z 1285.9 [M+H]⁺; 13.07.8 [M+Na]⁺; UV λ_{max} 215, 266 nm.

EXAMPLE 18

PREPARATION OF COMPOUND 62



62

20 Fmoc-val-cit-PAB-OCO-Pnp (19a) (0.65 g, 0.85 mmol, 1.1 eq.), Compound 49 (0.55 g, 0.77 mmol, 1.0 eq.), and HOBt (21 mg, 0.15 mmol, 2.0 eq.) were diluted with DMF (2.0 mL) and dissolved using sonication. To the resulting solution was added pyridine (0.5 mL) and the reaction was monitored using HPLC. After 24 h, diisopropylethylamine (1.0 eq.) was added and the reaction was allowed to stand without

stirring for 24 h. The reaction mixture was concentrated to provide an oil residue. The oil residue was purified using reverse phase preparative-HPLC (Varian Dynamax column 41.4 mm x 25 cm, 5 μ , 100 Å, using a gradient run of MeCN and 0.1% TFA at 45 mL/min from 10% to 100% over 40 min followed by 100% MeCN for 20 min.) The desired fractions
5 were pooled and concentrated to yield an oil that was precipitated with ether to provide an off-white solid intermediate. Yield: 0.77 g (74%); ES-MS m/z 1345.7 $[M+H]^+$; UV λ_{max} 215, 254 nm.

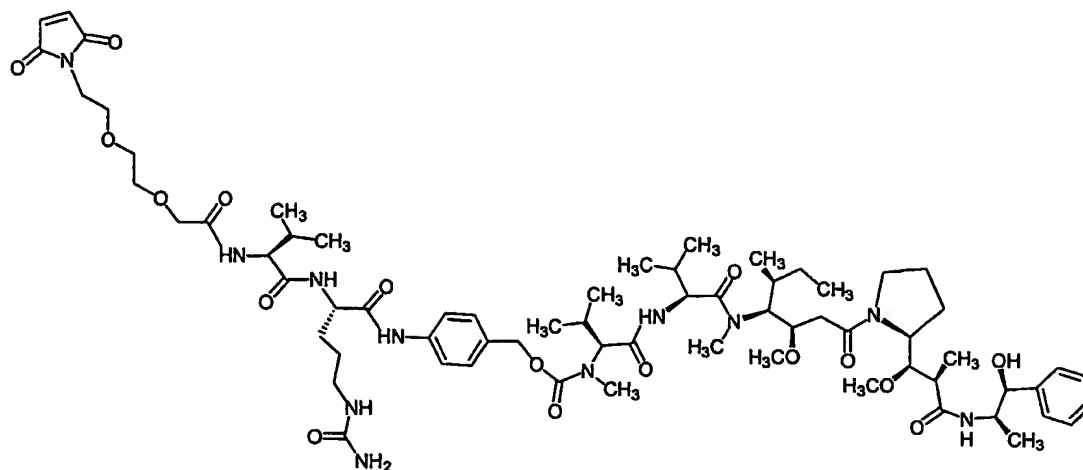
The off-white solid intermediate (about 85 mg) was deprotected using diethylamine (1 mL) in DMF (3 mL). After 1 h, the reaction was complete. The reaction
10 mixture was concentrated, and the resulting residue was precipitated in 1 mL of EtOAc followed by addition of excess ether (about 20 mL). The amine intermediate was filtered and dried under high vacuum and used in the next step without further purification.

The amine intermediate (70 mg, 61 μ mol, 1.0 eq.) was taken up in DMF (10 mL), and to the resulting solution was added sequentially, bromoacetamidocaproic acid (17
15 mg, 67 μ mol, 1.1 eq.), PyBrop (32 mg, 67 μ mol, 1.1 eq.), and diisopropylethylamine (16 μ L, 92 μ mol, 1.5 eq.). After 24 h, an additional 1.0 eq. of bromoacetamidocaproic acid was added. Reaction was stopped after 30 h. The reaction mixture was concentrated to an oil and the oil purified using reverse phase preparative-HPLC (Synergi MaxRP C₁₂ column 21.4 mm x 25 cm, 5 μ , 80 Å, using a gradient run of MeCN and 0.1% TFA at 20 mL/min
20 from 10% to 100% over 40 min followed by 100% MeCN for 20 min.). The relevant fractions were combined and concentrated to provide Compound 62 as a white solid. Yield: 23mg (27%); ES-MS m/z 1356.7 $[M+H]^+$; UV λ_{max} 215, 247 nm.

25

30

EXAMPLE 19
PREPARATION OF COMPOUND 63



63

5 Fmoc-val-cit-PAB-OC(O)-Me-val-val-dil-dap-nor (about 48 mg, obtained according to Example 18) was subjected to Fmoc-removal by treating with diethylamine (1 mL) in DMF (3 mL). After 1 h, the reaction was complete. The reaction mixture was concentrated and the resulting residue was precipitated using 1 mL of EtOAc followed by addition of excess ether (about 20 mL). The amine intermediate was filtered and dried
10 under high vacuum and used in the next step without further purification.

The amine intermediate (35 μ mol, 1.1 eq.) was diluted with DMF (2 mL), and to the resulting solution was added sequentially maleimido-PEG acid (Frisch, B.; Boeckler, C.; Schuber, F. *Bioconjugate Chem.* 1996, 7, 180-6; 7.8 mg, 32 μ mol, 1.0 eq.), DEPC (10.7 μ L, 64 μ mol, 2.0 eq.), and diisopropylethylamine (11.3 μ L, 64 μ mol, 2.0 eq.).
15 The reaction was complete in 15 min according to HPLC. The reaction mixture was concentrated to provide an oil. The oil was diluted with 1 mL of DMSO and purified using reverse phase preparative-HPLC (Synergi MaxRP C₁₂ column 21.4 mm x 25 cm, 5 μ , 80 Å, using a gradient run of MeCN and 0.1% TFA at 20 mL/min from 10% to 100% over 40 min followed by 100% MeCN for 20 min). The relevant fractions were combined and
20 concentrated to provide Compound 63 as a white solid.

Yield: 16.2 mg (34%); ES-MS m/z 1348.6 $[M+H]^+$; UV λ_{max} 215, 247 nm.

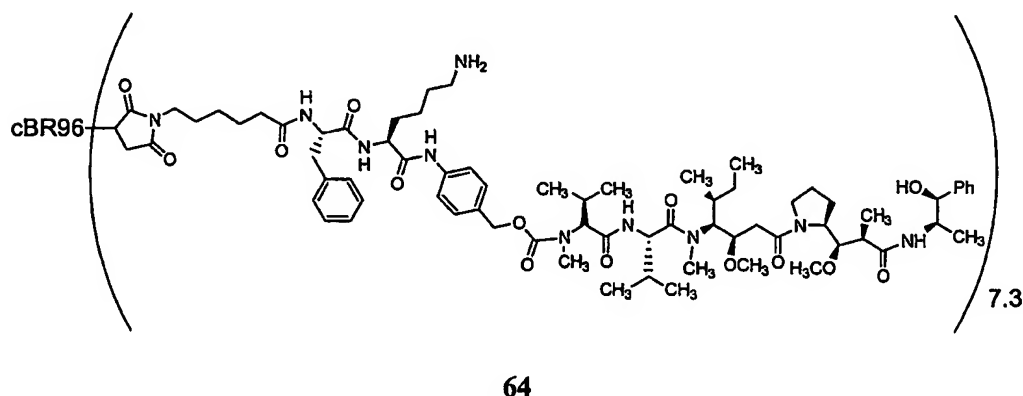
Examples 20-25 describe the conjugation of the monoclonal antibodies cBR96 and cAC10 to a Drug-Linker Compound. These antibodies were obtained as

described in Bowen, et al., *J. Immunol.* 1993, 151, 5896; and Trail, et al., *Science* 1993, 261, 212, respectively.

The number of Drug-Linker moities per Ligand in a Drug-Linker-Ligand Conjugate varies from conjugation reaction to conjugation reaction, but typically ranges from about 7 to about 9, particularly when the Ligand is cBR96 or cAC10.

EXAMPLE 20

PREPARATION OF COMPOUND 64



cBR96 Antibody (24 mg) was reduced using DTT as described in General Procedure L, then the number of thiols per antibody and the antibody concentration were determined as described in General Procedure M and General Procedure N, respectively.

Result: $[Ab] = 4.7 \text{ mg/mL} = 29.4 \text{ } \mu\text{M}$; $[\text{thiol}] = 265 \text{ } \mu\text{M}$; $\text{SH}/\text{Ab} = 9.0$
(Typical SH/Ab range is from about 7.8 to about 9.5).

15 Conjugation:

A solution of PBS/DTPA (2.2 mL) as defined above herein, was added to 4.2 mL of reduced antibody and the resulting solution was cooled to 0°C using an ice bath. In a separate flask, a 130.5 μL stock solution of Compound 57 (8.4 mM in DMSO, 8.5 mol Compound 57 per mol reduced antibody) was diluted with MeCN (1.48 mL, pre-chilled to 0 °C in an ice bath). The MeCN solution of Compound 57 was rapidly added to the antibody solution and the reaction mixture was stirred using a vortex instrument for 5-10 sec., returned to the ice bath and allowed to stir at 0 °C for 1 hr, after which time 218 μL of a cysteine solution (100 mM in PBS/DTPA) was then added to quench the reaction. 60 μL of the quenched reaction mixture was saved as a "qrm" sample.

While the reaction proceeded, three PD10 columns (Sephadex G25, available from Sigma-Aldrich, St. Louis, Mo.) were placed in a cold room and equilibrated with PBS (which had been pre-cooled to 0 °C using an ice bath).

The quenched reaction mixture, which contained Compound 64, was concentrated to ≤ 3 mL by ultracentrifugation using two Ultrafree 4 centrifuge filtering devices (30K molecular weight cutoff membrane; Millipore Corp.; Bedford, MA; used according to manufacturer's instructions) which were pre-cooled to 4 °C in a refrigerator and the concentrated reaction mixture was eluted through the three pre-chilled PD10 columns using PBS as the eluent (1 mL for each column). The eluted conjugate was collected in a volume of 1.4 mL per column, for a total eluted volume of 4.2 mL. The eluted Conjugate solution was then filtered using a sterile 0.2 micron syringe-end filter, 250 μ L of Conjugate solution was set aside for analysis, and the remainder of the Conjugate solution was frozen in sterile vials.

The concentration of Compound 64, the number of Drug molecules per Antibody, the amount of quenched Drug-Linker and the percent of aggregates were determined using General Procedures P, N, O and Q, respectively.

Assay Results:

[Compound 64] = 3.8 mg/mLg

% Aggregate = trace

Residual Thiol Titration : Residual thiols = 1.7/Ab. Drug/Ab $\sim 9.0 - 1.7 =$

7.3

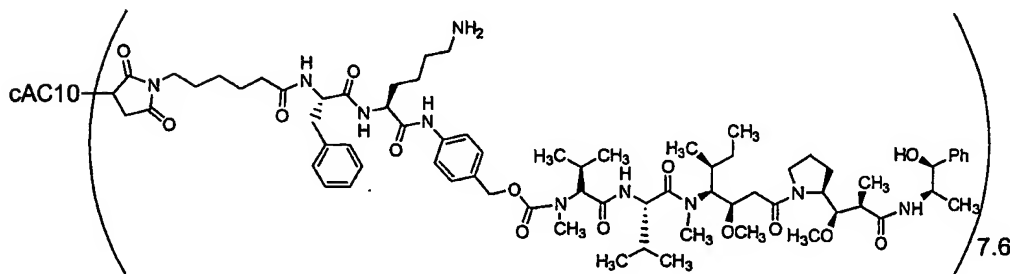
Quenched Drug-Linker: undetectable

Yield: 4.2 mL, 16 mg, 66 %.

EXAMPLE 21

25

PREPARATION OF COMPOUND 65



65

cAC10 Antibody (24 mg) was reduced using DTT as described in General Procedure L, then the number of thiols per antibody and the antibody concentration were determined as described in General Procedure M and General Procedure N, respectively.

Results: [Ab] = 4.9 mg/mL = 30.7 μ M;

5 [thiol] = 283 μ M; 9.2 SH/Ab

Conjugation:

A solution of PBS/DTPA (2.2 mL) as defined above herein, was added to 4.2 mL of reduced antibody and the resulting solution was cooled to 0°C using an ice bath. In a separate flask, 125 μ L of a stock solution of Compound 57 (8.4 mM in DMSO, 8.5 mol Compound 57 per mol reduced antibody) was diluted with MeCN (1.48 mL, pre-chilled to 0 °C in an ice bath). The MeCN solution of Compound 57 was rapidly added to the antibody solution and the reaction mixture was stirred using a vortex instrument for 5-10 sec., then returned to the ice bath and allowed to stir at 0 °C for 1 hr, after which time 218 μ L of a cysteine solution (100 mM in PBS/DTPA) was then added to quench the reaction. 60 μ L of the quenched reaction mixture was saved as a "qrm" sample.

While the reaction proceeded, four PD10 columns (Sephadex G25, available from Sigma-Aldrich, St. Louis, Mo.) were placed in a cold room and equilibrated with PBS (which had been pre-cooled to 0 °C using an ice bath).

The quenched reaction mixture, which contained Compound 65, was concentrated to \leq 3 mL by ultracentrifugation using two Ultrafree 4 centrifuge filtering devices (30K molecular weight cutoff membrane; Millipore Corp.; Bedford, MA; used according to manufacturer's instructions) which were pre-cooled to 4 °C in a refrigerator and the concentrated reaction mixture was eluted through the four pre-chilled PD10 columns using PBS as the eluent (1 mL for each column). The eluted conjugate was collected in a volume of 1.4 mL per column, for a total eluted volume of 5.6 mL. The eluted Conjugate solution was then filtered using a sterile 0.2 micron syringe-end filter, 250 μ L of Conjugate solution was set aside for analysis, and the remainder of the Conjugate solution was frozen in sterile vials.

The concentration of Compound 65, the number of Drug molecules per Antibody, the amount of quenched Drug-Linker and the percent of aggregates were then determined using General Procedures P, N, O and Q, respectively.

Assay Results:

[Compound 65] = 2.8 mg/mL

% Aggregate = trace

Residual Thiol Titration : Residual thiols = 1.6/Ab. Drug/Ab ~ 9.2 - 1.6 =

7.6

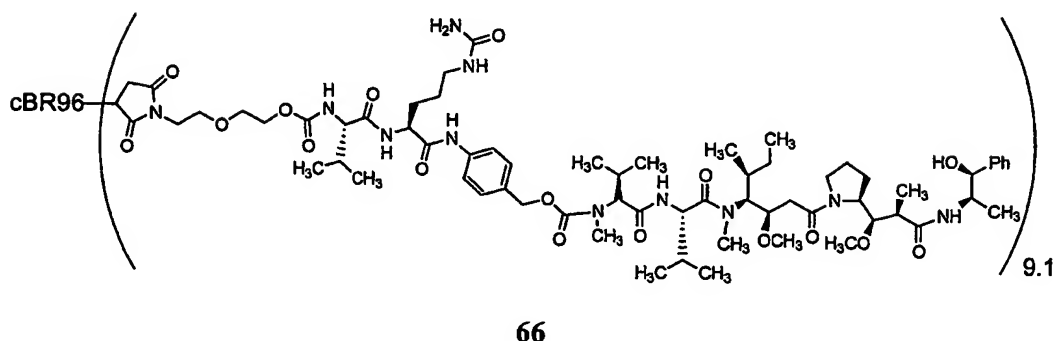
Not covalently bound Drug-Linker: undetectable

5

Yield: 5.6 mL, 15.7 mg, 65 %.

EXAMPLE 22

PREPARATION OF COMPOUND 66



10 cBR96 Antibody (24 mg) was reduced using DTT as described in General Procedure L, then the number of thiols per antibody and the antibody concentration were determined as described in General Procedure M and General Procedure N, respectively.

Result: $[Ab] = 3.7 \text{ mg/mL} = 23.1 \text{ }\mu\text{M}$; $[\text{thiol}] = 218 \text{ }\mu\text{M}$; 9.4 SH/Ab

15 Conjugation:

A solution of PBS/DTPA (2.2 mL) as defined above herein, was added to 4.2 mL of reduced antibody and the resulting solution was cooled to 0°C using an ice bath. In a separate flask, 145.5 µL of a stock solution of Compound 58 (8.3 mM in DMSO, 9.0 mol Compound 58 per mol reduced antibody) was diluted with MeCN (1.48 mL, pre-chilled to 0 °C in an ice bath). The MeCN solution of Compound 58 was rapidly added to the antibody solution and the reaction mixture was stirred using a vortex instrument for 5-10 sec., then returned to the ice bath and allowed to stir at 0 °C for 1 hr, after which time 249 µL of a cysteine solution (100 mM in PBS/DTPA) was then added to quench the reaction. 60 µL of the quenched reaction mixture was saved as a “qrm” sample.

25 While the reaction proceeded, three PD10 columns (Sephadex G25, available from Sigma-Aldrich, St. Louis, Mo.) were placed in a cold room and equilibrated with PBS (which had been pre-cooled to 0 °C using an ice bath).

The quenched reaction mixture, which contained Compound 66, was concentrated to ≤ 3 mL by ultracentrifugation using two Ultrafree 4 centrifuge filtering devices (30K molecular weight cutoff membrane; Millipore Corp.; Bedford, MA; used according to manufacturer's instructions) which were pre-cooled to 4 °C in a refrigerator and the concentrated reaction mixture was eluted through the three pre-chilled PD10 columns using PBS as the eluent (1 mL for each column). The eluted conjugate was collected in a volume of 1.4 mL per column, for a total eluted volume of 4.2 mL. The eluted Conjugate solution was then filtered using a sterile 0.2 micron syringe-end filter, 250 μ L of Conjugate solution was set aside for analysis, and the remainder of the Conjugate solution was frozen in sterile vials.

The concentration of Compound 66, the number of Drug molecules per Antibody, the amount of quenched Drug-Linker and the percent of aggregates were determined using General Procedures P, N, O and Q, respectively.

Assay Results:

[Compound 66] = 3.0 mg/mL

% Aggregate = trace

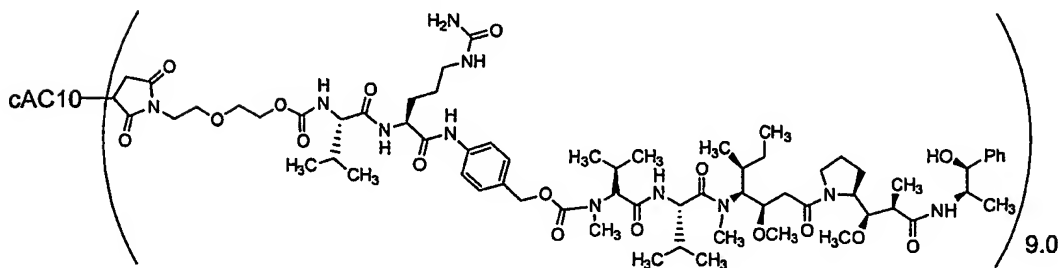
Residual Thiol Titration : Residual thiols = 0.4/Ab. Drug/Ab $\sim 9.5 - 0.4 = 9.1$

Not covalently bound Drug-Linker: 0.3 % of 57-Cys adduct

Yield: 5.3 mL, 15.9 mg, 66 %.

EXAMPLE 23

PREPARATION OF COMPOUND 67



67

cAC10 Antibody (24 mg) was reduced using DTT as described in General Procedure L, then the number of thiols per antibody and the antibody concentration were determined as described in General Procedure M and General Procedure N, respectively.

Result: [Ab] = 3.9 mg/mL = 24.5 μ M; [thiol] = 227 μ M; 9.3 SH/Ab

5

Conjugation:

A solution of PBS/DTPA (2.2 mL) as defined above herein, was added to 4.2 mL of reduced antibody and the resulting solution was cooled to 0°C using an ice bath. In a separate flask, 154.4 μ L of a stock solution of Compound 58 (8.3 mM in DMSO, 9.0 mol Compound 58 per mol reduced antibody) was diluted with MeCN (1.46 mL, pre-chilled to 0 °C in an ice bath). The MeCN solution of Compound 58 was rapidly added to the antibody solution and the reaction mixture was stirred using a vortex instrument for 5-10 sec., then returned to the ice bath and allowed to stir at 0 °C for 1 hr, after which time 249 μ L of a cysteine solution (100 mM in PBS/DTPA) was then added to quench the reaction. 60 μ L of the quenched reaction mixture was saved as a "qrm" sample.

15

While the reaction proceeded, four PD10 columns (Sephadex G25, available from Sigma-Aldrich, St. Louis, Mo.) were placed in a cold room and equilibrated with PBS (which had been pre-cooled to 0 °C using an ice bath).

The quenched reaction mixture, which contained Compound 67, was concentrated to \leq 3 mL by ultracentrifugation using two Ultrafree 4 centrifuge filtering devices (30K molecular weight cutoff membrane; Millipore Corp.; Bedford, MA; used according to manufacturer's instructions) which were pre-cooled to 4 °C in a refrigerator and the concentrated reaction mixture was eluted through the four pre-chilled PD10 columns using PBS as the eluent (1 mL for each column). The eluted conjugate was collected in a volume of 1.4 mL per column, for a total eluted volume of 5.6 mL. The eluted Conjugate solution was then filtered using a sterile 0.2 micron syringe-end filter, 250 μ L of Conjugate solution was set aside for analysis, and the remainder of the Conjugate solution was frozen in sterile vials.

The concentration of Compound 67, the number of Drug molecules per Antibody, the amount of quenched Drug-Linker and the percent of aggregates were determined using General Procedures P, N, O and Q, respectively.

30

Assay Results:

[Compound 67] = 3.0 mg/mL

% Aggregate = trace

Residual Thiol Titration : Residual thiols = 0.5/Ab. Drug/Ab ~ 9.5 - 0.5 = 9.0

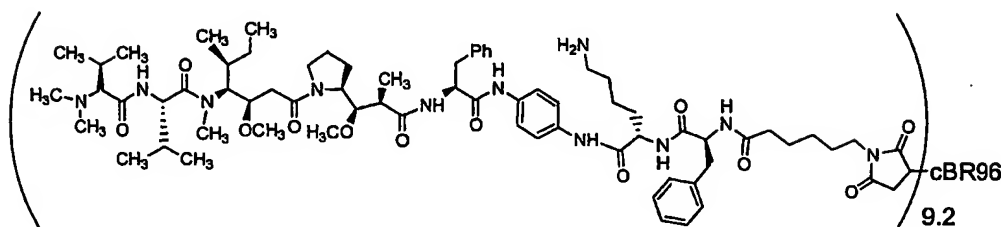
Quenched Drug-Linker: 1.1 % of 58-Cys adduct

Yield: 5.3 mL, 15.9 mg, 66 %.

5

EXAMPLE 24

PREPARATION OF COMPOUND 68



68

10 cBR96 Antibody (24 mg) was reduced using DTT as described in General Procedure L, then the number of thiols per antibody and the antibody concentration were determined as described in General Procedure M and General Procedure N, respectively.

Result: [Ab] = 4.4 mg/mL = 27.2 μ M; [thiol] = 277 μ M; 10.2 SH/Ab

Conjugation:

15 The reduced antibody was diluted with DMSO (1.47 mL, pre-chilled to 0 °C in an ice bath) so that the resulting solution was 20% DMSO. The solution was allowed to stir for 10 min. at 0 °C, then 127.8 μ L of a stock solution of Compound 60 (7.6 mM solution in DMSO; 9 mol Compound 60 per mol antibody) was rapidly added. The reaction mixture was immediately stirred using a vortex instrument and return to the ice bath and
20 allowed to stir at 0 °C for 1 hr, after which time 213 μ L of a cysteine solution (100 mM in PBS/DTPA) was then added to quench the reaction. 60 μ L of the quenched reaction mixture was saved as a "qrm" sample.

While the reaction proceeded, four PD10 columns (Sephadex G25, available from Sigma-Aldrich, St. Louis, Mo.) were placed in a cold room and equilibrated with PBS
25 (which had been pre-cooled to 0 °C using an ice bath).

The quenched reaction mixture, which contained Compound 68, was concentrated to ≤ 3 mL by ultracentrifugation using two Ultrafree 4 centrifuge filtering devices (30K molecular weight cutoff membrane; Millipore Corp.; Bedford, MA; used

according to manufacturer's instructions) which were pre-cooled to 4 °C in a refrigerator and the concentrated reaction mixture was eluted through the four pre-chilled PD10 columns using PBS as the eluent (1 mL for each column). The eluted conjugate was collected in a volume of 1.4 mL per column, for a total eluted volume of 5.6 mL. The eluted

5 Conjugate solution was then filtered using a sterile 0.2 micron syringe-end filter, 250 μ L of Conjugate solution was set aside for analysis, and the remainder of the Conjugate solution was frozen in sterile vials.

The concentration of Compound 68, the number of Drug molecules per Antibody, the amount of quenched Drug-Linker and the percent of aggregates were

10 determined using General Procedures P, N, O and Q, respectively.

Because the absorbances of Compound 60 and antibody largely overlap, spectrophotometric determination of the conjugate concentration requires the measurement of absorbance at 270 and 280 nm. The molar concentration of conjugate is given by the following formula:

15
$$[\text{Conjugate}] = (\text{OD}_{280} \times 1.08\text{e}^{-5} - \text{OD}_{270} \times 8.20\text{e}^{-6}) \times \text{dilution factor},$$
 where the values 1.08e^{-5} and 8.20e^{-6} are calculated from the molar extinction coefficients of the drug and the antibody, which are estimated as:

$$\epsilon_{270} \text{ Compound 60} = 2.06\text{e}4$$

$$\epsilon_{270} \text{ cBR96} = 1.87\text{e}5$$

$$\epsilon_{280} \text{ Compound 60} = 1.57\text{e}4$$

$$\epsilon_{280} \text{ cBR96} = 2.24\text{e}5$$

Assay Results:

20 $[\text{Compound 68}] = 3.2 \text{ mg/mL}$

% Aggregate = trace

Residual Thiol Titration : Residual thiols = 1.0/Ab. Drug/Ab $\sim 10.2 - 1.0 =$

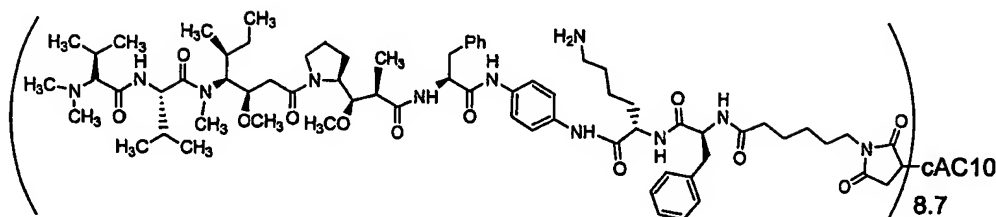
9.2

Quenched Drug-Linker: trace

25 Yield: 5.6 mL, 17.9 mg, 75 %.

EXAMPLE 25

PREPARATION OF COMPOUND 69



69

5 cAC10 Antibody (24 mg) was reduced using DTT as described in General Procedure L, then the number of thiols per antibody and the antibody concentration were determined as described in General Procedure M and General Procedure N, respectively.

Result: [Ab] = 4.8 mg/mL = 29.8 μ M; [thiol] = 281 μ M; 9.4 SH/Ab

Conjugation:

10 The reduced antibody was diluted with DMSO (1.47 mL, pre-chilled to 0 °C in an ice bath) so that the resulting solution was 20% DMSO. The solution was allowed to stir for 10 min. at 0 °C, then 140 μ L of a stock solution of Compound 60 (7.6 mM solution in DMSO; 8.5 mol Compound 60 per mol antibody) was rapidly added. The reaction mixture was immediately stirred using a vortex instrument and return to the ice bath and
15 allowed to stir for 1 hr at 0 °C, after which time 213 μ L of a cysteine solution (100 mM in PBS/DTPA) was then added to quench the reaction. 60 μ L of the quenched reaction mixture was saved as a "qrm" sample.

20 While the reaction proceeded, four PD10 columns (Sephadex G25, available from Sigma-Aldrich, St. Louis, Mo.) were placed in a cold room and equilibrated with PBS (which had been pre-cooled to 0 °C using an ice bath).

25 The quenched reaction mixture, which contained Compound 69, was concentrated to ≤ 3 mL by ultracentrifugation using two Ultrafree 4 centrifuge filtering devices (30K molecular weight cutoff membrane; Millipore Corp.; Bedford, MA; used according to manufacturer's instructions) which were pre-cooled to 4 °C in a refrigerator and the concentrated reaction mixture was eluted through the four pre-chilled PD10 columns using PBS as the eluent (1 mL for each column). The eluted conjugate was collected in a volume of 1.4 mL per column, for a total eluted volume of 5.6 mL. The eluted Conjugate solution was then filtered using a sterile 0.2 micron syringe-end filter, 250 μ L of

Conjugate solution was set aside for analysis, and the remainder of the Conjugate solution was frozen in sterile vials.

The concentration of Compound 69, the number of Drug molecules per Antibody, the amount of quenched Drug-Linker and the percent of aggregates were determined using General Procedures P, N, O and Q, respectively.

Because the absorbances of Compound 60 and antibody largely overlap, spectrophotometric determination of the conjugate concentration requires the measurement of absorbance at 270 and 280 nm. The molar concentration of conjugate is given by the following formula:

$$[\text{Conjugate}] = (\text{OD}_{280} \times 1.08\text{e}^{-5} - \text{OD}_{270} \times 8.20\text{e}^{-6}) \times \text{dilution factor},$$

where the values 1.08e^{-5} and 8.20e^{-6} are calculated from the molar extinction coefficients of the drug and the antibody, which are estimated as:

$$\begin{array}{ll} \epsilon_{270} \text{ Compound 60} = 2.06\text{e}^4 & \epsilon_{270} \text{ cAC10} = 2.10\text{e}^5 \\ \epsilon_{280} \text{ Compound 60} = 1.57\text{e}^4 & \epsilon_{280} \text{ cAC10} = 2.53\text{e}^5 \end{array}$$

15 Assay Results:

[Compound 69] = 3.0 mg/mL

% Aggregate = trace

Residual Thiol Titration : Residual thiols = 0.7/Ab. Drug/Ab ~ 9.4 - 0.7 =

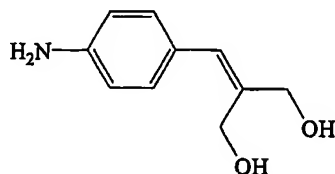
8.7

20 Quenched Drug-Linker: trace

Yield: 5.6 mL, 16.8 mg, 70 %.

EXAMPLE 26

PREPARATION OF COMPOUND 75



75

Diethyl (4-nitrobenzyl)phosphonate (1.1 g, 4.02 mmol) was diluted in anhydrous THF (4 mL) and the resulting mixture was cooled to 0°C. Sodium hydride (0.17 g, 4.22 mmol, 1.05 eq., 60 % dispersion in mineral oil) was added and the resulting reaction was allowed to stir for 5 min. At this time gas evolution from the reaction mixture had

5 ceased. 2,2-Dimethyl-1,3-dioxan-5-one (0.52 g, 4.02 mmol) in 1 mL of anhydrous THF was then added to the reaction mixture via syringe and the reaction was allowed to warm to room temperature with stirring. Additional THF (1 mL) was added after 30 min to help dilute the resulting precipitate and the resulting mixture was stirred for an additional 30 min., was transferred to a separatory funnel containing EtOAc (10 mL) and water (10 mL).

10 The organic phase was collected, washed with brine, and the combined aqueous extracts were washed with ethyl acetate (2x). The combined organic extracts were dried over MgSO₄, filtered, and concentrated to provide a dark red crude oil that was purified using flash chromatography on a silica gel column (300 × 25 mm) and eluting with 9:1 hexanes-EtOAc to provide a pale yellow solid intermediate. Yield: 0.57 g (57%); R_f 0.24 (9:1

15 hexanes-EtOAc); UV λ_{max} 225, 320 nm. ¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ 8.19 (2 H, d, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.24 (2 H, d, J = 8.4 Hz), 6.33 (1 H, s), 4.62 (2 H, s), 4.42 (2 H, s), 1.45 (6 H, s). ¹³C NMR (CDCl₃) δ 146.6, 142.7, 141.3, 129.4, 123.9, 121.1, 99.9, 64.4, 60.8, 24.1.

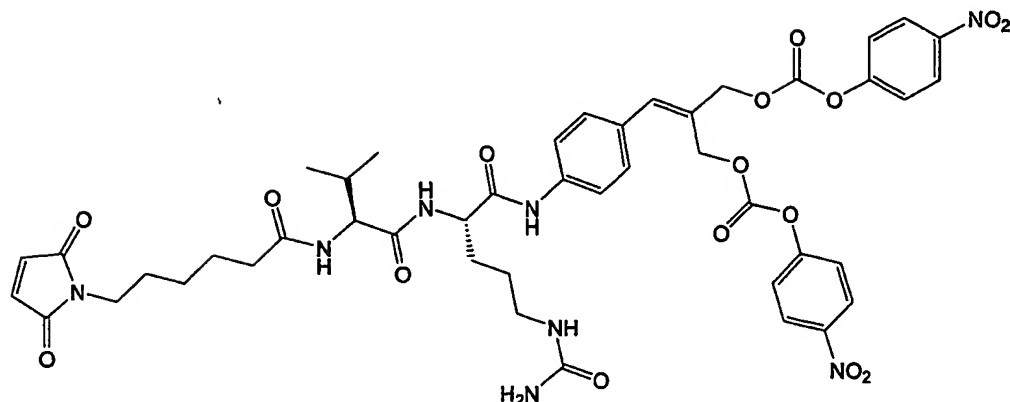
The pale yellow solid intermediate (0.25 g, 1.0 mmol) was diluted using THF (20 mL), the resulting mixture was treated with 1 N HCl (10 mL) and allowed to stir

20 for 5 min. To the reaction mixture was added diethyl ether (150 mL) and water and the resulting mixture was transferred to a separatory funnel. The organic layer was dried (MgSO₄), filtered and concentrated to give an oil. The resulting diol was then taken up in THF-methanol (1:1, 4 mL each, 0.3 M) followed by the addition of Raney Nickel (100 μL, 100 μL/mmol nitro-group, 50% slurry in water) and hydrazine (74 μL, 1.5 eq.). Gas

25 evolution occurred while the reaction mixture was heated to 50-60°C. After 30 min and 1 h, 1.5 eq. of hydrazine was added each time. The yellow mixture was filtered through celite and washed with methanol. The filtrate was concentrated to provide Compound 75 as an oil which later crystallized to a yellow solid. Yield: 0.14 g (78 %); UV λ_{max} 215, 260 nm.

30 ¹H NMR (DMSO) δ 7.00 (2 H, d, J = 8.4 Hz), 6.51 (2 H, d, J = 8.4 Hz), 6.33 (1 H, s), 5.20 (2 H, bs), 4.64 (2 H, bd), 4.04 (2 H, s). ¹³C NMR (DMSO) δ 147.2, 138.1, 129.6, 126.1, 124.6, 113.7, 63.6, 57.5.

EXAMPLE 27
PREPARATION OF COMPOUND 79



79

5 To a mixture of Compound 75 (BHMS, 0.12 g, 0.67 mmol) in methanol-dichloromethane (1:2, 4.5 mL total) was added Fmoc-Val-Cit (0.33 g, 0.67 mmol) followed by EEDQ (0.25 g, 1.0 mmol, 1.5 eq.) and the resulting reaction was allowed to stir for 15 hours under inert atmosphere. Additional EEDQ (1.5 eq.) and Fmoc-Val-Cit (1.0 eq.) were then added due to the presence of unreacted BHMS and the resulting reaction was allowed to stir for 2 days and concentrated. The resulting residue was triturated using ether to provide a tan solid intermediate. ES-MS m/z 659 $[M+H]^+$, 681 $[M+Na]^+$; UV λ_{max} 215, 270 nm. ¹H NMR (DMSO) δ 10.04 (1 H, s), 8.10 (1 H, d, $J=7.2$ Hz), 7.87 (2 H, d, $J=7.6$ Hz), 7.72 (2 H, t, $J=7.6$ Hz), 7.55 (2 H, d, $J=8.4$ Hz), 7.37-7.43 (3 H, m), 7.30 (2 H, t, $J=7.2$ Hz), 7.24 (2 H, d, $J=8.4$ Hz), 6.47 (1 H, s), 5.96 (1 H, t, $J=5.2$ Hz), 5.39 (1 H, s), 4.83 (1 H, t, $J=5.2$ Hz), 4.78 (1 H, t, $J=5.2$ Hz), 4.40 (1 H, dd, $J=5.2, 8.0$ Hz), 4.20-4.30 (3 H, m), 4.11 (2 H, d, $J=4.4$ Hz), 4.04 (2 H, d, $J=5.2$ Hz), 3.91 (1 H, t, $J=7.2$ Hz), 2.84-3.06 (2 H, m), 1.91-2.03 (1 H, m), 1.29-1.74 (4 H, m), 0.86 (3 H, d, $J=6.8$ Hz), 0.84 (3 H, d, $J=6.8$ Hz).

20 The tan solid intermediate was diluted with DMF (10 mL) and the resulting mixture was treated with diethylamine (5 mL), allowed to stir for 1 hour and concentrated to provide a tan solid which was dried under high vacuum for 3 days. The tan solid was triturated using EtOAc (10 mL) and further precipitated using ether (80 mL) to provide a crude residue which was filtered through a sintered glass funnel and dried *in vacuo* to afford a light tan intermediate. ES-MS m/z 436 $[M+H]^+$, 458 $[M+Na]^+$; UV λ_{max} 215, 270 nm.

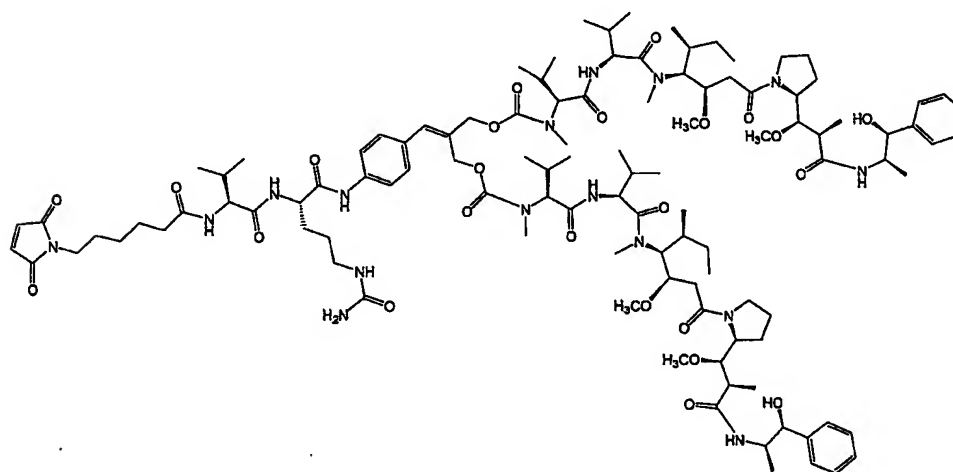
25 The light tan intermediate was diluted with DMF (10 mL) and treated with 6-maleimidocaproic acid hydroxysuccinimide ester (0.16 g, 0.53 mmol, 1 eq.). The reaction

was allowed to stir for 18 h, additional diisopropylethylamine (1.0 eq) was added followed by additional 6-maleimidocaproic acid hydroxysuccinimide ester (0.5 eq.). The resulting reaction was allowed to stir for 4 hours, after which time, HPLC indicated that the starting material had been consumed. The reaction mixture was concentrated to provide a crude residue that was triturated using EtOAc (10 mL) and then further precipitated using ether (75 mL). The precipitate was and dried overnight to provide a tan/orange powdered intermediate. Overall yield: 0.42 g (quant.). ES-MS m/z 629 $[M+H]^+$, 651 $[M+Na]^+$; UV λ_{max} 215, 270 nm.

The tan/orange powdered intermediate (0.40 g, 0.64 mmol) was partially dissolved in DMF (20 mL) and to the resulting mixture was added bis(4-nitrophenyl) carbonate (0.98 g, 3.2 mmol, 5.0 eq.) and diisopropylethylamine (0.45 mL, 2.5 mmol, 4.0 eq.). The resulting reaction was allowed to stir for about 4 hours, after which time, HPLC monitoring indicated that no starting material remained and that the reaction mixture contained 2 products in a 3:2 ratio (the desired bis-carbonate and the 1,3-dioxan-2-one, respectively). The reaction mixture was concentrated and the resulting residue was triturated using EtOAc (10 mL), then further precipitated using ether (80 mL) in a one-pot manner. The EtOAc-ether mixture was filtered and the solid was dried to provide Compound 79 as a tan powder which was used without further purification.

EXAMPLE 28

PREPARATION OF COMPOUND 80



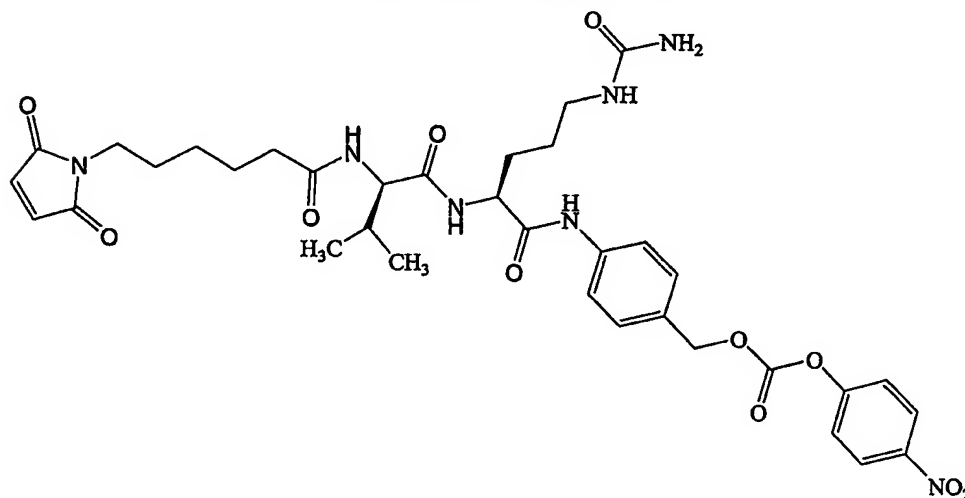
80

Compound 49 (202 mg, 0.22 mmol, 2.0 eq., 80% pure) and Compound 79 (180 mg, 0.11 mmol, 1.0 eq., 60% pure) were suspended in dry DMF (2 mL, 0.1 M) and to

the resulting mixture was added HOBt (3 mg, 22 μ mol, 0.2 eq.) followed by pyridine (400 μ L, $\frac{1}{4}$ v/v DMF). The resulting reaction was allowed to stir for 16 h, diluted with DMSO (2 mL) and the resulting mixture was purified using preparative HPLC (C_{18} -RP column, 5 μ , 100 Å, linear gradient of MeCN in water 10 to 100 % in 40 min followed by 20 min at 100 %, at a flow rate of 50 mL/min) to provide Compound 80 as a white solid. Yield: 70 mg (18%). MALDI-TOF MS m/z 2138.9 $[M+Na]^+$, 2154.9 $[M+K]^+$.

EXAMPLE 29

PREPARATION OF COMPOUND 81

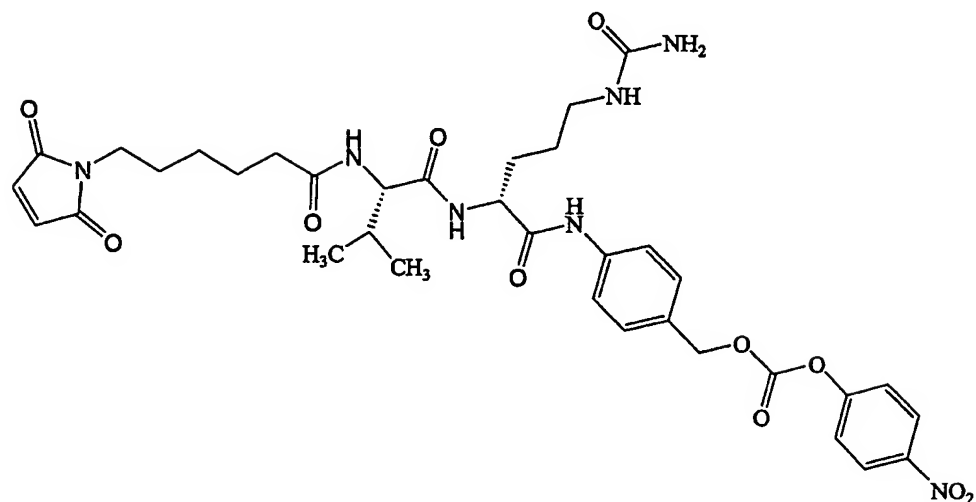


81

Compound 81 was made using the method described in Example 1 and substituting Fmoc-(D)-val-(L)-cit-PAB-OH for Compound 19.

EXAMPLE 30

PREPARATION OF COMPOUND 82



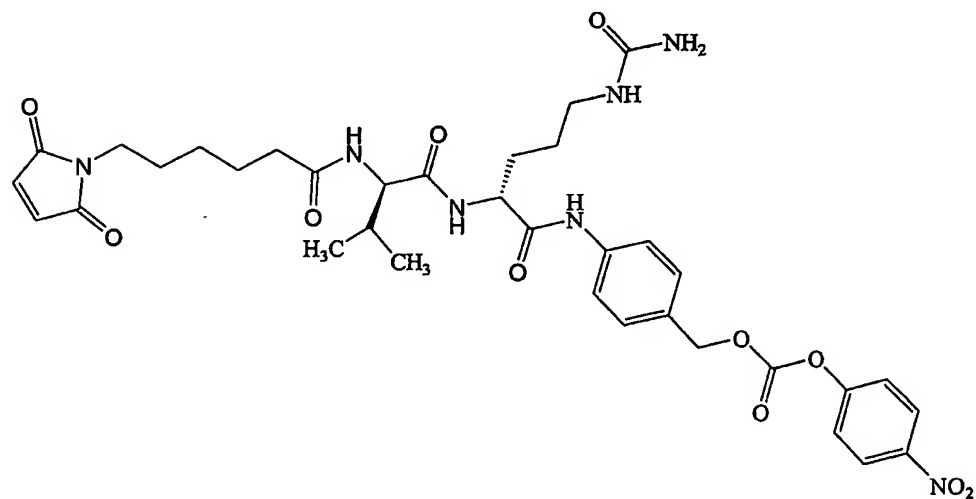
82

5 Compound 82 was made using the method described in Example 1 and substituting Fmoc-(L)-val-(D)-cit-PAB-OH for Compound 19.

EXAMPLE 31

PREPARATION OF COMPOUND 83

10

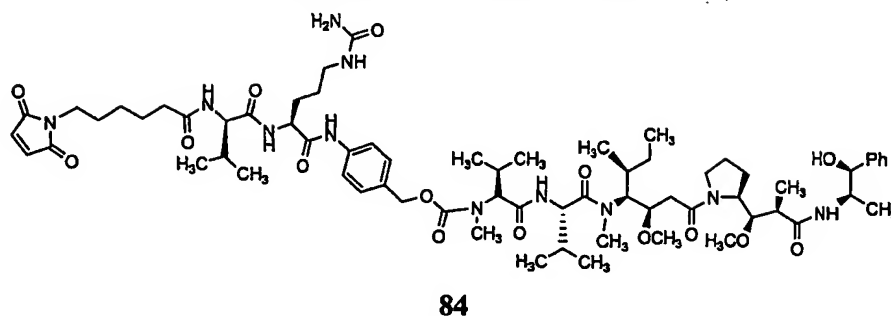


83

15 Compound 83 was made using the method described in Example 1 and substituting Fmoc-(D)-val-(D)-cit-PAB-OH for Compound 19.

EXAMPLE 32

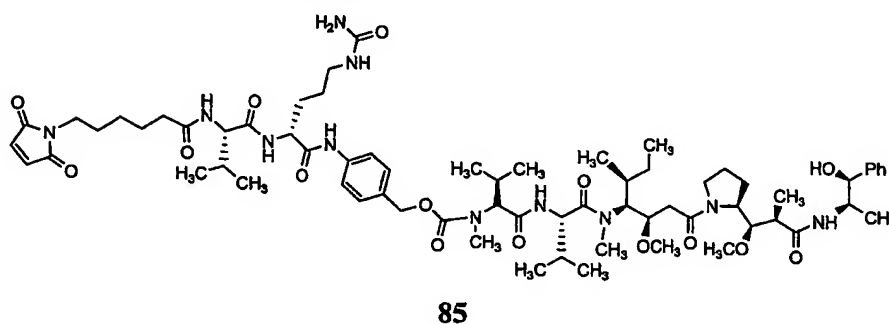
PREPARATION OF COMPOUND 84



- 5 Compound 84 was made using the method described in Example 14 and substituting Compound 81 for Compound 21.

EXAMPLE 33

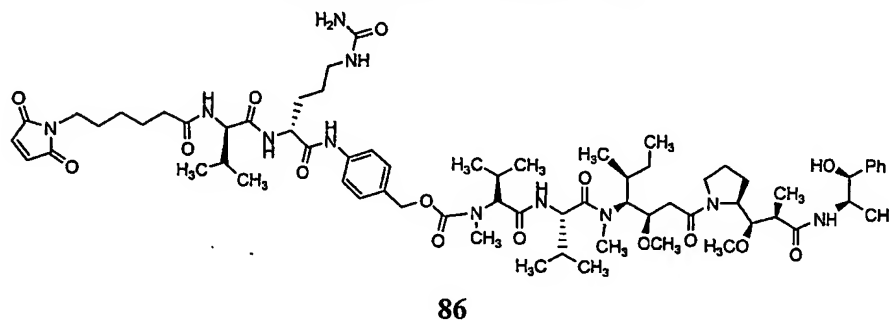
PREPARATION OF COMPOUND 85



- 10 Compound 85 was made using the method described in Example 14 and substituting Compound 82 for Compound 21.

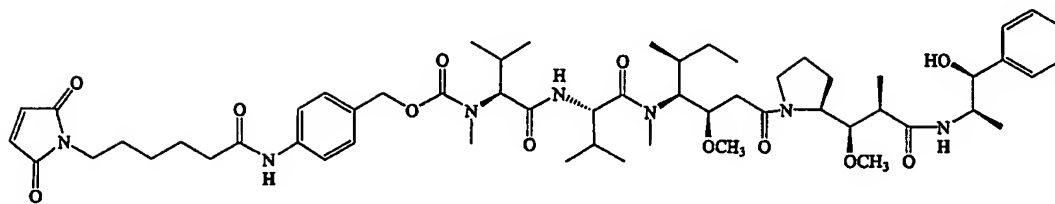
EXAMPLE 34

PREPARATION OF COMPOUND 86



- 15 Compound 86 was made using the method described in Example 14 and substituting Compound 83 for Compound 21.
- 20

EXAMPLE 35
PREPARATION OF COMPOUND 87



5

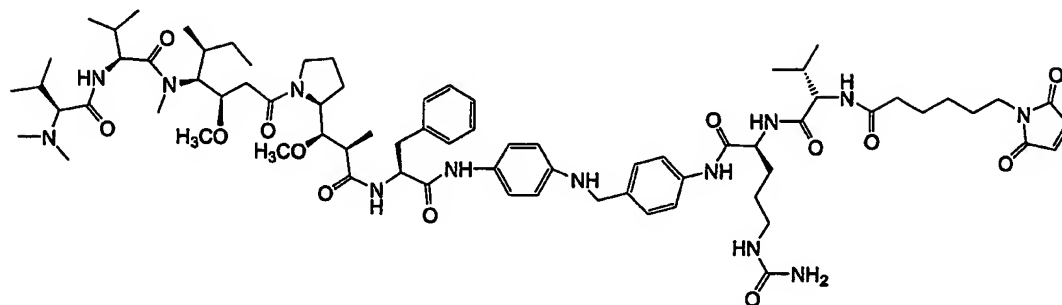
87

A mixture of 6-Maleimidocaproic acid (1.00 g, 4.52 mmol, 1.0 eq.), p-aminobenzyl alcohol (1.11 g, 9.04 mmol, 2.0 eq.) and EEDQ (2.24 g, 9.04 mmol, 2.0 eq.) were diluted in dichloromethane (13 mL). The resulting reaction was stirred about 16 hr., then concentrated and purified using flash column chromatography in a step gradient 25-
10 100 % EtOAc in hexanes to provide a solid intermediate. Yield: 1.38 g (96 %); ES-MS m/z 317.22 $[M+H]^+$, 339.13 $[M+Na]^+$; UV λ_{max} 215, 246 nm.

The solid intermediate (0.85 g, 2.69 mmol, 1.0 eq.) and bis(4-nitrophenyl) carbonate (2.45g, 8.06 mmol, 3.0 eq.) were diluted in DMF (10 mL), and to the resulting mixture was added diisopropylethylamine (0.94 mL, 5.37 mmol, 2.0 eq.). The resulting
15 reaction was stirred for about 1 hr, after which time RP-HPLC indicated that the reaction was complete. The reaction mixture was concentrated *in vacuo*, and the resulting crude residue was triturated using diethyl ether (about 250 mL) to provide a white solid intermediate upon filtration. Yield: 1.25 g (96 %); UV λ_{max} 215, 252 nm.

The white solid intermediate (259 mg, 0.0538 mmol, 1.0 eq.), MMAE (464
20 mg, 0.646 mmol, 1.2 eq.), and HOBt (14.5 mg, 0.108 mmol, 0.2 eq.) were diluted in pyridine/DMF (1:5, 6 mL), and the resulting reaction was stirred for about 10 h, after which time RP-HPLC indicated incomplete reaction. The reaction mixture was concentrated, the resulting crude residue was diluted using DMF (3 mL), and to the resulting mixture was added diisopropylethylamine (0.469 mL, 0.538 mmol, 1.0 eq.) and the resulting reaction
25 was allowed to stir for about 16 hr. The reaction mixture was directly purified using Chromatotron® (radial thin-layer chromatography) with a step gradient (0-5 % methanol in dichloromethane), to provide Compound 87 as a white solid. Yield: 217 mg (38 %); ES-MS m/z 1082.64 $[M+Na]^+$; UV λ_{max} 215, 248 nm.

EXAMPLE 36
PREPARATION OF COMPOUND 88



88

5 Fmoc-val-cit (U.S. Pat. No. 6,214,345 to Firestone et al.) was suspended in dichloromethane (50 mL) and the resulting mixture was treated with 33% HBr in HOAc (20 mL), which was added via pipette over about 5 minutes. After stirring for about 10 minutes, the reaction mixture was shown to be complete using HPLC. The reaction mixture was diluted with ice (about 500 mL) and saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate was slowly
10 added while stirring until gas evolution ceased. The resulting gelatinous mass was filtered and washed with distilled water to provide a solid which was dried under high vacuum in the presence of P₂O₅ for 24 h. The resulting tan powdered intermediate (Fmoc-val-cit-PAB-Br) was about 70% pure by HPLC and was used without further purification.

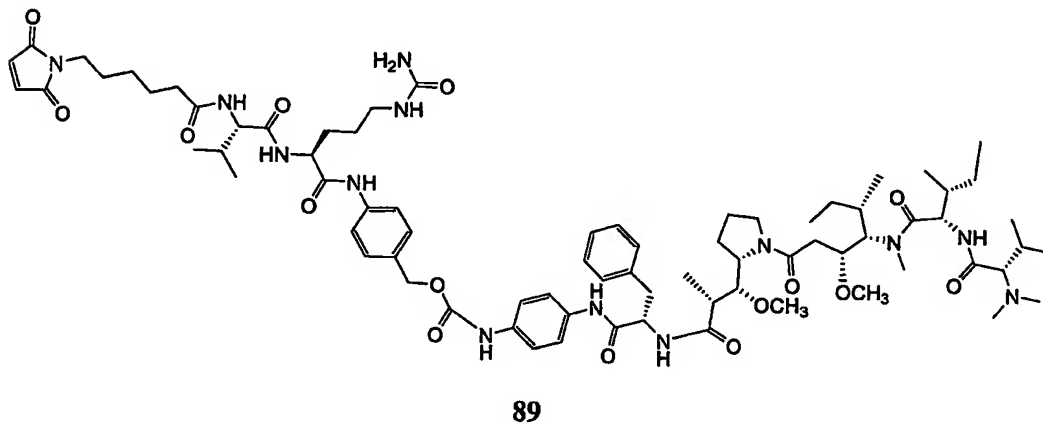
The tan powdered intermediate (30 mg, 40.6 μmol) and Compound 53 (34
15 mg, 40.6 μmol) were dissolved in DMF (1 mL), and to the resulting mixture was added diisopropylethylamine (21 μL, 0.12 mmol, 3.0 eq.). The resulting reaction was allowed to stir for 6 h, diluted with DMSO (1 mL) and immediately purified using preparative-HPLC (C₁₂-RP column, 5 μ, 100 Å, linear gradient of MeCN in water (containing 0.1% formic acid) 10 to 100 % in 40 min followed by 20 min at 100 %, at a flow rate of 25 mL/min). to
20 provide as a slight tan powdered intermediate. Yield: 5 mg (8%); ES-MS *m/z* 1420 [M+H]⁺, 1443 [M+Na]⁺; UV λ_{max} 205, 258 nm.

The slight tan powdered intermediate (4 mg, 9.5 μmol) was diluted using DMF (1 mL) and the resulting mixture was treated with diethylamine (0.5 mL). The resulting reaction was complete in 1 h according to HPLC. The reaction mixture was
25 concentrated to provide an oily solid residue which was triturated with ether (3x) to provide a crude residue. The crude residue was diluted with DMF (1 mL) and to the resulting mixture was added 6-maleimidocaproic acid hydroxysuccinimide ester (3 mg, 9.5 μmol). The resulting reaction was allowed to stir at room temperature for about 16h. The reaction

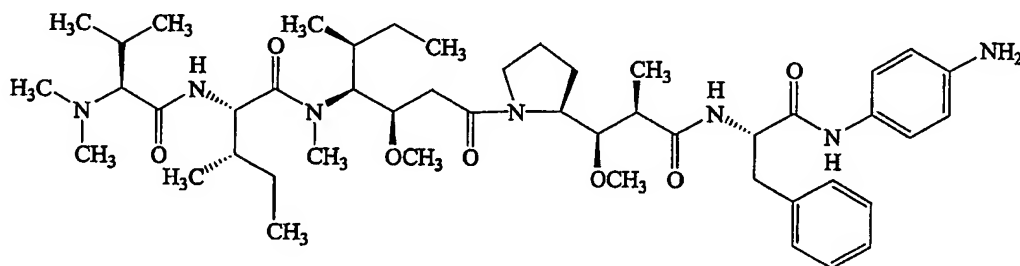
mixture was directly purified using preparative-HPLC (C₁₂-RP column, 5 μ , 100 Å, linear gradient of MeCN in water (containing 0.1% formic acid) 10 to 100 % in 40 min followed by 20 min at 100 %, at a flow rate of 25 mL/min) to provide Compound 88 as a slight tan solid. Yield: 3.9 mg (quant); ES-MS m/z 1391 [M+H]⁺; UV λ_{\max} 205, 250 nm.

5

EXAMPLE 37 PREPARATION OF COMPOUND 89



10 Preparation of Compound 89A



Compound 89A was prepared using the method described in Example 9 and substituting tripeptide Compound 43 for tripeptide Compound 42, intermediate

15

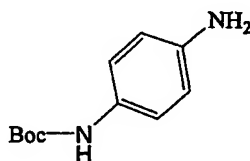
Preparation of Compound 89

Compound 89a (0.13 g, 0.15 μ mol, 1.0 mmol), Compound 21 (0.12 g, 0.17 mmol, 1.1 eq.), and HOBt (4 mg, 31 μ mol, 0.2 eq.) were suspended in DMF/pyridine (2 mL/0.5 mL, respectively). The resulting reaction was allowed to stir for about 4h, then diisopropylethylamine (27 μ L, 0.15 mmol, 1.0 eq.) was added and the resulting reaction was allowed to stirred for about 54 h and concentrated in vacuo. The resulting crude oil was

20

diluted with DMSO and purified using preparative-HPLC (C₁₂-RP column, 5 μ , 100 Å, linear gradient of MeCN in water (containing 0.1% TFA) 10 to 100 % in 40 min followed by 20 min at 100 %, at a flow rate of 25 mL/min) to provide a yellow oil that was taken up in a minimum amount of dichloromethane and precipitated with excess ether to afford
5 Compound 89 as a tan powder. Yield: 0.15 mg (68%). ES-MS m/z 1449.14 [M+H]⁺; UV λ_{\max} 215, 258 nm.

EXAMPLE 38
PREPARATION OF COMPOUND 90

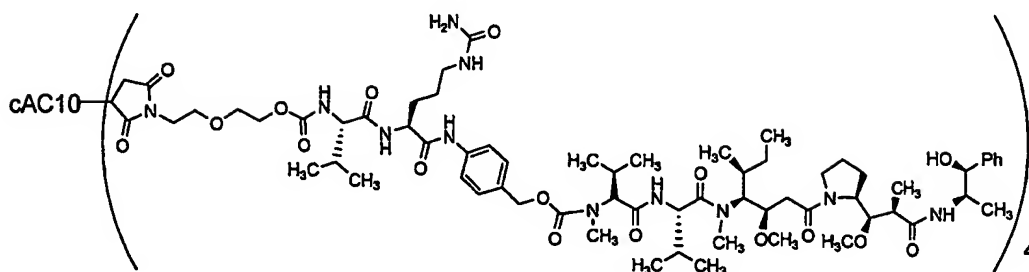


90

1,4-Phenylenediamine dihydrochloride (3.06 g, 17 mmol) and di-*t*-butyl dicarbonate (3.69 g, 17 mmol) were diluted with 30 mL of dichloromethane. To the resulting mixture was added diisopropylethylamine (8.83 mL, 50.7 mmol, 3.0 eq.) and the
15 resulting reaction was allowed to stir for 1 hr. The reaction mixture was transferred to a separatory funnel and the organic phase was washed with water (3 x 10 mL). The organic layer was stored at 4 °C for about 15 h and crystallization of the product occurred. The crystals were collected by filtration and washed with cold dichloromethane to provide
Compound 90 as a crystalline solid. (1.2 g, 34%). UV λ_{\max} 215, 250 nm. ¹H NMR
20 (DMSO) δ 8.78 (1 H, bs), 7.04 (2 H, bd, J = 7.2 Hz), 6.43 (2 H, d, J = 7.2 Hz), 4.72 (2 H, s), 1.41 (9 H, s).

EXAMPLE 39

PREPARATION OF COMPOUND 91



5

91

A solution of cAC10 (10 mg/mL in 25 mM sodium citrate, 250 mM sodium chloride, 0.02% Tween 80, pH 6.5) was adjusted to pH 7.5 by addition of 0.3 M sodium phosphate, dibasic. To this pH-adjusted cAC10 solution, EDTA was added to a final concentration of 5 mM. The cAC10 solution was then pre-heated to 37°C by incubation in a temperature-controlled oven. After the temperature of the cAC10 solution has equilibrated to 37°C, DTT (from a stock solution of 10 mM) was added to achieve a final DTT-to-cAC10 molar ratio of about 3.0 in the reduction reaction (a molecular weight of 148,500 Da was used for cAC10). The reduction reaction was then allowed to proceed for 2 hours at 37°C.

At the end of the incubation, the reduction reaction was cooled to an internal temperature of 2 to 8°C in an ice-water bath. The temperature of the solution was kept at 2 to 8°C throughout the remaining conjugation steps. The chilled reduction reaction was subjected to constant-volume diafiltration to remove excess DTT using a 30 kDa membrane and the buffer was exchanged into phosphate buffered saline, pH 7.4 (PBS). Following diafiltration, the concentration of free thiol in the reduced and diafiltered cAC10 was determined using General Procedure M. Conjugation is then carried out by addition of a 15% molar excess of Compound 58 (from a stock solution of 13 mg/mL in DMSO) relative to the total thiols determined using General Procedure M. Additional DMSO was added to the conjugation reaction to achieve a final DMSO concentration of 15% (v/v). The conjugation reaction was allowed to proceed for a total of 30 min.

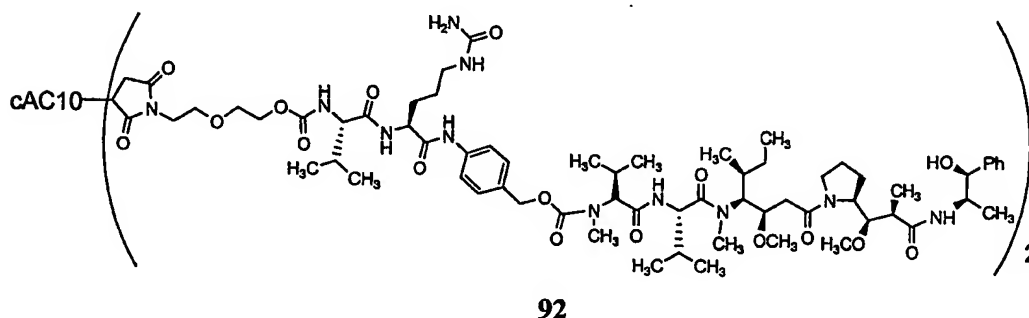
At the end of the conjugation reaction, any unreacted excess Drug-Linker compound was quenched by addition of excess Cysteine (2X molar excess relative to the total thiols determined using General Procedure M, performed on the reduced and diafiltered cAC10 to produce the quenched reaction mixture. The quenched reaction

mixture is then purified free of small-molecule contaminants via constant-volume diafiltration using a 30 kDa membrane and the buffer was exchanged into PBS, pH 7.4. After diafiltration, the conjugate was sterile-filtered using a 0.22 micron filter to provide Compound 91 in a clear, colorless solution.

5

EXAMPLE 40

PREPARATION OF COMPOUND 92



10

92

Compound 92 was prepared using the method described in Example 39 using an amount of DTT (from a stock solution of 10 mM) which provides a final DTT-to-cAC10 molar ratio of about 1.5 in the reduction reaction.

15

6.2 IN VITRO CYTOTOXICITY EXPERIMENTS

The cell lines used were H3396 human breast carcinoma (cBR96 antigen positive, cAC10 antigen negative), HCT-116 human colorectal carcinoma (cBR96 and cAC10 antigen negative), and Karpas human anaplastic large cell lymphoma (ALCL) (cBR96 antigen negative, cAC10 antigen positive). These cell lines are available from ATCC. CD30-positive Hodgkin's Disease (HD) cell line L540 and the ALCL cell line Karpas 299 were obtained from the Deutsche Sammlung von Mikroorganism und Zellkulturen GmbH (Braunschweig, Germany). L540cy, a derivative of the HD line L540 adapted to xenograft growth, was provided by Dr. Phil Thorpe (U of Texas Southwestern Medical Center, Dallas, TX). Cell lines were grown in RPMI-1640 media (Life Technologies Inc., Gaithersburg, MD) supplemented with 10% fetal bovine serum. H3396 cells in RPMI containing 10% fetal bovine serum (referred to as medium) were plated in 96-well plates at approximately 3,000-10,000 cells/well and allowed to adhere overnight. The non-adherent Karpas cell line was plated out at approximately 10,000 cells/well at the initiation of the assay. Various concentrations of illustrative Compounds of the Invention in

25

medium were added in triplicate, and after the times indicated IN FIGS. 1-7, the medium was removed, and the cells were washed with fresh medium three times. After a 96 hour incubation period at 37 °C, Alamar Blue was added and cell viability was determined 4 hours later as described by Ahmed SA, Gogal RM Jr, Walsh JE., J. Immunol. Methods, 5 170, 211-224, 1994.

C.B.-17 SCID (Harlan, Indianapolis, IN) mice were used for *in vivo* experiments.

EXAMPLE 41

IN VITRO CYTOTOXICITY DATA

10 The cytotoxic effects of Compound 49 and Compound 53 on H3396 human breast carcinoma cells are shown in FIG. 1. The data show that after exposure for 1 hour, Compound 53 is more cytotoxic than Compound 49 at concentrations of up to 0.01 mM. The compounds show substantially equal cytotoxicity at concentrations between 0.01 mM and 1.0 mM.

15 EXAMPLE 42

IN VITRO CYTOTOXICITY DATA

FIG. 2 shows the cytotoxic effects of Compounds 64, 65, 68 and 69 on H3396 human breast carcinoma cells (cBR96 antigen positive, cAC10 antigen negative). The data show that the Compounds 64 and 68 demonstrate similar and significant 20 cytotoxicity, while Compounds 65 and 69 are less efficacious, but nevertheless cytotoxic against H3396 cells in this particular assay.

EXAMPLE 43

IN VITRO CYTOTOXICITY DATA

25 FIG. 3 shows the cytotoxic effects of Compounds 64, 65, 68 and 69 on HCT-116 human colorectal carcinoma cells (cBR96 antigen negative, cAC10 antigen negative). The data illustrate that none of Compounds 64, 65, 68 and 69 is cytotoxic toward the antigen negative HCT-116 cells in this assay.

EXAMPLE 44

30 *IN VITRO* CYTOTOXICITY DATA

FIG. 4 illustrates the cytotoxicity of Compounds 66 and 68 on H3396 human breast carcinoma cells (cBR96 antigen positive). The data show that both Compounds are highly cytotoxic at concentrations above 0.1 mM and that Compound 68 demonstrates greater cytotoxicity than Compound 66 at concentrations between 0.01 mg/mL and 0.4 mg/mL.

EXAMPLE 45

IN VITRO CYTOTOXICITY DATA

FIG. 5 illustrates the cytotoxicity of Compounds 66, 68 and 69 on Karpas human anaplastic large cell lymphoma (cBR96 antigen negative, cAC10 antigen positive). The data show that Compound 69 was more cytotoxic toward Karpas cells than compared to Compounds 68 and 66 in this assay. Compound 69 demonstrated significant cytotoxicity at concentrations above 0.001 mM, while Compound 66 and Compound 68 were not cytotoxic at concentrations below 1.0 mg/mL.

EXAMPLE 46

IN VITRO CYTOTOXICITY DATA

FIG. 6 illustrates the cytotoxicity of Compound 66 and 67 at 2h and 96 h on H3396 human breast carcinoma cells (cBR96 antigen positive, cAC10 antigen negative). The data show that Compound 66 is highly cytotoxic at concentrations above 100 mg/mL at short-term exposure (2 h) mg/mL, and at concentrations above 100 mg/mL over long-term exposure (96 h). Compound 67 did not demonstrate cytotoxicity against H3396 cells in this assay at concentrations up to 1000 mg/mL.

General Procedure S: In Vivo Testing of Selected Drug-Linker-

Antibody Conjugates. For the L2987 human adenocarcinoma cell line, Athymic nude mice (8-10 weeks old) were implanted with xenograft tumors or tumor cells. For the Karpas human anaplastic large cell lymphoma model, CB-17 SCID mice were implanted subcutaneously with 5×10^6 cells. In both tumor models, therapy was initiated once the tumors reached an average volume of 100 mm^3 . Groups of mice were injected with one of Compounds 66-69 in phosphate buffered saline intravenously every four days for a total of 6 injections for L2987 animals and 2 injections for Karpas animals. Tumor volume was

computed using the formula: $0.5 (\text{longest dimension} \times \text{perpendicular dimension}^2)$. Mice were removed from the study when their tumors were approximately 1000 mm^3 , at which point the average tumor sizes from the particular group were no longer plotted.

5

EXAMPLE 47

IN VIVO THERAPEUTIC EFFICACY ON L2987 TUMORS

FIG. 7 shows the therapeutic effects of Compounds 66-69 on L2987 human lung adenocarcinoma xenograft tumors (cBR96 antigen positive, cAC10 antigen negative) implanted in athymic nude mice. General Procedure S was followed using subcutaneous L2987 human lung tumors (from in vivo passaging). Mice were administered by injection with one of Compounds 66, 67, 68 or 69 at four day intervals for a total of 6 injections. The first injection was given at 15 days post tumor-implant. The data illustrate that administration of Compound 66 and Compound 68 markedly reduced tumor volume and no additional growth was noted in treated mice for at approximately 25 days after the last injection. Compound 67 and Compound 69 were less efficacious but nevertheless inhibited tumor cell multiplication in the treated mice. Testing was stopped in animals receiving Compounds 67 and 69 when tumor volume exceeded 1000 mm^3 .

20

EXAMPLE 48

IN VIVO THERAPEUTIC EFFICACY ON KARPAS TUMORS

Fig. 8 shows the therapeutic effects of compounds 66-69 on Karpas human anaplastic large cell lymphoma xenograft tumors (cAC10 antigen positive, cBR96 antigen negative) implanted in nude mice. General Procedure S was followed using Karpas human anaplastic large cell lymphoma model, CB-17 SCID mice were implanted subcutaneously with 5×10^6 cells. Mice were dosed intravenously with one of Compounds 66, 67, 68 or 69 at four day intervals for a total of 2 injections starting on day 8. The data illustrate that Compounds 67 and 69 induced complete regressions, and that the tumors progressed in animals that received substantially equivalent amounts of Compounds 66 and 68.

30

EXAMPLE 49

DETERMINATION OF CYTOTOXICITY OF SELECTED COMPOUNDS IN CD30- AND CD30+ CELLS

Following their physical characterization, the *in vitro* cytotoxicity of Compounds 67, 91 and 92 was evaluated in CD30⁺ Karpas 299 and CD30⁻ Raji cells using the Alamar Blue assay as described above. The percent viable cells was plotted versus
5 concentration for each molecule to determine the IC₅₀ (defined as the mAb concentration that gave 50% cell kill).

Compound 67 demonstrated activity against Karpas 299 cells with an IC₅₀ of 4 ng/mL. The IC₅₀ was inversely proportional to drug loading as it increased from 4 ng/mL
10 for Compound 67 to 7 ng/mL for Compound 91, to 40 ng/mL for Compound 92. Selectivity of the tested compounds was evaluated using the antigen-negative Raji cell line which were insensitive to all cAC10-containing Compounds with IC₅₀ values > 1000 ng/mL for Compounds 67, 91 and 92.

15

EXAMPLE 50

CYTOTOXICITY OF SELECTED COMPOUNDS IN XENOGRAFT MODELS OF HD AND ALCL

Cytotoxicity of Compounds 67, 91 and 92 was evaluated in subcutaneous Karpas 299 human anaplastic large cell lymphoma and L540cy Hodgkin's Disease xenograft models in C.B.-17 SCID mice. Evaluations were initiated when tumor volumes
20 averaged 50-100 mm³. Cohorts of Karpas-299 bearing mice were injected q4dx4 with Compound 92, Compound 91, or Compound 67 at either 0.25 mg/kg or 0.5 mg/kg. None of the animals treated at 0.25 mg/kg had a regression, although there was a delay in tumor growth compared to untreated controls for the animals treated with Compound 91 and Compound 67. Treatment of Karpas tumors with Compound 91 and Compound 67 at 0.5
25 mg/kg given q4dx4 achieved 5/5 complete regressions and 4/5 complete regressions, respectively. A delay in tumor growth compared to untreated animals was observed for Compound 92 at 0.5 mg/kg given q4dx4, but no complete regressions were obtained.

Efficacy was also tested in a subcutaneous Karpas model with selected compounds administered as a single dose. Compound 91 and Compound 67 were injected
30 at single doses of 0.25, 0.5 and 2.0 mg/kg. At the dose of 0.25 mg/kg there was no antitumor activity in either group and mean tumor volume did not deviate from the untreated controls. A delay in the tumor growth was demonstrated by both molecules at 0.5 mg/kg, but no complete regressions were obtained. Treating the mice with Compound 91 and Compound 67 at 2 mg/kg achieved 100% complete regressions in both groups.

Compound 91 and Compound 67 were also compared in mice bearing subcutaneous L540cy human HD tumors treated q4dx4 with Compound 91 and Compound 67 at 1 and 3 mg/kg. At 1 mg/kg, mice treated with Compound 91 and Compound 67 had significant delays in tumor growth compared to the untreated animals. Complete
5 regressions were observed in mice administered with both Compound 91 and Compound 67 at 3 mg/kg.

The present invention is not to be limited in scope by the specific embodiments disclosed in the examples which are intended as illustrations of a few aspects
10 of the invention and any embodiments that are functionally equivalent are within the scope of this invention. Indeed, various modifications of the invention in addition to those shown and described herein will become apparent to those skilled in the art and are intended to fall within the scope of the appended claims.

A number of references have been cited, the entire disclosures of which are
15 incorporated herein by reference.